



## **Technical Manual**

V5.0.1

08 June 2010

Allied Vision Technologies GmbH  
Taschenweg 2a  
D-07646 Stadtroda / Germany

**ALLIED**  
Vision Technologies

## Legal notice

### For customers in the U.S.A.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a residential environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However there is no guarantee that interferences will not occur in a particular installation. If the equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the distance between the equipment and the receiver.
- Use a different line outlet for the receiver.
- Consult a radio or TV technician for help.

You are cautioned that any changes or modifications not expressly approved in this manual could void your authority to operate this equipment. The shielded interface cable recommended in this manual must be used with this equipment in order to comply with the limits for a computing device pursuant to Subpart B of Part 15 of FCC Rules.

### For customers in Canada

This apparatus complies with the Class B limits for radio noise emissions set out in the Radio Interference Regulations.

### Pour utilisateurs au Canada

Cet appareil est conforme aux normes classe B pour bruits radioélectriques, spécifiées dans le Règlement sur le brouillage radioélectrique.

### Life support applications

These products are not designed for use in life support appliances, devices, or systems where malfunction of these products can reasonably be expected to result in personal injury. Allied customers using or selling these products for use in such applications do so at their own risk and agree to fully indemnify Allied for any damages resulting from such improper use or sale.

### Trademarks

Unless stated otherwise, all trademarks appearing in this document of Allied Vision Technologies are brands protected by law.

### Warranty

The information provided by Allied Vision Technologies is supplied without any guarantees or warranty whatsoever, be it specific or implicit. Also excluded are all implicit warranties concerning the negotiability, the suitability for specific applications or the non-breaking of laws and patents. Even if we assume that the information supplied to us is accurate, errors and inaccuracy may still occur.

### Copyright

All texts, pictures and graphics are protected by copyright and other laws protecting intellectual property. It is not permitted to copy or modify them for trade use or transfer, nor may they be used on web sites.

## Allied Vision Technologies GmbH 06/2010

All rights reserved.

Managing Director: Mr. Frank Grube

Tax ID: DE 184383113

Headquarters:

Taschenweg 2A

D-07646 Stadtroda, Germany

Tel.: +49 (0)36428 6770

Fax: +49 (0)36428 677-28

e-mail: [info@alliedvisiontec.com](mailto:info@alliedvisiontec.com)

# Contents

<b>Contacting Allied Vision Technologies .....</b>	11
<b>Introduction .....</b>	12
Document history .....	12
Manual overview.....	23
Conventions used in this manual.....	25
Styles .....	25
Symbols .....	25
More information.....	26
Before operation .....	26
<b>PIKE cameras .....</b>	28
<b>Conformity .....</b>	30
CE.....	30
FCC – Class B Device .....	30
<b>FireWire .....</b>	31
Overview .....	31
Definition .....	31
IEEE 1394 standards .....	31
Why use FireWire? .....	32
FireWire in detail.....	32
Serial bus.....	32
FireWire connection capabilities .....	34
Capabilities of 1394a (FireWire 400).....	34
I IDC V1.3 camera control standards .....	34
Capabilities of 1394b (FireWire 800) .....	35
I IDC V1.31 camera control standards .....	35
Compatibility between 1394a and 1394b.....	36
Compatibility example .....	36
Image transfer via 1394a and 1394b .....	37
1394b bandwidths.....	38
Requirements for PC and 1394b.....	38
Requirements for laptop and 1394b .....	39
Example1: 1394b bandwidth of PIKE cameras .....	41
Example 2: More than one PIKE camera at full speed .....	42
FireWire Plug & play capabilities.....	43
FireWire hot-plug and screw-lock precautions .....	43
Screw-lock and power supply precautions.....	44
Operating system support .....	45
<b>Filter and lenses .....</b>	46
IR cut filter: spectral transmission .....	46

Camera lenses .....	47
<b>Camera dimensions .....</b>	<b>49</b>
Serial numbers for starting new front flange.....	49
Pike standard housing (2 x 1394b copper).....	50
Pike (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper) .....	51
Tripod adapter .....	52
Pike W90 (2 x 1394b copper).....	53
Pike W90 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper) .....	54
Pike W90 S90 (2 x 1394b copper).....	55
Pike W90 S90 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper) .....	56
Pike W270 (2 x 1394b copper).....	57
Pike W270 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper).....	58
Pike W270 S90 (2 x 1394b copper) .....	59
Pike W270 S90 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper).....	60
Cross section: CS-Mount (only PIKE F-032B/C) .....	61
Cross section: C-Mount (VGA size filter) .....	62
Cross section: C-Mount (large filter) .....	63
Adjustment of C-Mount.....	64
Adjustment of F-Mount for Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600.....	65
F-Mount .....	65
Pike F-Mount: standard housing (2 x 1394b copper).....	66
Pike F-Mount (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper).....	67
Pike F-Mount: Tripod adapter .....	68
Pike F-Mount: W270 (2 x 1394b copper) .....	69
Pike F-Mount: W270 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper) .....	70
Cross section: F-Mount .....	71
K-Mount, M39-Mount .....	72
Cross section: M39-Mount.....	72
M42-Mount .....	73
Pike M42-Mount: standard housing (2 x 1394b copper).....	73
Pike M42-Mount: standard housing (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper) .....	74
Pike M42-Mount: Tripod adapter .....	75
Pike M42-Mount: W270 (2 x 1394b copper) .....	76
Pike M42-Mount: W270 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper) .....	77
Cross section: M42-Mount.....	78
M58-Mount .....	79
Pike M58-Mount: standard housing (2 x 1394b copper).....	79
Pike M58-Mount: standard housing (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper) .....	80
Pike M58-Mount: Tripod adapter .....	81

Pike M58-Mount: W270 (2 x 1394b copper) .....	82
Pike M58-Mount: W270	
(1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper) .....	83
Cross section: M58-Mount.....	84

## **Specifications .....**.....85

PIKE F-032B/C (fiber).....	85
PIKE F-100B/C (fiber).....	87
PIKE F-145B/C (fiber) (-15fps*) .....	89
PIKE F-210B/C (fiber).....	91
PIKE F-421B/C (fiber).....	93
PIKE F-505B/C (fiber).....	95
PIKE F-1100B/C (fiber) .....	97
PIKE F-1600B/C (fiber) .....	99
Spectral sensitivity .....	101

## **Camera interfaces .....**.....110

IEEE 1394b port pin assignment .....	110
Camera I/O connector pin assignment .....	112
Status LEDs.....	113
On LED (green) .....	113
Status LED.....	113
Control and video data signals.....	115
Inputs .....	115
Triggers.....	115
Input/output pin control.....	116
IO_INP_CTRL 1-2 .....	117
Trigger delay .....	118
Outputs .....	120
IO_OUTP_CTRL 1-4 .....	121
Output modes.....	122
Pulse-width modulation .....	124
PWM: minimal and maximal periods and frequencies .....	125
PWM: Examples in practice .....	126
Pixel data.....	127

## **Description of the data path .....**.....130

Block diagrams of the cameras .....	130
Black and white cameras .....	130
Color cameras .....	131
Channel balance .....	132
Channel adjustment with SmartView (>1.5) .....	132
Dual-tap offset adjustment with SmartView (1.10 or greater).....	133
White balance .....	135
One-push white balance .....	137
<b>Auto white balance (AWB)</b> .....	139
Auto shutter .....	140

Auto gain .....	142
Manual gain .....	145
Brightness (black level or offset) .....	146
Horizontal mirror function .....	147
Shading correction.....	149
Building shading image in Format_7 modes .....	149
First example .....	149
Second example.....	149
How to store shading image.....	150
Automatic generation of correction data.....	151
Requirements .....	151
Algorithm .....	151
Loading a shading image out of the camera .....	154
Loading a shading image into the camera .....	155
Look-up table (LUT) and gamma function .....	156
Loading an LUT into the camera .....	158
Binning (only Pike b/w models).....	159
2 x / 4 x / 8 x binning .....	159
Vertical binning .....	160
Horizontal binning .....	162
2 x full binning/4 x full binning/8 x full binning .....	163
Sub-sampling (PIKE b/w and color) .....	164
What is sub-sampling? .....	164
Which PIKE models have sub-sampling? .....	164
Description of sub-sampling.....	164
Binning and sub-sampling access .....	171
<b>Quick parameter change timing modes.....</b>	<b>173</b>
Why new timing modes? .....	173
<b>Standard Parameter Update Timing .....</b>	<b>174</b>
New: <b>Quick Format Change Mode (QFCM)</b> .....	174
How to transfer parameters to the camera.....	175
<b>Encapsulated Update (begin/end)</b> .....	175
<b>Parameter-List Update .....</b>	<b>176</b>
<b>Standard Update (IIDC)</b> .....	177
<b>Packed 12-Bit Mode.....</b>	<b>178</b>
High SNR mode (High Signal Noise Ratio) .....	179
Frame memory and deferred image transport.....	180
Deferred image transport.....	180
HoldImg mode .....	181
FastCapture mode .....	183
Color interpolation (BAYER demosaicing) .....	184
Sharpness.....	185
Hue and saturation .....	186
Color correction.....	187
Why color correction? .....	187
Color correction in AVT cameras .....	187
Color correction: formula.....	187

GretagMacbeth ColorChecker .....	187
Changing color correction coefficients .....	188
Switch color correction on/off .....	188
Color conversion (RGB → YUV) .....	189
Bulk Trigger .....	189
Level Trigger .....	189
Serial interface.....	190
<b>Controlling image capture .....</b>	<b>195</b>
Trigger modi .....	195
Bulk Trigger (Trigger_Mode_15).....	197
Trigger delay .....	200
Trigger delay advanced register.....	201
Debounce.....	202
Debounce time.....	203
Exposure time (shutter) and offset .....	204
Exposure time offset.....	204
Minimum exposure time .....	204
Extended shutter.....	205
One-shot .....	207
One-shot command on the bus to start of exposure .....	208
End of exposure to first packet on the bus .....	209
Multi-shot .....	210
ISO_Enable / free-run.....	210
Asynchronous broadcast .....	210
Jitter at start of exposure .....	211
Sequence mode .....	213
How is sequence mode implemented? .....	214
Setup mode (new for 3.x).....	215
Sequence step mode (new for 3.x) .....	215
SeqMode description .....	216
Sequence repeat counter (new for 3.x) .....	216
Manual stepping & reset (new for 3.x) .....	216
Which new sequence mode features are available?.....	218
Setup mode.....	218
<b>I/O controlled sequence stepping mode</b> .....	218
<b>I/O controlled sequence pointer reset</b> .....	219
<b>I/O controlled sequence stepping mode and I/O controlled sequence pointer reset via software command</b> .....	219
Points to pay attention to when working with a sequence .....	219
Changing the parameters within a sequence .....	221
Points to pay attention to when changing the parameters.....	221
Secure image signature (SIS): definition and scenarios .....	222
SIS: Definition .....	222
SIS: Scenarios.....	222
Smear reduction .....	224
Smear reduction: definition .....	224
Smear reduction: how it works .....	224

Smear reduction: switch on/off in register and SmartView .....	224
<b>Video formats, modes and bandwidth .....</b>	<b>225</b>
PIKE F-032B / PIKE F-032C.....	226
PIKE F-100B / PIKE F-100C.....	228
PIKE F-145B / PIKE F-145C (-15 fps**) .....	230
PIKE F-210B / PIKE F-210C.....	232
PIKE F-421B / PIKE F-421C.....	234
PIKE F-505B / PIKE F-505C.....	236
PIKE F-1100B / PIKE F-1100C .....	238
PIKE F-1600B / PIKE F-1600C .....	240
Area of interest (AOI) .....	242
Autofunction AOI.....	244
Frame rates.....	245
Frame rates Format_7 .....	249
PIKE F-032: AOI frame rates.....	250
PIKE F-100: AOI frame rates.....	251
PIKE F-145: AOI frame rates (no sub-sampling).....	252
PIKE F-145: AOI frame rates (sub-sampling) .....	253
PIKE F-145-15fps: AOI frame rates (no sub-sampl.) .....	254
PIKE F-145-15fps: AOI frame rates (sub-sampl.) .....	255
PIKE F-210: AOI frame rates (no sub-sampling).....	256
PIKE F-210: AOI frame rates (sub-sampling) .....	257
PIKE F-421: AOI frame rates.....	258
PIKE F-505: AOI frame rates.....	259
AOI frame rates with max. BPP = 8192 .....	259
AOI frame rates with max. BPP = 11000 .....	260
PIKE F-1100: AOI frame rates .....	261
Pike F-1100: frame rate formula single-tap .....	261
AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, single-tap, no sub-sampling .....	261
AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, single-tap, sub-sampling .....	262
Pike F-1100: frame rate formula dual-tap.....	263
AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, dual-tap, no sub-sampling .....	263
AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, dual-tap, sub-sampling .....	264
AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, single-tap, no sub-sampl. ....	265
AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, single-tap, sub-sampl. ....	266
AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, dual-tap, no sub-sampl. ....	267
AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, dual-tap, sub-sampl. ....	268
PIKE F-1600: AOI frame rates .....	269
Pike F-1600: frame rate formula single-tap .....	269
AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, single-tap, no sub-sampling .....	269
AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, single-tap, sub-sampling .....	270
Pike F-1600: frame rate formula dual-tap.....	271
AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, dual-tap, no sub-sampling .....	271
AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, dual-tap, sub-sampling .....	272
AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, single-tap, no sub-sampl. ....	273
AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, single-tap, sub-sampling .....	274
AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, dual-tap, no sub-sampling .....	275

AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, dual-tap, sub-sampling .....	276
<b>How does bandwidth affect the frame rate? .....</b>	<b>277</b>
Example formula for the b/w camera.....	278
Test images .....	279
Loading test images .....	279
Test images for b/w cameras.....	279
Test images for color cameras .....	280
YUV4:2:2 mode .....	280
Mono8 (raw data) .....	280
<b>Configuration of the camera.....</b>	<b>281</b>
Camera_Status_Register.....	281
Example .....	282
Sample program .....	285
Example FireGrab .....	285
Example FireStack API .....	286
Configuration ROM.....	287
Implemented registers.....	290
Camera initialize register.....	290
Inquiry register for video format.....	290
Inquiry register for video mode .....	291
Inquiry register for video frame rate and base address .....	292
Inquiry register for basic function.....	301
Inquiry register for feature presence .....	302
Inquiry register for feature elements .....	304
Inquiry register for absolute value CSR offset address .....	307
Status and control register for feature.....	308
Feature control error status register .....	312
Video mode control and status registers for Format_7 .....	312
Quadlet offset Format_7 Mode_0 .....	312
Quadlet offset Format_7 Mode_1 .....	312
Format_7 control and status register (CSR) .....	312
Advanced features .....	314
Extended version information register .....	318
Advanced feature inquiry.....	320
Camera status .....	322
Maximum resolution .....	323
Time base .....	323
Extended shutter.....	325
Test images .....	326
Look-up tables (LUT) .....	327
Loading a look-up table into the camera .....	328
Shading correction .....	329
Reading or writing shading image from/into the camera .....	331
Automatic generation of a shading image.....	331
Non-volatile memory operations.....	331
Memory channel error codes .....	332

Deferred image transport .....	333
Frame information .....	334
Input/output pin control.....	334
Delayed Integration enable.....	335
Auto shutter control .....	336
Auto gain control.....	337
Autofunction AOI .....	338
Color correction .....	339
Trigger delay .....	340
Mirror image.....	340
AFE channel compensation (channel balance).....	341
Dual-tap offset adjustment .....	341
Soft reset.....	342
High SNR mode (High Signal Noise Ratio) .....	343
Maximum ISO packet size .....	344
Quick parameter change timing modes .....	346
<b>Standard Parameter Update Timing</b> .....	346
<b>Quick Format Change Mode</b> .....	346
Automatic reset of the UpdActive flag.....	347
Low-noise binning mode (only 2 x H-binning) .....	347
Software feature control (disable LEDs / switch single-tap and dual-tap) .....	348
Disable LEDs.....	348
Sensor digitization taps (Pike F-1100/1600 only) .....	349
Parameter-List Update .....	350
Format_7 mode mapping .....	351
Example .....	352
Secure image signature (SIS) .....	353
Advanced register: SIS.....	353
Advanced register: frame counter .....	355
Advanced register: trigger counter.....	356
Where to find time stamp, frame counter and trigger counter in the image.....	357
Where to find all SIS values in the image .....	357
Smear reduction .....	358
User profiles .....	359
Error codes .....	360
Reset of error codes .....	360
Stored settings .....	361
Frame time control .....	362
GPDATA_BUFFER.....	364
Little endian vs. big endian byte order.....	364
User adjustable gain references .....	365
<b>Appendix</b> .....	366
Sensor position accuracy of AVT cameras.....	366
<b>Firmware update</b> .....	367
Extended version number (FPGA/ $\mu$ C).....	367
<b>Index</b> .....	369

# Contacting Allied Vision Technologies

## Info



- **Technical information:**  
<http://www.alliedvisiontec.com>
- **Support:**  
[support@alliedvisiontec.com](mailto:support@alliedvisiontec.com)

### **Allied Vision Technologies GmbH (Headquarters)**

Taschenweg 2a  
07646 Stadtroda, Germany  
Tel.: +49.36428.677-0  
Fax.: +49.36428.677-28  
e-mail: [info@alliedvisiontec.com](mailto:info@alliedvisiontec.com)

### **Allied Vision Technologies Canada Inc.**

101-3750 North Fraser Way  
Burnaby, BC, V5J 5E9, Canada  
Tel: +1 604-875-8855  
Fax: +1 604-875-8856  
e-mail: [info@alliedvisiontec.com](mailto:info@alliedvisiontec.com)

### **Allied Vision Technologies Inc.**

38 Washington Street  
Newburyport, MA 01950, USA  
Toll Free number +1-877-USA-1394  
Tel.: +1.978.2252030  
Fax: +1.978.2252029  
e-mail: [info@alliedvisiontec.com](mailto:info@alliedvisiontec.com)

# Introduction

## Document history

Version	Date	Remarks
V2.0.0	07.07.2006	New Manual - RELEASE status
PRE_V3.0.0	22.09.2006	Minor corrections Added Pike F-145 Pike F-210 AOI frame rates corrected: Chapter <a href="#">PIKE F-210: AOI frame rates (no sub-sampling)</a> on page 256 New advanced registers: Chapter <a href="#">Advanced features</a> on page 314
V3.0.1	29.09.2006	Minor corrections
V3.1.0	13.02.2007	Changed camera status register ( <a href="#">Table 146: Advanced register: Camera status</a> on page 322) Added description for the following mode <i>Output state follows PinState bit</i> ( <a href="#">Table 32: Output routing</a> on page 122) Added M39-Mount for Pike F-201 and F-421 (Chapter <a href="#">F-Mount</a> on page 65)
<b>to be continued on next page</b>		

Table 1: Document history

Version	Date	Remarks
<b>continued from last page</b>		
V3.2.0	22.08.2007	<p>Minor corrections</p> <p>Added CE in Chapter Conformity on page 30.</p> <p>Added Value field in Table 40: CSR: Shutter on page 141.</p> <p>Added Chapter Cross section: CS-Mount (only PIKE F-032B/C) on page 61.</p> <p>Added detailed description of BRIGHTNESS (800h) in Table 139: Feature control register on page 308</p> <p>Added detailed description of WHITE-BALANCE (80Ch) in Table 139: Feature control register on page 308 et seq.</p> <p>Added Appendix, Chapter Sensor position accuracy of AVT cameras on page 366.</p> <p>Added new frame rates in Chapter Specifications on page 85</p> <p>Added new AOI frame rates and diagrams in Chapter Frame rates Format_7 on page 249</p> <p>New minimum shutter speeds for each of the Pike cameras in Chapter Specifications on page 85 and the following</p> <p>Added new features of PIKE update round:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SIS: see Chapter Secure image signature (SIS): definition and scenarios on page 222</li> <li>• Sequence mode: see Chapter Sequence mode on page 213</li> <li>• Smear reduction           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>see Chapter Smear reduction on page 224</li> </ul> </li> <li>• 4 x / 8 x binning and sub-sampling modes           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>see Chapter Binning (only Pike b/w models) on page 159</li> <li>see Chapter Sub-sampling (PIKE b/w and color) on page 164</li> <li>see Chapter Binning and sub-sampling access on page 171</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Quick mode for format changes           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>see Chapter Quick parameter change timing modes on page 173</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Speed increase mode (Packed 12-bit Mode)           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Chapter Packed 12-Bit Mode on page 178</li> </ul> </li> <li>• CS-Mount (only for PIKE F-032)           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Chapter PIKE F-032B/C (fiber) on page 85 and Chapter Cross section: CS-Mount (only PIKE F-032B/C) on page 61</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>to be continued on next page</b>		

Table 1: Document history

Version	Date	Remarks
<b>continued from last page</b>		
V4.0.0	15.01.2008	<p>Added 15fps versions of PIKE F-145 at <a href="#">Table 144: Camera type ID list</a> on page 319</p> <p>Added VERSION_INFO1_EX, VERSION_INFO3_EX and description at <a href="#">Table 143: Advanced register: Extended version information</a> on page 318</p> <p>Revised Chapter <a href="#">Secure image signature (SIS)</a> on page 353</p> <p>Added detailed description to register 0xF10000570 PARAMUPD_TIMING (how to switch on Quick Format Change Mode) see Chapter <a href="#">Quick parameter change timing modes</a> on page 346</p> <p>Added Chapter <a href="#">PIKE F-505B/C (fiber)</a> on page 95.</p> <p>Added Chapter <a href="#">PIKE F-505B / PIKE F-505C</a> on page 236.</p> <p>Revised description of C-Mount adjustment in Chapter <a href="#">Adjustment of C-Mount</a> on page 64.</p> <p>Moved AVT Glossary from Appendix of PIKE Technical Manual to AVT Website.</p> <p>Revised PIKE F-505B/C data.</p> <p>Corrected binning (only b/w cameras) and added <a href="#">Format IDs</a> in <a href="#">Figure 102: Mapping of possible Format_7 modes to F7M1...F7M7</a> on page 172.</p>
<b>to be continued on next page</b>		

Table 1: Document history

Version	Date	Remarks
<b>continued from last page</b>		
V4.1.0	20.08.08	<p>Added PIKE F-505 to Chapter <a href="#">Index</a> on page 362</p> <p>Revised formulas by adding some units in Chapter <a href="#">How does bandwidth affect the frame rate?</a> on page 277</p> <p>Corrected <a href="#">Table 164: Advanced register: Channel balance</a> on page 341</p> <p>Added Max IsoSize Bit [1] to register 0xF1000048 ADV_INQ_3 in <a href="#">Table 145: Advanced register: Advanced feature inquiry</a> on page 320f.</p> <p>Added Chapter <a href="#">Maximum ISO packet size</a> on page 344 (useful for PIKE F-505 for higher frame rates)</p> <p>Corrected <a href="#">Figure 103: Former standard timing</a> on page 173</p> <p>Added photos of 1394b locking connectors and 1394a Molex clamp locking (aka Interlock) connectors in Chapter <a href="#">1394a and 1394b cameras and compatibility</a> on page 36.</p> <p>Added recommendation to use PCI-X (64 bit) or PCI Express adapter in Chapter <a href="#">Maximum ISO packet size</a> on page 344.</p> <p>Corrected frame rate formula in Chapter <a href="#">High SNR mode (High Signal Noise Ratio)</a> on page 179.</p> <p>Corrected binning order in Chapter <a href="#">2 x full binning/4 x full binning/8 x full binning</a> on page 163.</p> <p>Added block diagram of modern PC (X38 chipset by INTEL) in <a href="#">Figure 5: Block diagram of modern PC (X38 chipset by INTEL)</a> on page 39</p> <p>Revised FireWire hot-plug precautions and added screw-lock precautions in Chapter <a href="#">FireWire hot-plug and screw-lock precautions</a> on page 43</p> <p>Added images of FireWire locking cables in <a href="#">Figure 4: 1394a and 1394b cameras and compatibility</a> on page 36</p> <p>Added list of available FireWire screw lock cables in <a href="#">Table 4: 1394 locking cables</a> on page 35</p> <p>Corrected CAD drawing in <a href="#">Figure 14: Pike W90 S90 (2 x 1394b copper)</a> on page 55</p> <p>Changed provisions directive to 2004/108/EG in Chapter <a href="#">Conformity</a> on page 30</p> <p>Corrected diag. (16.3 mm) of KAI2093 in <a href="#">Table 18: Specification PIKE F-210B/C (fiber)</a> on page 91</p>
<b>to be continued on next page</b>		

Table 1: Document history

Version	Date	Remarks
<b>continued from last page</b>		
V4.1.0 [continued]	20.08.08 [continued]	<p><b>Restructuring of Pike Technical Manual:</b></p> <p>Added Chapter <a href="#">Contacting Allied Vision Technologies</a> on page 11</p> <p>Added Chapter <a href="#">Manual overview</a> on page 23</p> <p>Restructured Chapter <i>Pike types and highlights</i> to Chapter <a href="#">PIKE cameras</a> on page 28.</p> <p>Infos from <i>Pike camera types</i> table moved to Chapter <a href="#">Specifications</a> on page 85</p> <p><i>Safety instructions</i> moved to <i>Hardware Installation Guide</i>, Chapter <i>Safety instructions</i> and <i>AVT camera cleaning instructions</i></p> <p>Environmental conditions moved to <i>Pike Instruction Leaflet</i></p> <p>Infos on CS-/C-Mounting moved to <i>Hardware Installation Guide</i>, Chapter <i>Changing filters safety instructions</i></p> <p>Infos on <i>System components</i> and <i>Environmental conditions</i> moved to <i>Pike Instruction Leaflet</i></p> <p>Infos on <i>IR cut filter</i> and <i>Lenses</i> moved to Chapter <a href="#">Filter and lenses</a> on page 46</p> <p>Moved binning explanation from Chapter <a href="#">Specifications</a> on page 85 to Chapter <a href="#">Video formats, modes and bandwidth</a> on page 225</p> <p>Binning / sub-sampling modes and color modes are only listed in Chapter <a href="#">Video formats, modes and bandwidth</a> on page 225</p> <p>Moved detailed description of the camera interfaces (FireWire, I/O connector), ordering numbers and operating instructions to the <i>Hardware Installation Guide</i>.</p> <p>Revised Chapter <a href="#">Description of the data path</a> on page 130</p> <p>Revised Chapter <a href="#">Controlling image capture</a> on page 195; User profiles are only described in Chapter <a href="#">User profiles</a> on page 359</p> <p>Revised Chapter <a href="#">Video formats, modes and bandwidth</a> on page 225</p> <p>Revised Chapter <a href="#">How does bandwidth affect the frame rate?</a> on page 277</p> <p>[to be continued]</p>
<b>to be continued on next page</b>		

Table 1: Document history

Version	Date	Remarks
<b>continued from last page</b>		
V4.1.0 [continued]	20.08.08 [continued]	<p>[continued: Restructuring of Pike Technical Manual:]</p> <p>Revised Chapter <a href="#">Configuration of the camera</a> on page 281</p> <p>Revised Chapter <a href="#">Firmware update</a> on page 367</p> <p>Added Chapter <a href="#">Sensor position accuracy of AVT cameras</a> on page 366</p> <p>Revised Chapter <a href="#">Index</a> on page 362</p> <p>Corrected for all Pike cameras: 16 user-defined LUTs in Chapter <a href="#">Specifications</a> on page 85ff.</p> <p>Added cross-reference from <b>upload LUT</b> to <b>GPDATA_BUFFER</b> in Chapter <a href="#">Loading an LUT into the camera</a> on page 158.</p> <p>Added cross-reference from <b>upload/download shading image</b> to <b>GPDATA_BUFFER</b> in:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Chapter <a href="#">Loading a shading image out of the camera</a> on page 154</li> <li>Chapter <a href="#">Loading a shading image into the camera</a> on page 155</li> </ul> <p>Added PIKE F-505 as it uses different BAYER pattern (first pixel of the sensor is RED) in Chapter <a href="#">Color interpolation (BAYER demosaicing)</a> on page 184</p> <p>Added detailed level values of I/Os in Chapter <a href="#">Camera I/O connector pin assignment</a> on page 112.</p> <p>Added RoHS in Chapter <a href="#">Conformity</a> on page 30</p> <p>Added little endian vs. big endian byte order in Chapter <a href="#">GPDATA_BUFFER</a> on page 364</p> <p>PIKE update firmware round:</p> <p>Gain references: see Chapter <a href="#">User adjustable gain references</a> on page 365</p> <p>Low-noise binning mode for 2 x horizontal binning: see Chapter <a href="#">Low-noise binning mode (only 2 x H-binning)</a> on page 347</p> <p>New photo of LED positions in <a href="#">Figure 61: Position of status LEDs</a> on page 113</p>
V4.2.0	01.09.08	New default gain references for Pike F-505B/C in <a href="#">Table 190: Default gain references of Pike models</a> on page 365
<b>to be continued on next page</b>		

Table 1: Document history

Version	Date	Remarks
<b>continued from last page</b>		
V4.3.0	23.04.09	<p>Pike F-100B: new Quantum efficiency diagram in <a href="#">Figure 45: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-100B</a> on page 103</p> <p>All advanced registers in 8-digit format beginning with 0xF1... in Chapter <a href="#">Advanced features</a> on page 314ff. and in <a href="#">Table 173: Advanced register: Parameter-List Update: parameter list</a> on page 350</p> <p>Corrected Pike cameras with small (VGA size) and large filter in Chapter <a href="#">Cross section: C-Mount (VGA size filter)</a> on page 62 and Chapter <a href="#">Cross section: C-Mount (large filter)</a> on page 63</p> <p>SEQUENCE_RESET register moved to SEQUENCE_STEP register (0xF1000228) in <a href="#">SEQUENCE_STEP</a> on page 215 and in <a href="#">SEQUENCE_STEP</a> on page 314.</p> <p>Revised Chapter <a href="#">White balance</a> on page 135ff.</p> <p>New sensor for Pike F-421B/C in <a href="#">Table 3: PIKE camera types</a> on page 29 and in <a href="#">Table 19: Specification PIKE F-421B/C (fiber)</a> on page 93.</p> <p>Calculated <b>effective chip size</b> for all sensors (with resolution of Format_7 Mode_0) in Chapter <a href="#">Specifications</a> on page 85ff.</p> <p>Pike F-210B/C shows no speed increase using sub-sampling: see Chapter <a href="#">PIKE F-210: AOI frame rates (sub-sampling)</a> on page 257</p>
<b>to be continued on next page</b>		

Table 1: Document history

Version	Date	Remarks
<b>continued from last page</b>		
V4.4.0	28.09.09	<p>Added notice to description of non-volatile storage of shading image in <a href="#">Note</a> on page 152.</p> <p>Corrected drawing in <a href="#">Figure 150: Delayed integration timing</a> on page 335</p> <p>Corrected Format_7 Mode_5 (640 x 240) in <a href="#">Table 76: Video Format_7 default modes PIKE F-032B / PIKE F-032C</a> on page 227.</p> <p>Added Raw12 to Pike F-032C and corrected some frame rates in <a href="#">Table 76: Video Format_7 default modes PIKE F-032B / PIKE F-032C</a> on page 227f.</p> <p>New <b>dual-tap offset adjustment</b> for Pike F-032/210/421/505:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See <a href="#">0xF1000430</a> on page 316</li> <li>• See <a href="#">Table 165: Advanced register: Dual-tap offset adjustment</a> on page 341</li> <li>• See Chapter <a href="#">Dual-tap offset adjustment with SmartView (1.10 or greater)</a> on page 133</li> <li>• Revised Chapter <a href="#">Conformity</a> on page 30.</li> </ul> <p>New <b>Pike front flange</b>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Title page: new photo and <a href="#">Figure 23: Back focus adjustment</a> on page 64: new Pike drawing</li> <li>• New CAD drawings: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Chapter <a href="#">Camera dimensions</a> on page 49ff.</li> <li>- <a href="#">Figure 23: Back focus adjustment</a> on page 64 (adjusting C-Mount via both screws on top (middle) and right sight of the housing)</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Added <b>PWM feature</b>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Added PWM feature in <a href="#">IO_OUTP_CTRL 1-4</a> on page 121ff.</li> <li>• Added PWMCapable in Register 0xF1000320 in <a href="#">Table 31: Advanced register: Output control</a> on page 121</li> <li>• Added ID 0x09 in <a href="#">Table 32: Output routing</a> on page 122</li> <li>• Added Chapter <a href="#">Pulse-width modulation</a> on page 124ff.</li> <li>• Added <a href="#">Table 33: PWM configuration registers</a> on page 124</li> <li>• Added PWM in <a href="#">Table 145: Advanced register: Advanced feature inquiry</a> on page 320f.</li> <li>• Added PWM in <a href="#">Table 142: Advanced registers summary</a> on page 314ff.</li> </ul>
<b>to be continued on next page</b>		

Table 1: Document history

Version	Date	Remarks
<b>continued from last page</b>		
V4.4.0 [continued]	28.09.09 [continued]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All Pike models: added input debounce feature:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Advanced register summary <a href="#">0xF1000840</a> on page 317</li> <li>– Advanced register summary <a href="#">0xF1000850</a> on page 317</li> <li>– Advanced register summary <a href="#">0xF1000860</a> on page 317</li> <li>– Advanced register summary <a href="#">0xF1000870</a> on page 317</li> <li>– Chapter <a href="#">Debounce</a> on page 202f.</li> <li>– Chapter <a href="#">Debounce time</a> on page 203</li> <li>– <a href="#">Table 63: Advanced register: Debounce time for input ports</a> on page 203</li> </ul> </li> <li>• All Pike models: added Frame time control feature:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– <a href="#">Table 142: Advanced registers summary</a> on page 314ff.</li> <li>– Chapter <a href="#">Frame time control</a> on page 362</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
V5.0.0	07.05.10	<p><b>New Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600 models:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Figure 55: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-1100B</a> on page 108</li> <li>• <a href="#">Figure 56: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-1100C</a> on page 108</li> <li>• <a href="#">Figure 57: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-1600B</a> on page 109</li> <li>• <a href="#">Figure 58: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-1600C</a> on page 109</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">PIKE F-1100B/C (fiber)</a> on page 97f.</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">PIKE F-1600B/C (fiber)</a> on page 99f.</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Dual-tap offset adjustment with SmartView (1.10 or greater)</a> on page 133ff. and Chapter <a href="#">Dual-tap offset adjustment</a> on page 341</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Adjustment of F-Mount for Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600</a> on page 65</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">F-Mount</a> on page 65ff.</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Pike F-Mount: standard housing (2 x 1394b copper)</a> on page 66</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Pike F-Mount: Tripod adapter</a> on page 68</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Pike F-Mount: W270 (2 x 1394b copper)</a> on page 69</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Cross section: F-Mount</a> on page 71</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Frame time control</a> on page 362</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Sensor digitization taps (Pike F-1100/1600 only)</a> on page 349</li> </ul>
<b>to be continued on next page</b>		

Table 1: Document history

Version	Date	Remarks
<b>continued from last page</b>		
V5.0.0 <b>[continued]</b>	07.05.10 <b>[continued]</b>	<p><b>[continued]</b></p> <p><b>New Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600 models:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">F-Mount</a> on page 65ff.</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">M42-Mount</a> on page 73ff.</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">M58-Mount</a> on page 79ff.</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Exposure time offset</a> on page 204</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Minimum exposure time</a> on page 204</li> <li>• <a href="#">Figure 113: Data flow and timing after end of exposure</a> on page 209</li> <li>• <a href="#">Table 70: Jitter at exposure start (no binning, no sub-sampling)</a> on page 212</li> <li>• <a href="#">Table 190: Default gain references of Pike models</a> on page 365</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Software feature control (disable LEDs / switch single-tap and dual-tap)</a> on page 348</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">PIKE F-1100B / PIKE F-1100C</a> on page 238</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">PIKE F-1600B / PIKE F-1600C</a> on page 240</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">PIKE F-1100: AOI frame rates</a> on page 261ff.</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">PIKE F-1600: AOI frame rates</a> on page 269ff.</li> </ul> <p><b>New Pike front flange:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Serial numbers for Pike camera models starting new front flange: Chapter <a href="#">Serial numbers for starting new front flange</a> on page 49</li> <li>• Added photo of Pike 11M/16M on title page</li> </ul> <p><b>Minor corrections and improvements:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Improved description on low noise binning: Chapter <a href="#">Low-noise binning mode (only 2 x H-binning)</a> on page 347</li> <li>• Corrected MaxValue from [0..31] to [6..31] in <a href="#">Table 158: Advanced register: Auto shutter control</a> on page 336</li> <li>• Corrected: Pike F-145C has Raw12 formats (F7M0, F7M4, F7M5, F7M6) in <a href="#">Table 80: Video Format_7 default modes Pike F-145B / F-145C</a> on page 231</li> <li>• Improved description of debounce feature in Chapter <a href="#">Debounce</a> on page 202</li> </ul> <p><b>New storage temperature:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 70 °C, see Chapter <a href="#">Specifications</a> on page 85ff.</li> </ul>
<b>to be continued on next page</b>		

Table 1: Document history

Version	Date	Remarks
<b>continued from last page</b>		
V5.0.0 [continued]	07.05.10 [continued]	<p><b>New links to the new AVT website:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Contacting Allied Vision Technologies</a> on page 11</li> </ul> <p><b>New measured sensitivity curves:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Spectral sensitivity</a> on page 101ff.</li> </ul> <p><b>Added new CAD drawings for W90S90 and W270S90:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Pike W90 S90 (2 x 1394b copper)</a> on page 55</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Pike W270 S90 (2 x 1394b copper)</a> on page 59</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Pike W90 S90 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)</a> on page 56</li> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Pike W270 S90 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)</a> on page 60</li> </ul> <p><b>Added more information on operating system support (Windows XP SP3, Vista SP2, Windows 7):</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Chapter <a href="#">Operating system support on page 45</a></li> </ul> <p><b>Changed sensitivity curves for PIKE F-421B/C from Kodak KAI 4021 to Kodak KAI 4022:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Figure 51: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-421B</a> on page 106</li> <li>• <a href="#">Figure 52: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-421C</a> on page 106</li> </ul>
<b>to be continued on next page</b>		

Table 1: Document history

Version	Date	Remarks
<b>continued from last page</b>		
V5.0.1 [continued]	08.06.10 [continued]	<p><b>Changed and new CAD drawings for Pike F-1100/1600:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Changed CAD drawings with corrected mount dimensions: see <a href="#">Figure 29: Pike F-Mount dimensions (standard for Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600)</a> on page 71, <a href="#">Figure 36: Pike M42-Mount dimensions (optional for Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600)</a> on page 78 and <a href="#">Figure 42: Pike M58-Mount dimensions (optional for Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600)</a> on page 84.</li> <li>• Added CAD drawings for Pike F-1100/1600 GOF versions incl. W270 models: Chapter <a href="#">Camera dimensions</a> on page 49ff.</li> </ul>

Table 1: Document history

## Manual overview

This **manual overview** describes each chapter of this manual shortly.

- Chapter [Contacting Allied Vision Technologies](#) on page 11 lists AVT contact data for both:
  - Technical information / ordering
  - Commercial information
- Chapter [Introduction](#) on page 12 (this chapter) gives you the document history, a manual overview and conventions used in this manual (styles and symbols). Furthermore you learn how to get more information on **how to install hardware (Hardware Installation Guide)**, available **AVT software** (incl. documentation) and where to get it.
- Chapter [PIKE cameras](#) on page 28 gives you a short introduction to the STINGRAY cameras with their FireWire technology. Links are provided to data sheets and brochures on AVT website.
- Chapter [Conformity](#) on page 30 gives you information about conformity of AVT cameras.
- Chapter [FireWire](#) on page 31 describes the FireWire standard in detail, explains the compatibility between 1394a and 1394b and explains bandwidth details (incl. Pike examples).
  - **Read and follow the FireWire hot-plug and screw-lock precautions in Chapter [FireWire hot-plug and screw-lock precautions](#) on page 43.**
  - **Read Chapter [Operating system support](#) on page 45.**
- Chapter [Filter and lenses](#) on page 46 describes the IR cut filter and suitable camera lenses.
- Chapter [Specifications](#) on page 85 lists camera details and spectral sensitivity diagrams for each camera type.

- Chapter [Camera dimensions](#) on page 49 provides CAD drawings of standard housing (copper and GOF) models, tripod adapter, available angled head models, cross sections of CS-Mount and C-Mount.
- Chapter [Camera interfaces](#) on page 110 describes in detail the inputs/outputs of the cameras (incl. Trigger features). For a general description of the interfaces (FireWire and I/O connector) see **Hardware Installation Guide**.
- Chapter [Description of the data path](#) on page 130 describes in detail IIDC conform as well as AVT-specific camera features.
- Chapter [Controlling image capture](#) on page 195 describes trigger modi, exposure time, one-shot/multi-shot/ISO\_Enable features. Additionally special AVT features are described: sequence mode and secure image signature (SIS).
- Chapter [Video formats, modes and bandwidth](#) on page 225 lists all available fixed and Format\_7 modes (incl. color modes, frame rates, binning/sub-sampling, AOI=area of interest).
- Chapter [How does bandwidth affect the frame rate?](#) on page 277 gives some considerations on bandwidth details.
- Chapter [Configuration of the camera](#) on page 281 lists standard and advanced register descriptions of all camera features.
- Chapter [Firmware update](#) on page 367 explains where to get information on firmware updates and explains the extended version number scheme of FPGA/μC.
- Chapter [Appendix](#) on page 366 lists the sensor position accuracy of AVT cameras.
- Chapter [Index](#) on page 362 gives you quick access to all relevant data in this manual.

## Conventions used in this manual

To give this manual an easily understood layout and to emphasize important information, the following typographical styles and symbols are used:

### Styles

Style	Function	Example
Bold	Programs, inputs or highlighting important things	<b>bold</b>
Courier	Code listings etc.	Input
Upper case	Register	REGISTER
Italics	Modes, fields	<i>Mode</i>
Parentheses and/or blue	Links	(Link)

Table 2: Styles

### Symbols

**Note** \_\_\_\_\_ This symbol highlights important information.



**Caution** \_\_\_\_\_ This symbol highlights important instructions. You have to follow these instructions to avoid malfunctions.



**www** \_\_\_\_\_ This symbol highlights URLs for further information. The URL itself is shown in blue.



Example:

<http://www.alliedvisiontec.com>

## More information

For more information on hardware and software read the following:

- **Hardware Installation Guide** describes the hardware installation procedures for all 1394 AVT cameras (Dolphin, Oscar, Marlin, Guppy, Pike, Stingray). Additionally you get safety instructions and information about camera interfaces (IEEE1394a/b copper and GOF, I/O connectors, input and output).

www



You find the **Hardware Installation Guide** at:

<http://www.alliedvisiontec.com/emea/support/downloads/product-literature/hardware-installation-guide.html>

All **software packages** (including **documentation** and **release notes**) provided by AVT can be downloaded at:

<http://www.alliedvisiontec.com/emea/products/software.html>

## Before operation

We place the highest demands for quality on our cameras.

**Target group** This **Technical Manual** is the guide to detailed technical information of the camera and **is written for experts**.

**Getting started** For a quick guide how to get started read **Hardware Installation Guide** first.

Note



Please read through this manual carefully before operating the camera.

For information on **AVT accessories** and **AVT software** read **Hardware Installation Guide**.

Caution



Before operating any AVT camera read **safety instructions** and **ESD warnings** in **Hardware Installation Guide**.

Note



To demonstrate the properties of the camera, all examples in this manual are based on the **FirePackage** OHCI API software and the **SmartView** application.

**www**



These utilities can be obtained from Allied Vision Technologies (AVT). FirePackage includes **SmartView** and is available for download at:

<http://www.alliedvisiontec.com/emea/products/software/windows/avt-firepackage.html>

**Note**



The camera also works with all IIDC (formerly DCAM) compatible IEEE 1394 programs and image processing libraries.

# PIKE cameras

**Pike** The Pike is a fast IEEE 1394b camera for demanding applications. Numerous pre-processing functions produce an outstanding image quality. Pike cameras operate with very high frame rates and offer much more real-time functions than specified in the IIDC standards.

They can even emulate traditional frame grabber functions.

**IEEE 1394b** IEEE 1394b provides a plug & play interface standard with high-speed, deterministic data transmission. The camera communication protocol is standardized and can easily be integrated into your application

**GOF** Pike cameras are available both with two copper ports (for daisy-chaining) and with copper/GOF (glass optical fiber) ports.

Advantages of GOF:

- 800 Mbit/s over 400 meters and more
- No additional repeaters required
- Transmission of light instead of electricity: No ground problems and no interference with electromagnetic fields.

**Image applications** Allied Vision Technologies can provide users with a range of products that meet almost all the requirements of a very wide range of image applications.

**FireWire** The industry standard IEEE 1394 (FireWire or i.Link) facilitates the simplest computer compatibility and bidirectional data transfer using the plug & play process. Further development of the IEEE 1394 standard has already made 800 Mbit/second possible. Investment in this standard is therefore secure for the future; each further development takes into account compatibility with the preceding standard, and vice versa, meaning that IEEE 1394b is reverse-compatible with IEEE 1394a. Your applications will grow as technical progress advances.

**Note** For further information on FireWire read Chapter [FireWire](#) on page 31.



**www** For further information on the highlights of Pike **types**, the Pike **family** and the whole range of **AVT FireWire cameras** read the data sheets and brochures on the website of Allied Vision Technologies:



[www.alliedvisiontec.com](http://www.alliedvisiontec.com)

Pike type	Sensor	Picture size (max.) Format_7 Mode_0	Frame rates, full resolution
PIKE F-032B/C	Type 1/3 KODAK KAI-340	640 (h) x 480 (v)	Up to 208 fps
PIKE F-032B/C fiber	Progressive Scan CCD imager		
PIKE F-100B/C	Type 2/3 KODAK KAI-1020	1000 (h) x 1000 (v)	Up to 60 fps
PIKE F-100B/C fiber	Progressive Scan CCD imager		
PIKE F-145B/C	Type 2/3 SONY ICX285	1388 (h) x 1038 (v)	Up to 30 fps
PIKE F-145B/C fiber	Progressive Scan CCD imager		
PIKE F-145B/C-15fps	Type 2/3 SONY ICX285	1388 (h) x 1038 (v)	Up to 16 fps
PIKE F-145B/C-15fps fiber	Progressive Scan CCD imager		
PIKE F-210B/C	Type 1 KODAK KAI-2093	1920 (h) x 1080 (v)	Up to 31 fps
PIKE F-210B/C fiber	Progressive Scan CCD imager		
PIKE F-421B/C	Type 1.2 KODAK KAI-4022	2048 (h) x 2048 (v)	Up to 16 fps
PIKE F-421B/C fiber	Progressive Scan CCD imager		
PIKE F-505B/C	Type 2/3 SONY ICX625	2456 (h) x 2058 (v)	Up to 15 fps
PIKE F-505B/C fiber	Progressive Scan CCD imager		
PIKE F-1100B/C	Type 35 mm KODAK KAI-11002	4008 (h) x 2672 (v)	Single-tap: up to 2.6 fps
PIKE F-1100B/C fiber	Progressive Scan CCD imager		Dual-tap: up to 4.9 fps
PIKE F-1600B/C	Type 35 mm KODAK KAI-16000	4872 (h) x 3248 (v)	Single-tap: up to 1.7 fps
PIKE F-1600B/C fiber	Progressive Scan CCD imager		Dual-tap: up to 3.1 fps

Table 3: PIKE camera types

# Conformity

Allied Vision Technologies declares under its sole responsibility that all standard cameras of the **AVT Pike** family to which this declaration relates are in conformity with the following standard(s) or other normative document(s):

- CE, following the provisions of 2004/108/EG directive
- FCC Part 15 Class B
- RoHS (2002/95/EC)

## **CE**

We declare, under our sole responsibility, that the previously described **AVT Pike** cameras conform to the directives of the CE.

## **FCC – Class B Device**

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense. You are cautioned that any changes or modifications not expressly approved in this manual could void your authority to operate this equipment.

# FireWire

## Overview

**FireWire** provides one of the most comprehensive, high-performance, cost-effective solutions platforms. **FireWire** offers very impressive throughput at very affordable prices.

### Definition

**FireWire** (also known as **i.Link** or **IEEE 1394**) is a personal computer and digital video serial bus interface standard, offering high-speed communications and isochronous real-time data services. **FireWire** has low implementation costs and a simplified and adaptable cabling system.



Figure 1: FireWire Logo

### IEEE 1394 standards

**FireWire** was developed by Apple Computer in the late 1990s, after work defining a slower version of the interface by the IEEE 1394 working committee in the 1980s. Apple's development was completed in 1995. It is defined in IEEE standard 1394 which is currently a composite of three documents:

- the original IEEE Std. 1394-1995
- the IEEE Std. 1394a-2000 amendment
- the IEEE Std. 1394b-2002 amendment

**FireWire** is used to connect digital cameras, especially in industrial systems for machine vision.

**Advantages** Advantages over USB are:

- Faster effective speed
- Higher power distribution capabilities
- Multi-camera applications are easier to set up than in USB.

## Why use FireWire?

Digital cameras with on-board **FireWire** (IEEE 1394a or 1394b) communications conforming to the IIDC standard (V1.3 or V1.31) have created cost-effective and powerful solutions options being used for thousands of different applications around the world. **FireWire** is a robust digital interface for industrial applications for many reasons, including:

- Guaranteed bandwidth features to ensure fail-safe communications
- Interoperability with multiple different camera types and vendors
- Diverse camera powering options, including single-cable solutions up to 45 W
- Effective multiple-camera solutions
- Large variety of **FireWire** accessories for industrial applications
- Availability of repeaters and optical fibre cabling
- Forwards and backward compatibility blending 1394a and 1394b
- Both real-time (isochronous) and demand-driven asynchronous data transmission capabilities

## FireWire in detail

### Serial bus

Briefly summarized, **FireWire** is a very effective way to utilize a low-cost serial bus, through a standardized communications protocol, that establishes packetized data transfer between two or more devices. FireWire offers real time isochronous bandwidth for image transfer with guaranteed low latency. It also offers asynchronous data transfer for controlling camera parameters, such as gain and shutter, on the fly. As illustrated in the diagram below, these two modes can co-exist by using priority time slots for video data transfer and the remaining time slots for control data transfer.

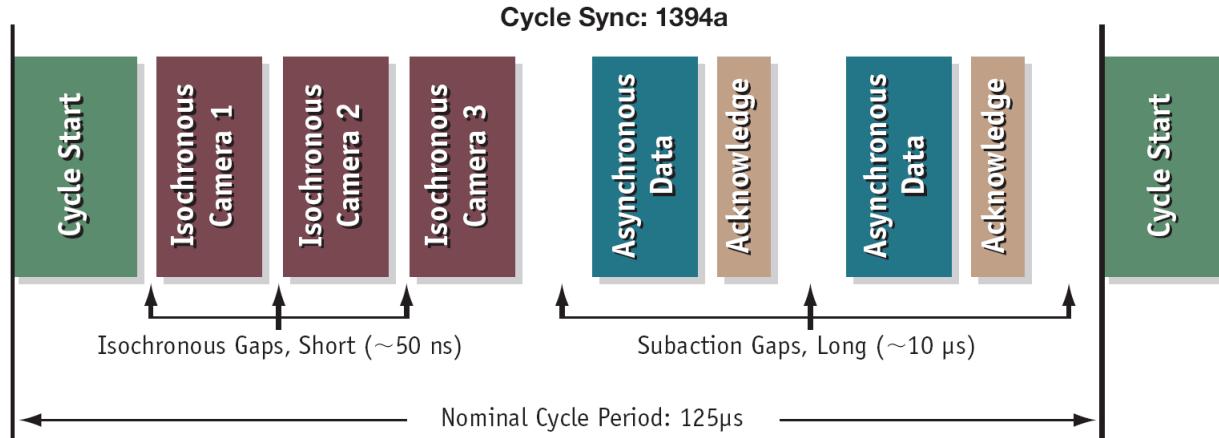


Figure 2: 1394a data transmission

In case of 1394b no gaps are needed due to parallel arbitration, handled by bus owner supervisor selector (BOSS) (see the following diagram). Whereas 1394a works in half duplex transmission, 1394 does full duplex transmission.

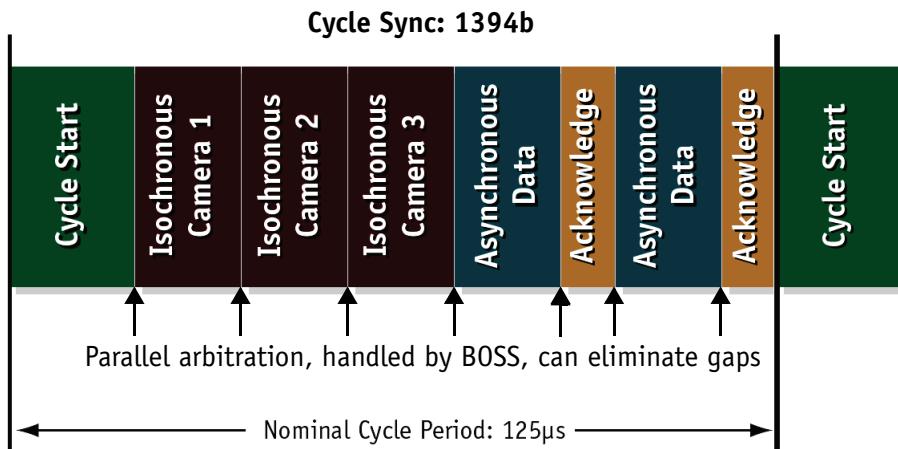


Figure 3: 1394b data transmission

Additional devices may be added up to the overall capacity of the bus, but throughput at guaranteed minimum service levels is maintained for all devices with an acknowledged claim on the bus. This deterministic feature is a huge advantage for many industrial applications where robust performance is required. Such is the case when it is not acceptable to drop images within a specific time interval.

**Note**

How to extend the size of an isochronous packet up to 11.000 byte at S800:



- see register 0xF1000048, ADV\_INQ\_3, Max IsoSize [1] in [Table 145: Advanced register: Advanced feature inquiry](#) on page 320
- see Chapter [Maximum ISO packet size](#) on page 344

## FireWire connection capabilities

**FireWire** can connect together up to 63 peripherals in an acyclic network structure (hubs). It allows peer-to-peer device communication (between digital cameras), to take place without using system memory or the CPU.

But even more importantly, a **FireWire camera** can directly, via direct memory access (DMA), write into or read from the memory of the computer with almost no CPU load.

**FireWire** also supports multiple hosts per bus. **FireWire** requires only a cable with the correct number of pins on either end (normally 6 or 9). It can supply up to 45 W of power per port at 30 V, allowing high consumption devices to operate without a separate power cord.

**Caution**

While supplying such an amount of bus power is clearly a beneficial feature, it is **very important not** to exceed the inrush current of 18 mJoule in 3 ms.

**Higher inrush current may damage the Phy chip of the camera and/or the Phy chip in your PC.**

## Capabilities of 1394a (FireWire 400)

FireWire 400 (S400) is able to transfer data between devices at 100, 200 or 400 MBit/s data rates. Although USB 2.0 claims to be capable of higher speeds (480 Mbit/s), FireWire is, in practice, not slower than USB 2.0.

The 1394a capabilities in detail:

- 400 Mbit/s
- Hot-pluggable devices
- Peer-to-peer communications
- Direct Memory Access (DMA) to host memory
- Guaranteed bandwidth
- Multiple devices (up to 45 W) powered via FireWire bus

## IIDC V1.3 camera control standards

IIDC V1.3 released a set of camera control standards via 1394a which established a common communications protocol on which most current FireWire cameras are based.

In addition to common standards shared across manufacturers, a special Format\_7 mode also provided a means by which a manufacturer could offer special features (smart features), such as:

- higher resolutions
- higher frame rates
- diverse color modes

as extensions (advanced registers) to the prescribed common set.

## **Capabilities of 1394b (FireWire 800)**

FireWire 800 (S800) was introduced commercially by Apple in 2003 and has a 9-pin FireWire 800 connector (see details in **Hardware Installation Guide** and in Chapter [IEEE 1394b port pin assignment](#) on page 110). This newer 1394b specification allows a transfer rate of 800 Mbit/s with backward compatibility to the slower rates and 6-pin connectors of FireWire 400.

The 1394b capabilities in detail:

- 800 Mbit/s
- All previous benefits of 1394a (see above)
- Interoperability with 1394a devices
- Longer communications distances (up to 500 m using GOF cables)

## **IIDC V1.31 camera control standards**

Twinned with 1394b, the IIDC V1.31 standard arrived in January 2004, evolving the industry standards for digital imaging communications to include I/O and RS232 handling, and adding further formats. At such high bandwidths it has become possible to transmit high-resolution images to the PC's memory at very high frame rates.

## Compatibility between 1394a and 1394b

 <p><b>1394b port</b></p> <p><b>1394a camera</b></p> <p><b>1394a camera connected to 1394b bus</b></p> <p>The cable explains dual compatibility: This cable serves to connect an IEEE 1394a camera with its <b>six-pin</b> connector to a bilingual port (a port which can talk in a- or b-language) of a 1394b bus. In this case the b-bus communicates in a-language and a-speed with the camera achieving a-performance</p>	 <p><b>1394b camera</b></p> <p><b>1394a port</b></p> <p><b>1394b camera connected to 1394a bus</b></p> <p>The cable explains dual compatibility: In this case, the cable connects an IEEE 1394b camera with its <b>nine-pin</b> connector to a 1394a port. In this case the b-camera communicates in a-language with the camera achieving a-performance</p>
---	---

Figure 4: 1394a and 1394b cameras and compatibility

www



For suitable cables, see:

[http://www.alliedvisiontec.com/emea/products/  
accessories.html](http://www.alliedvisiontec.com/emea/products/accessories.html)

### Compatibility example

It's possible to run a 1394a and a 1394b camera on the 1394b bus.

You can e.g. run a PIKE F-032B and a MARLIN F-033B on the same bus:

- PIKE F-032B @ S800 and 120 fps (5120 bytes per cycle, 64% of the cycle slot)
- MARLIN F-033B @ S400 and 30 fps (1280 bytes, 32% of the cycle slot)

Bus runs at 800 Mbit/s for all devices. Data from Marlin's port is up-converted from 400 Mbit/s to 800 Mbit/s by data doubling (padding), still needing 32% of the cycle slot time. This doubles the bandwidth requirement for this port, as if the camera were running at 60 fps. Total consumption is thus  $5120 + 2560 = 7680$  bytes per cycle.

## Image transfer via 1394a and 1394b

Technical detail	1394a	1394b
Transmission mode	Half duplex (both pairs needed) 400 Mbit/s data rate  aka: a-mode, data/strobe (D/S) mode, legacy mode	Full duplex (one pair needed) 1 Gbit/s signaling rate, 800 Mbit/s data rate  10b/8b coding (Ethernet), aka: b-mode (beta mode)
Devices	Up to 63 devices per network	
Number of cameras	Up to 16 cameras per network	
Number of DMAs	4 to 8 DMAs (parallel) cameras / bus	
Real time capability	Image has real time priority	
Available bandwidth acc. IIDC (per cycle 125 µs)	4096 bytes per cycle ~ 1000q @ 400 Mbit/s	8192 bytes per cycle ~ 2000q @ 800 Mbit/s (@1 GHz clock rate)
	For further detail read Chapter <a href="#">Frame rates</a> on page 245.	
Max. image bandwidth	31.25 MByte/s	62.5 MByte/s
Max. total bandwidth	~45 MByte/s	~85 MByte/s
Number of busses	Multiple busses per PC limit: PCI bus	Multiple busses per PC limit: PCI (Express) bus
CPU load	Almost none for DMA image transfer	
Gaps	Gaps negatively affect asynchronous performance of widespread network (round trip delay), reducing efficiency	No gaps needed, BOSS mode for parallel arbitration

Table 4: Technical detail comparison: 1394a and 1394b

**Note**

The bandwidth values refer to the fact:

1 MByte = 1024 kByte



## 1394b bandwidths

According to the 1394b specification on isochronous transfer, the largest data payload size of 8192 bytes per 125 µs cycle is possible with a bandwidth of 800 Mbit/s.

For further details read Chapter [How does bandwidth affect the frame rate?](#) on page 277.

### Requirements for PC and 1394b

Today's PCs are equipped with the PCIe bus (PCI Express).

PCIe factor	PCIe 1.0	PCIe 2.0	PCIe 3.0
x1	250 MByte/s	500 MByte/s	1000 MByte/s
x2	500 MByte/s	1000 MByte/s	2000 MByte/s
x4	1000 MByte/s	2000 MByte/s	4000 MByte/s
x8	2000 MByte/s	4000 MByte/s	8000 MByte/s
x16	4000 MByte/s	8000 MByte/s	16000 MByte/s
x32	8000 MByte/s	16000 MByte/s	32000 MByte/s

Table 5: Theoretical bandwidth of PCIe (PCI Express)

1394b also requires low latency for data transmission (due to small receive-FIFO). In order to get the most out of your camera-to-PC configuration, we recommend the following chipsets for your PC:

- For Intel-based desktops, chipset 945 (or higher)
- For non-Intel based desktops (e.g. AMD), PCI Express compatible chipset

[www](#)

For more information:



<http://support.intel.com/support/chipsets/#desktop>

For multi-camera applications one of the following bus cards is needed:

- PCI ExpressCard with potential 250 MByte/s per lane (up to four supported by chipset) or

**Caution**

As mentioned earlier, it is **very** important **not** to exceed an inrush current of 18 mJoule in 3 ms. (This means that a device, when powered via 12 V bus power must **never** draw more than 1.5 A, even not in the first 3 ms.)

**Higher inrush current may damage the physical interface chip of the camera and/or the phy chip in your PC.**

Whereas inrush current is not a problem for one Pike camera, daisy chaining multiple cameras or supplying bus power via (optional) HIROSE power out to circuitry with unknown inrush currents needs careful design considerations to be on the safe side.

**Requirements for laptop and 1394b**

As mentioned above, 1394b requires low latency for data transmission (small receive-FIFO). In order to get the most out of your camera-to-laptop configuration, we recommend the following chipset for your laptop:

- For Intel-based laptops, chipset 915 (or higher)
- For non-Intel based laptops (e.g. AMD), PCI Express compatible chipset

Because most laptops have (only) one PC-card interface, it is possible to connect one PIKE camera to your laptop at full speed. Alternatively laptops with an additional 1394 ExpressCard interface can be used.

**Note**

Recent developments at Apple (TM) allow the INTEL based Apple computers (both laptops as well as desktops) to run a Win-OS. This makes it possible to use AVT 1394 camera technology with the same AVT-SDKs.

The following cardbus adapter for laptops allows the connection of two industrial screw locking cables (obtainable at AVT).

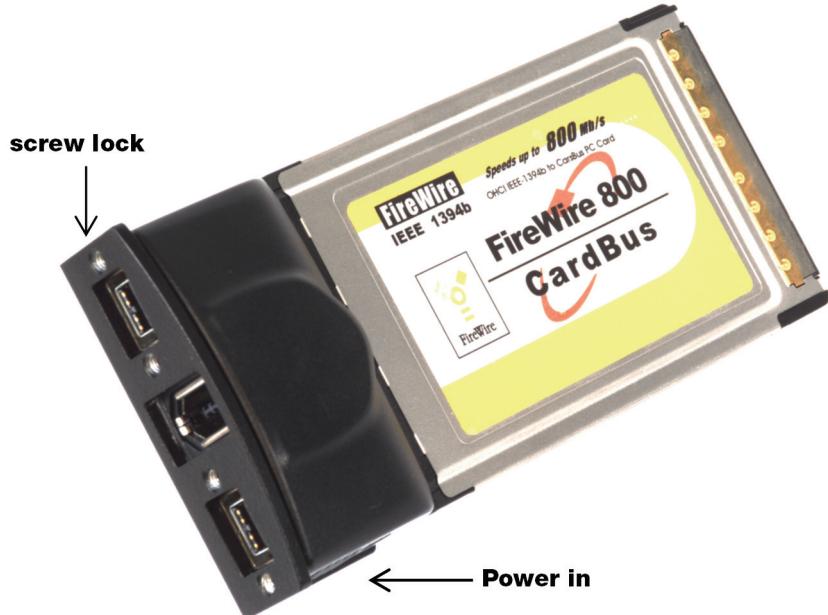


Figure 5: Cardbus adapter with two screw locks (AVT order number E3000104)



Figure 6: ExpressCard Logo, ExpressCard/54 (SIIG)

## ExpressCard Technology vs. CardBus

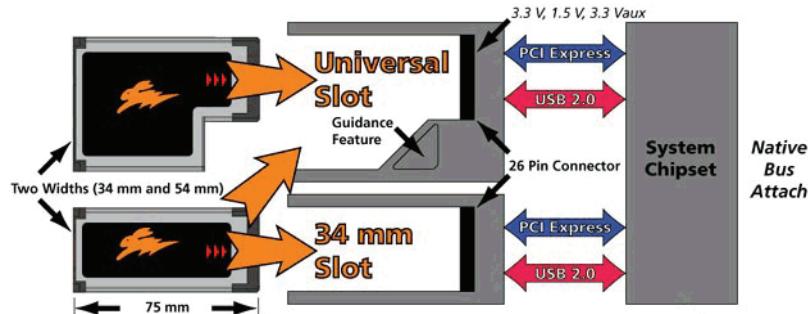


Figure 7: ExpressCard technology

[www](http://www.expresscard.org/web/site/)



ExpressCard is a new standard set by PCMCIA.

For more information visit:

<http://www.expresscard.org/web/site/>

### Example 1: 1394b bandwidth of PIKE cameras

PIKE model	Resolution	Frame rate	Bandwidth
Pike F-032 B/C	VGA	208 fps	62.5 MByte/s
Pike F-100 B/C	1 megapixel	60 fps	57.6 MByte/s
Pike F-145 B/C	1.4 megapixel	30 fps	41.4 MByte/s
Pike F-210 B/C	2.1 megapixel	31 fps	62.5 MByte/s
Pike F-421 B/C	4 megapixel	15 fps	62.5 MByte/s
Pike F-505 B/C	5 megapixel	13 fps	62.5 MByte/s
Pike F-1100 B/C	10.7 megapixel	2.6 fps (single-tap) 4.9 fps (dual-tap)	26.6 MByte/s 50.0 MByte/s
Pike F-1600 B/C	15.8 megapixel	1.7 fps (single-tap) 3.1 fps (dual-tap)	25.7 MByte/s 46.8 MByte/s

Table 6: Bandwidth of Pike cameras

**Note**

All data are calculated using Raw8 / Mono8 color mode.  
Higher bit depths or color modes will double or triple bandwidth requirements.

**Example 2: More than one PIKE camera at full speed**

Due to the fact that one Pike camera can, depending on its settings, saturate a 32-bit PCI bus, you are advised to use either a PCI Express card and/or multiple 64-bit PCI bus cards, if you want to use 2 or more Pike cameras simultaneously (see the following table).

# cameras	PC hardware required
1 Pike camera at full speed	1 x 32-bit PCI bus card (85 MByte/s)
2 or more Pike cameras at full speed	PCI Express card and/or Multiple 64-bit PCI bus cards

Table 7: Required hardware for multiple camera applications

## FireWire Plug & play capabilities

FireWire devices implement the ISO/IEC 13213 **configuration ROM** model for device configuration and identification, to provide plug & play capability. All FireWire devices are identified by an IEEE EUI-64 unique identifier (an extension of the 48-bit Ethernet MAC address format) in addition to well-known codes indicating the type of device and protocols it supports. For further details read Chapter [Configuration of the camera](#) on page 281.

## FireWire hot-plug and screw-lock precautions

### Caution



### Hot-plug precautions

- Although FireWire devices can **theoretically** be hot-plugged without powering down equipment, **we strongly recommend turning the computer power off, before connecting a digital camera** to it via a FireWire cable.
- **Static electricity or slight plug misalignment during insertion may short-circuit and damage components.**
- The physical ports **may be damaged** by **excessive ESD** (electrostatic discharge), when connected under powered conditions. It is good practice to ensure proper grounding of computer case and camera case to the same ground potential, before plugging the camera cable into the port of the computer. This ensures that no excessive difference of electrical potential exists between computer and camera.
- It is **very important not** to exceed the **inrush energy of 18 mJoule in 3 ms.** (This means that a device, when powered via 12 V bus power must **never** draw more than 1.5 A, but only 0.5 A in the first 3 ms, assuming constant flow of current.)
- **Higher inrush current may damage the physical interface chip of the camera and/or the phy chip in your PC.** Whereas inrush current is not a problem for one Pike camera, daisy chaining multiple cameras or supplying bus power via (optional) HIROSE power out to circuitry with unknown inrush currents needs careful design considerations to be on the safe side.

## Screw-lock and power supply precautions

### Caution



### Screw-lock precautions

- Also, all AVT 1394b camera and cables have **industrial screw-lock fasteners**, to insure a tight electrical connection that is resistant to vibration and gravity.
- **We strongly recommend using only 1394b adapter cards with screw-locks.**

### Power supply precautions

- Make sure **not** to touch the shield of the camera cable connected to a computer and the ground terminal of the lines at the same time.
- If you are charged: before touching the shield of the camera cable, make sure to discharge first (by touching the ground terminal of the lines).
- Use only DC power supplies with insulated cases. These are identified by having **only two** power connectors.
- If you feel uncomfortable with the previous advice or if you have no knowledge about the connectivity of an installation, **we strongly recommend powering down all systems before connecting or disconnecting a camera.**

## Operating system support

Operating system	1394a	1394b
Linux	Full support	Full support
Apple Mac OS X	Full support	Full support
Windows XP	<p>With SP2 / SP3 the default speed for 1394b is S100 (100 Mbit/s). A download and registry modification is available from Microsoft to restore performance to either S400 or S800.</p> <p><a href="http://support.microsoft.com/kb/885222">http://support.microsoft.com/kb/885222</a></p> <p>Alternatively use the drivers of SP1 instead.</p> <p><b>We strongly recommend to install AVT FirePackage</b>, which replaces the Microsoft driver. (See <b>AVT FirePackage User Guide</b> for details.)</p>	
Windows Vista	Full support from beginning	<p>Vista incl. SP1/SP2 supports 1394b only with S400.</p> <p>Use either the driver of the <b>AVT Universal Package</b> or install the driver provided with the <b>AVT 1394 Bus Driver Package</b>. Both drivers replace the Microsoft OHCI IEEE 1394 driver, but the second is 100% compliant to the driver of Microsoft. This means, applications using the MS1394 driver will continue to work.</p>
Windows 7	Full support	Full support

Table 8: FireWire and operating systems

www



For more information see **AVT Software Selector Guide**:

<http://www.alliedvisiontec.com/emea/support/downloads/software.html>

# Filter and lenses

## IR cut filter: spectral transmission

The following illustration shows the spectral transmission of the IR cut filter:

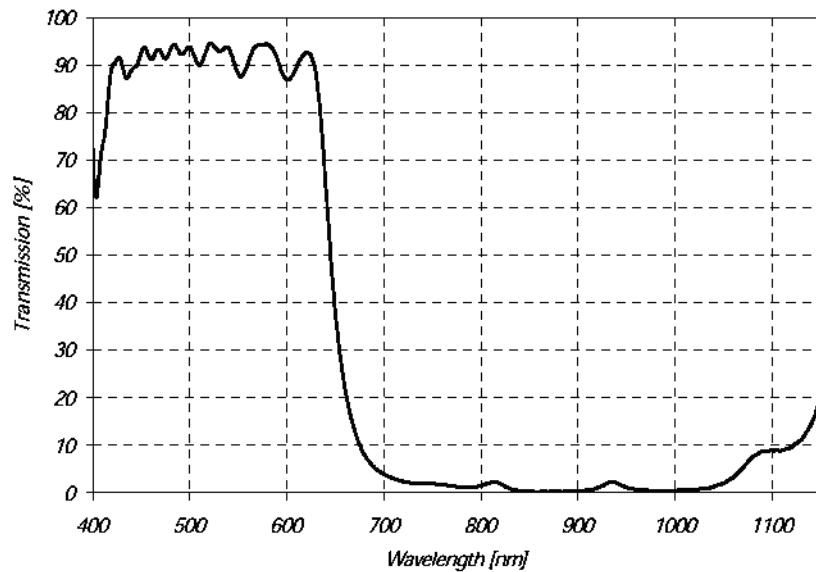


Figure 8: Spectral transmission of Jenofilt 217

## Camera lenses

AVT offers different lenses from a variety of manufacturers. The following table lists selected image formats depending on camera type, distance and the focal length of the lens.

**Note**



All values listed in the following tables are theoretical and therefore only **approximate values** (focal length and field of view).

Focal length for type 1/3 sensors PIKE F-032	Distance = 0.5 m	Distance = 1 m
4.8 mm	0.38 m x 0.5 m	0.75 m x 1 m
8 mm	0.22 m x 0.29 m	0.44 m x 0.58 m
12 mm	0.15 m x 0.19 m	0.29 m x 0.38 m
16 mm	11 cm x 15 cm	22 cm x 29 cm
25 mm	6.9 cm x 9.2 cm	14 cm x 18 cm
35 mm	4.8 cm x 6.4 cm	9.6 cm x 13 cm
50 mm	3.3 cm x 4.4 cm	6.6 cm x 8.8 cm

Table 9: Focal length vs. field of view (PIKE F-032)

Focal length for type 2/3 sensors PIKE F-100/F-145/F-505	Distance = 0.5 m	Distance = 1 m
4.8 mm	0.7 m x 0.9 m	1.4 m x 1.9 m
8 mm	0.4 m x 0.5 m	0.8 m x 1.1 m
12 mm	0.27 m x 0.36 m	0.54 m x 0.72 m
16 mm	0.2 m x 0.27 m	0.4 m x 0.54 m
25 mm	13 cm x 17 cm	26 cm x 34 cm
35 mm	8.8 cm x 12 cm	18 cm x 24 cm
50 mm	6 cm x 7.9 cm	12 cm x 17 cm

Table 10: Focal length vs. field of view (PIKE F-100/F-145/F-505)

<b>Focal length for type 1 sensors PIKE F-210</b>	<b>Distance = 0.5 m</b>	<b>Distance = 1 m</b>
8 mm	0.6 m x 0.8 m	1.2 m x 1.6 m
12 mm	0.39 m x 0.52 m	0.78 m x 1.2 m
16 mm	0.29 m x 0.38 m	0.58 m x 0.76 m
25 mm	18 cm x 24 cm	36 cm x 49 cm
35 mm	13 cm x 17 cm	26 cm x 34 cm
50 mm	8.8 cm x 12 cm	18 cm x 23 cm

Table 11: Focal length vs. field of view (PIKE F-210)

**Note**



Lenses with focal lengths < 35 mm will very likely show excessive shading in the edges of the image due to the fact that the image size of the sensor is slightly bigger than the C-mount itself and due to microlenses on the sensor's pixel.  
Ask your dealer if you require non C-Mount lenses.

<b>Focal length for type 1.2 sensors PIKE F-421</b>	<b>Distance = 0.5 m</b>	<b>Distance = 1 m</b>
35 mm	20 cm x 20 cm	42 cm x 42 cm
50 mm	14 cm x 14 cm	29 cm x 29 cm

Table 12: Focal length vs. field of view (PIKE F-421)

<b>Focal length for type 35 mm sensors PIKE F-1100/F-1600</b>	<b>Distance = 0.5 m</b>	<b>Distance = 1 m</b>
18 mm	64 cm x 96 cm	1.3 m x 2.0 m
21 mm	55 cm x 82 cm	1.1 m x 1.7 m
25 mm	46 cm x 68 cm	0.94 m x 1.4 m
28 mm	41 cm x 61 cm	0.83 m x 1.3 m
35 mm	32 cm x 48 cm	66 cm x 99 cm
50 mm	22 cm x 32 cm	46 cm x 68 cm
90 mm	11 cm x 16 cm	24 cm x 36 cm

Table 13: Focal length vs. field of view (PIKE F-1100/F-1600)

# Camera dimensions

**Note**



For information on **sensor position accuracy**:

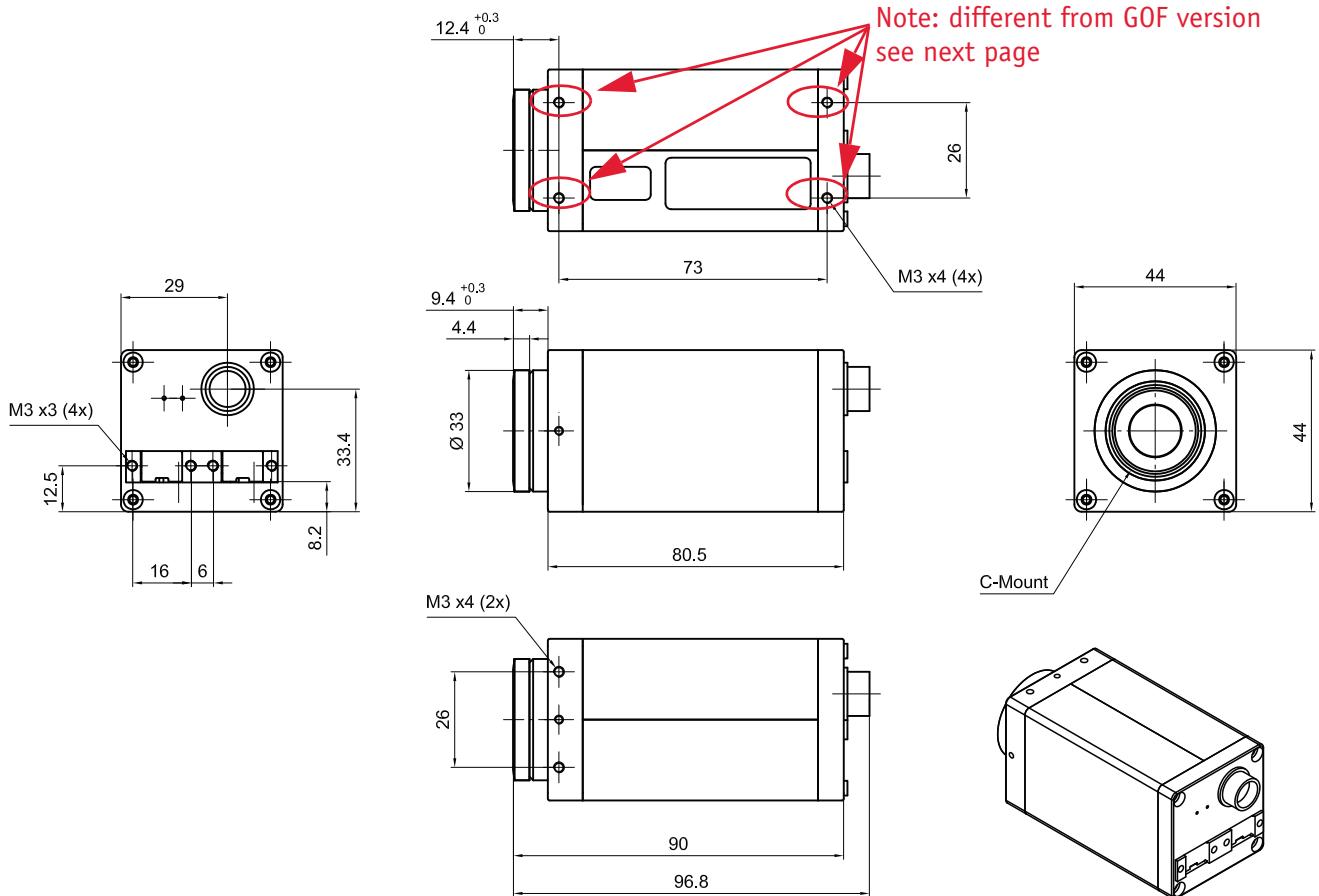
(sensor shift x/y, optical back focal length z and sensor rotation  $\alpha$ ) see Chapter [Sensor position accuracy of AVT cameras](#) on page 366.

## Serial numbers for starting new front flange

Camera model	E-number	Starting ...
Pike F-421B	E0000882	... from SN: 09/16-269066321
Pike F-505B	E0001141	... from SN: 09/16-269066246

Table 14: Starting serial numbers for new front flange

## Pike standard housing (2 x 1394b copper)

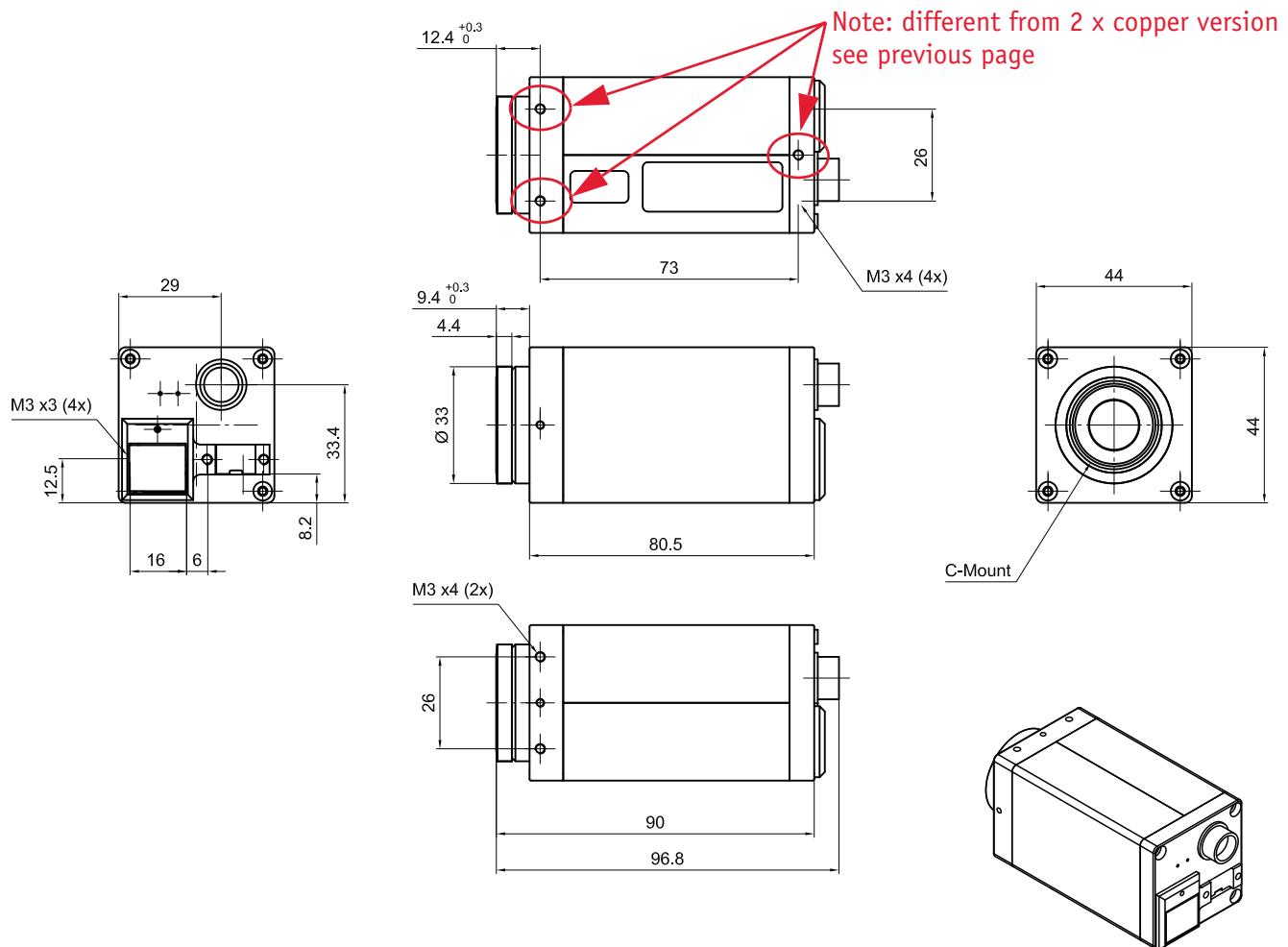


Body size: 96.8 mm x 44 mm x 44 mm (L x W x H)

Mass: 250 g (without lens)

Figure 9: Camera dimensions (2 x 1394b copper)

## Pike (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)



Body size: 96.8 mm x 44 mm x 44 mm (L x W x H)

Mass: 250 g (without lens)

Figure 10: Camera dimensions (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

## Tripod adapter

This tripod adapter is only designed for standard housings, but not for the angled head versions.

**Note**



If you need a tripod adapter for **angled head** versions,  
**please contact Customer Care**. See Chapter [Contacting Allied Vision Technologies](#) on page 11.

**Tripods for F-Mount and M42-Mount (both for Pike F-1100 and F-1600):**

see Chapter [Pike F-Mount: Tripod adapter](#) on page 68 and  
Chapter [Pike F-Mount: Tripod adapter](#) on page 68.

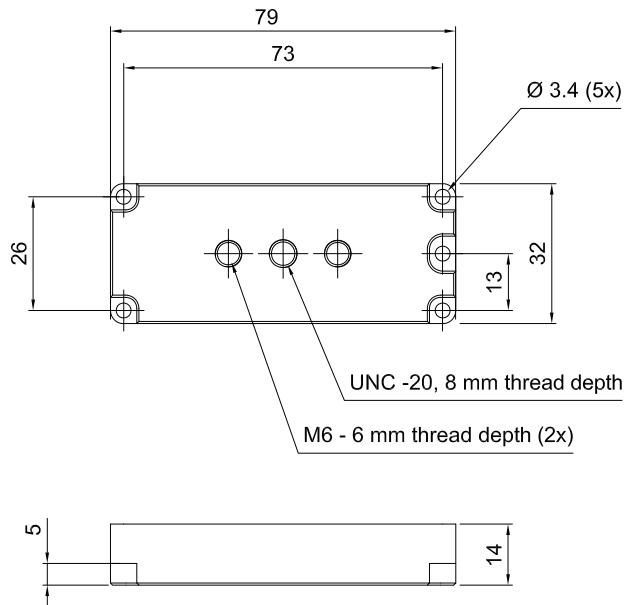


Figure 11: Tripod dimensions

## Pike W90 (2 x 1394b copper)

This version has the sensor tilted by 90 degrees clockwise, so that it views upwards.

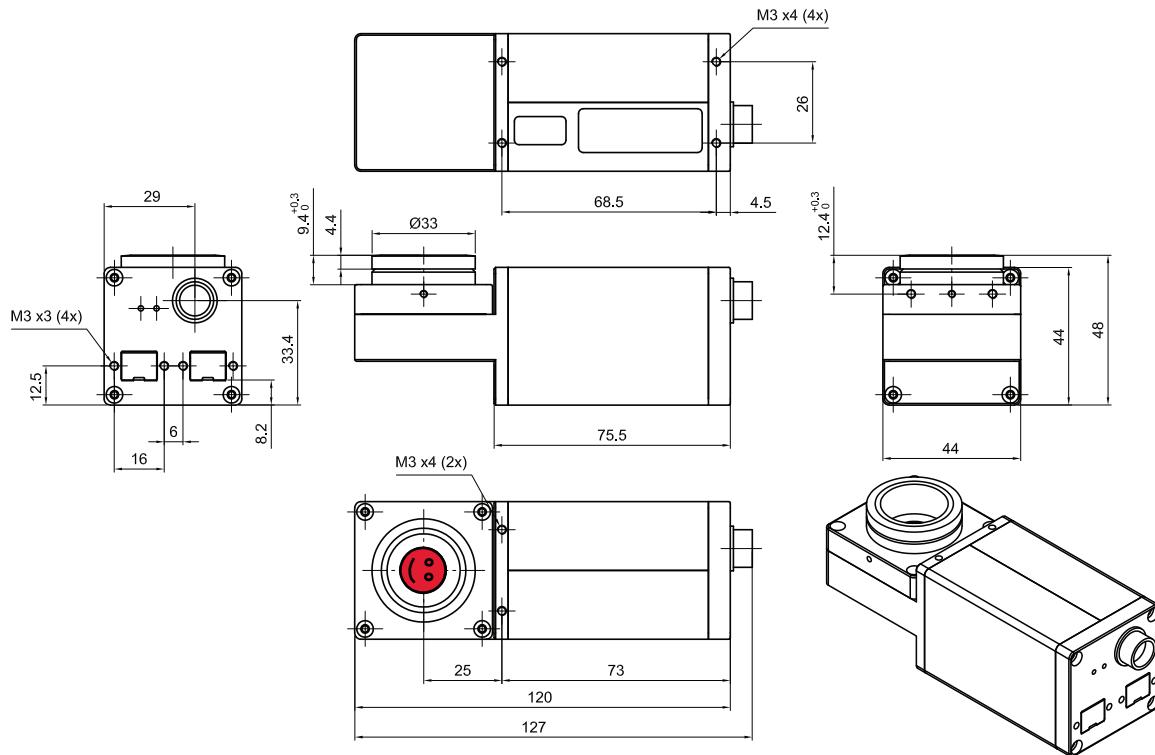


Figure 12: Pike W90 (2 x 1394b copper)

## Pike W90 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

This version has the sensor tilted by 90 degrees clockwise, so that it views upwards.

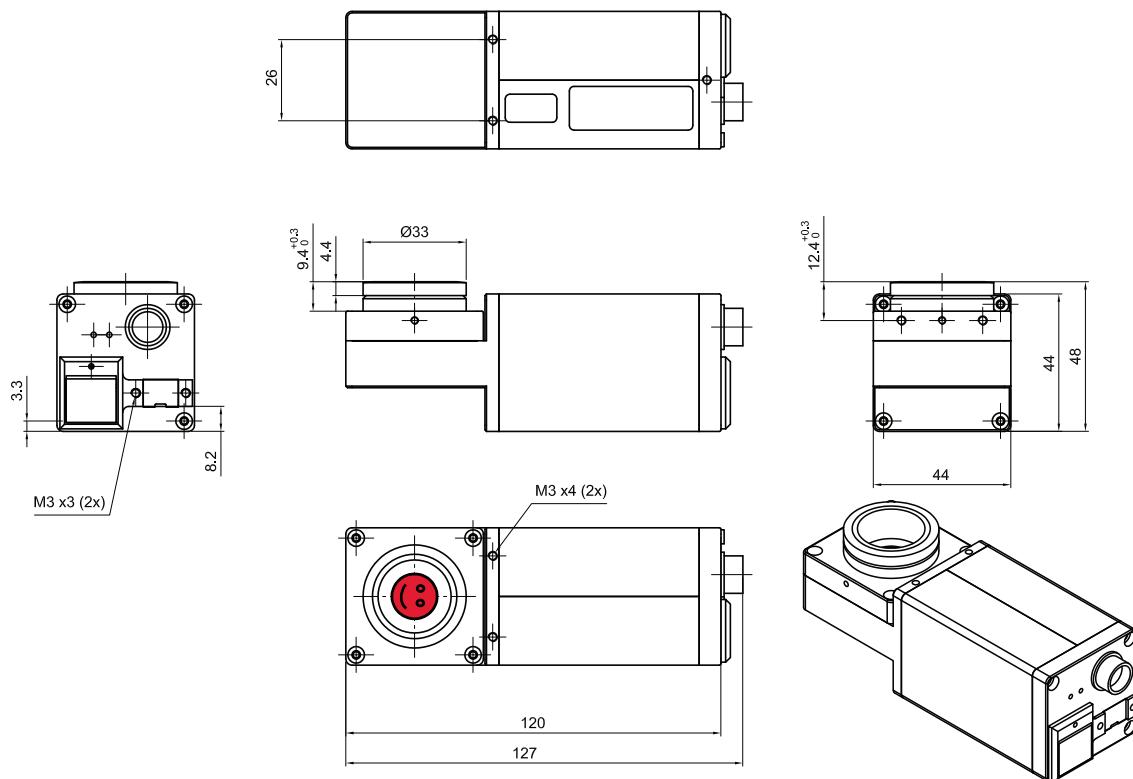


Figure 13: Pike W90 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

## Pike W90 S90 (2 x 1394b copper)

This version has the sensor tilted by 90 degrees clockwise, so that it views upwards.

The sensor is also rotated by 90 degrees clockwise.

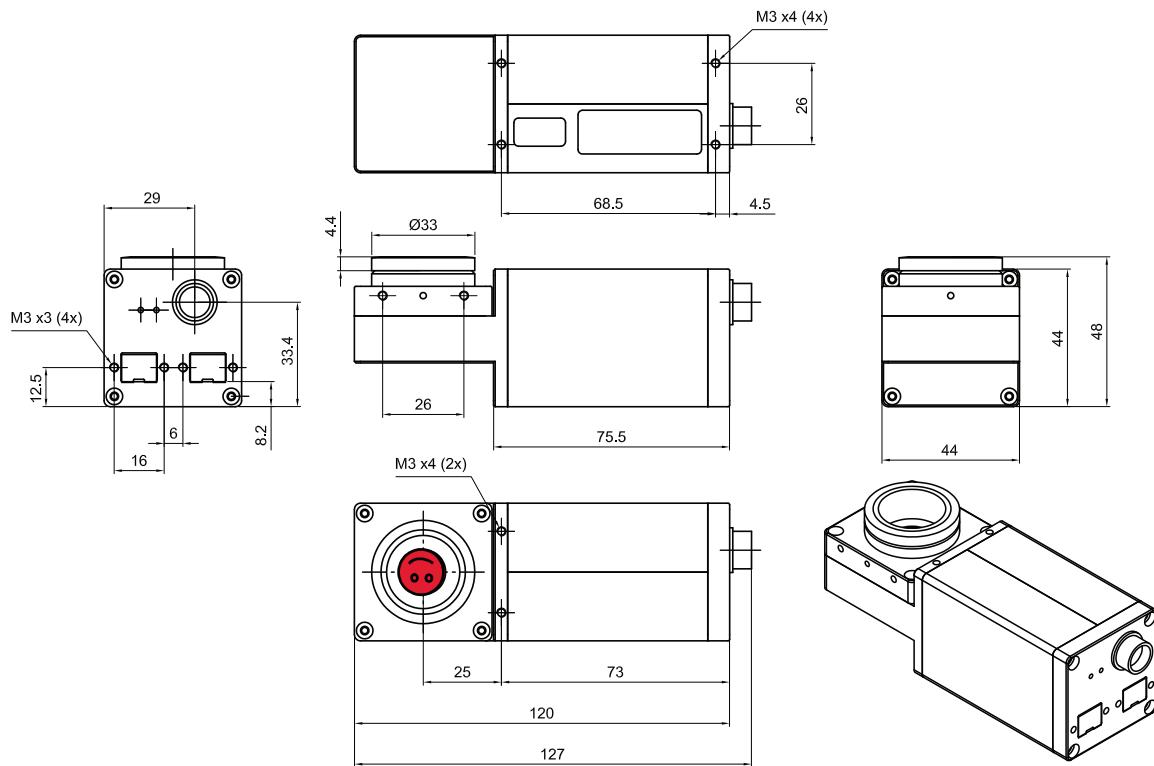


Figure 14: Pike W90 S90 (2 x 1394b copper)

## Pike W90 S90 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

This version has the sensor tilted by 90 degrees clockwise, so that it views upwards.

The sensor is also rotated by 90 degrees clockwise.

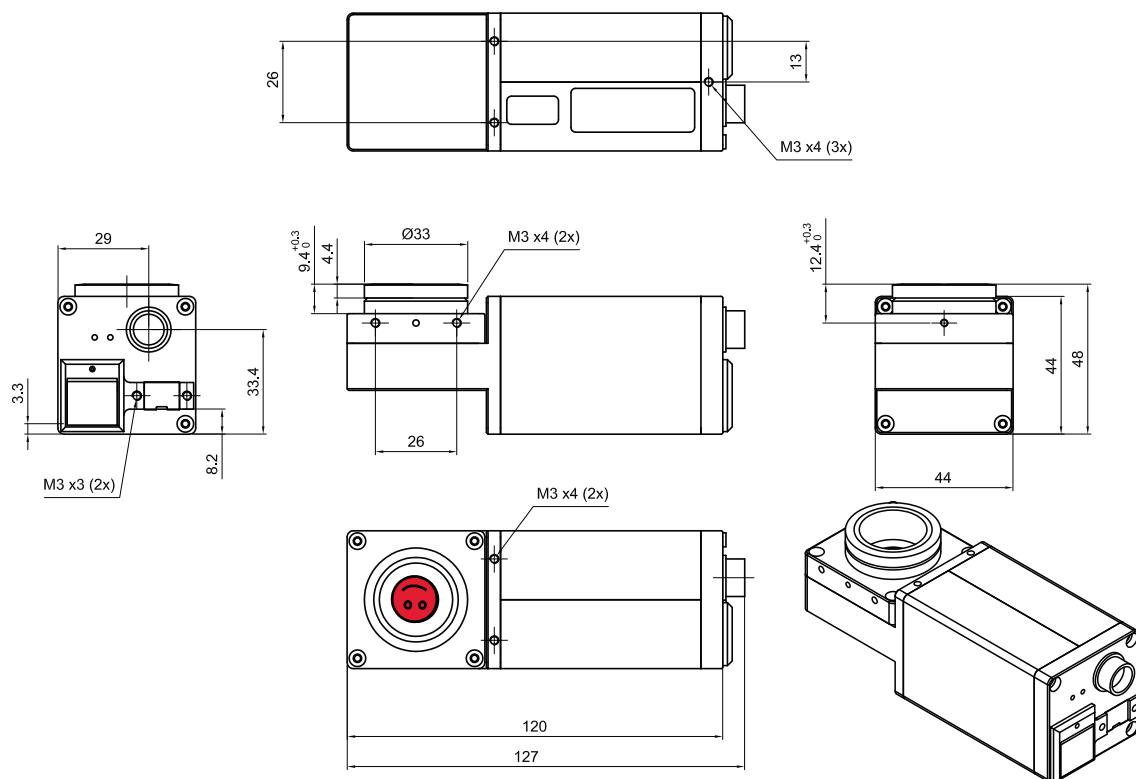


Figure 15: Pike W90 S90 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

## Pike W270 (2 x 1394b copper)

This version has the sensor tilted by 270 degrees clockwise, so that it views downwards.

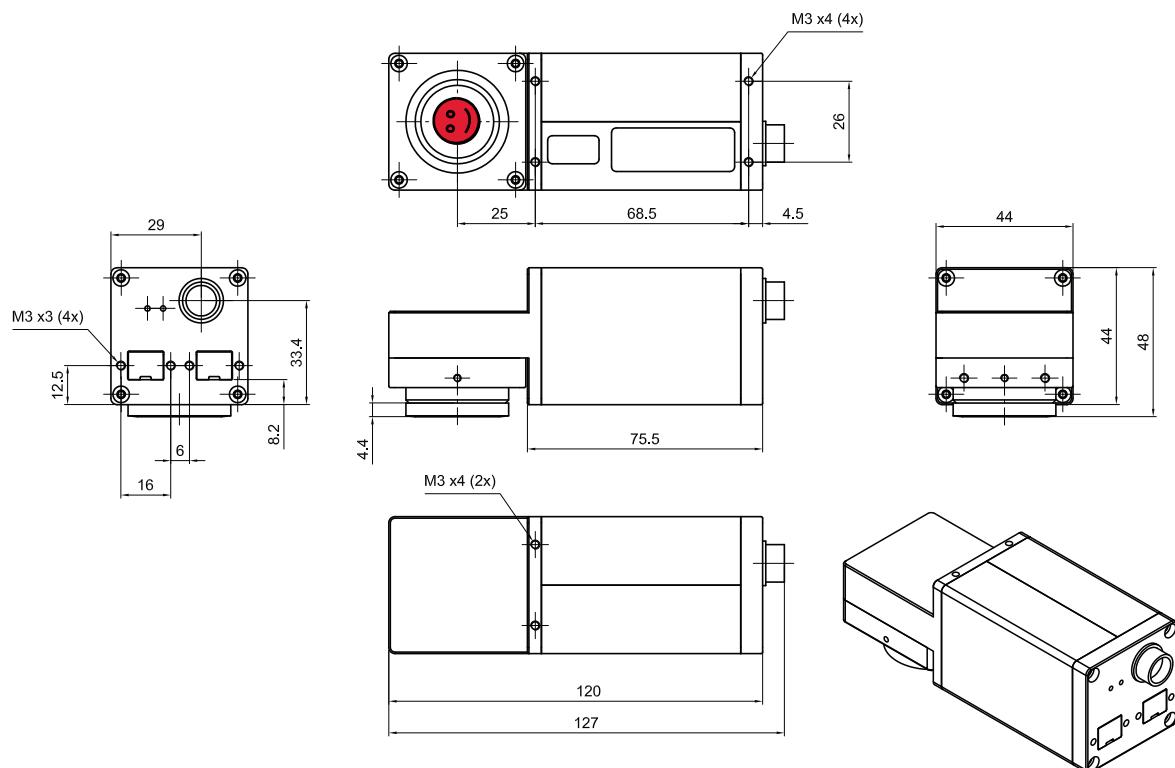


Figure 16: Pike W270 (2 x 1394b copper)

## Pike W270 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

This version has the sensor tilted by 270 degrees clockwise, so that it views downwards.

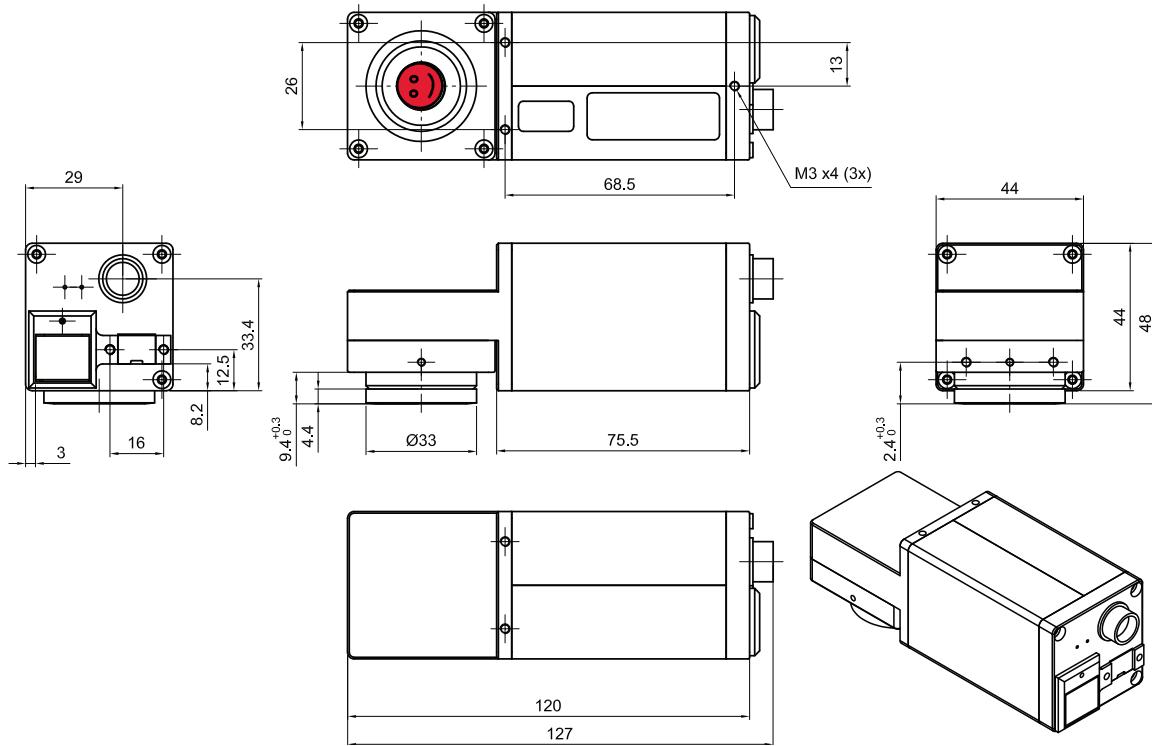


Figure 17: Pike W270 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

## Pike W270 S90 (2 x 1394b copper)

This version has the sensor tilted by 270 degrees clockwise, so that it views downwards.

The sensor is also rotated by 90 degrees clockwise.

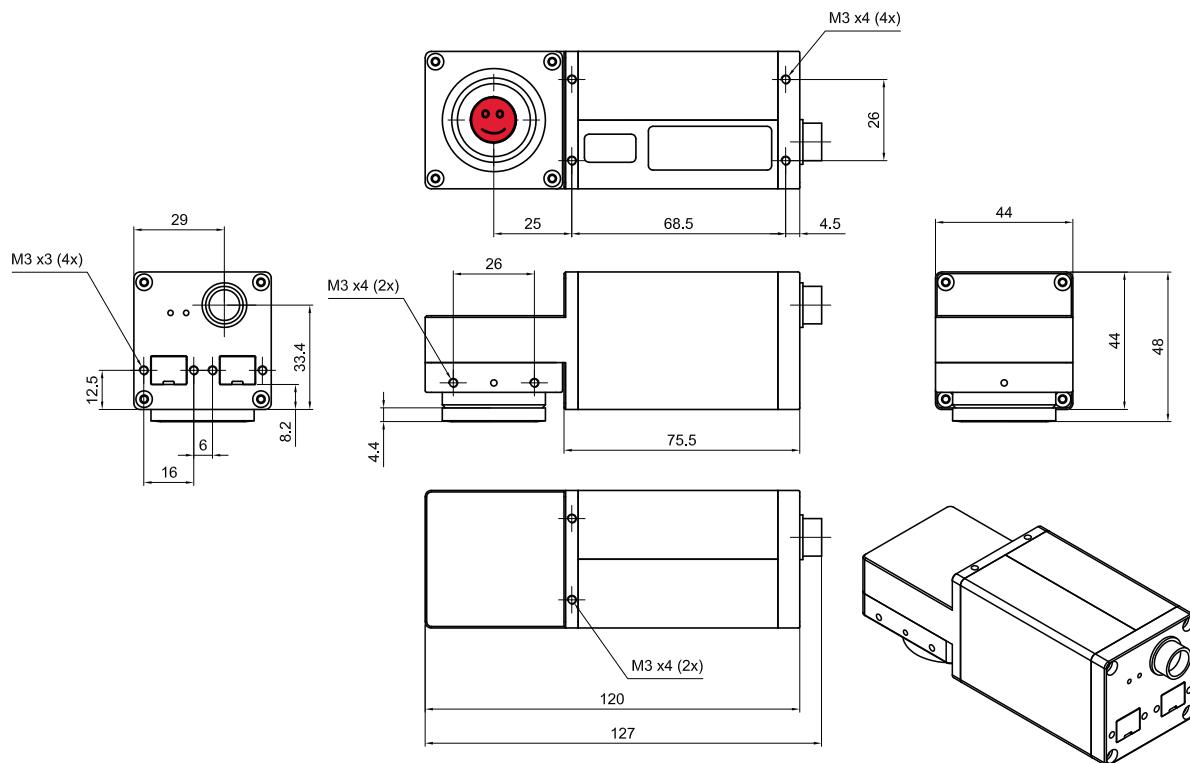


Figure 18: Pike W270 S90 (2 x 1394b copper)

## Pike W270 S90 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

This version has the sensor tilted by 270 degrees clockwise, so that it views downwards.

The sensor is also rotated by 90 degrees clockwise.

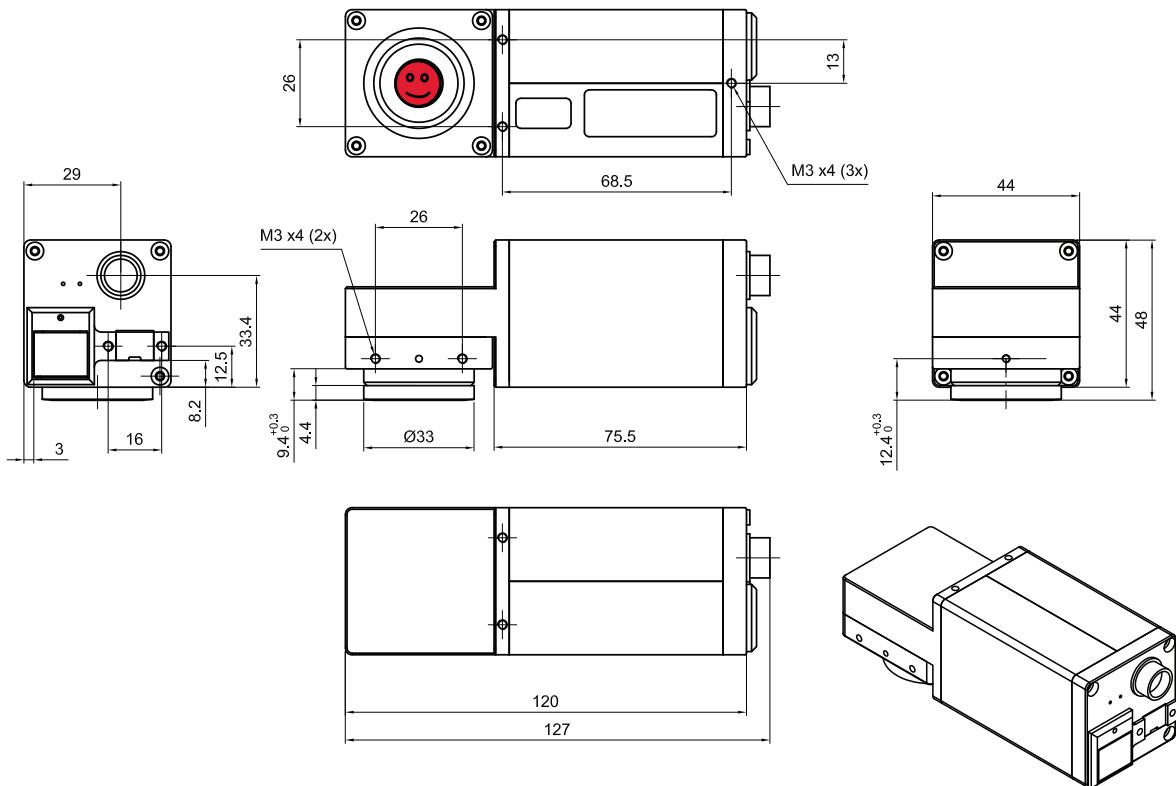


Figure 19: Pike W270 S90 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

## Cross section: CS-Mount (only PIKE F-032B/C)

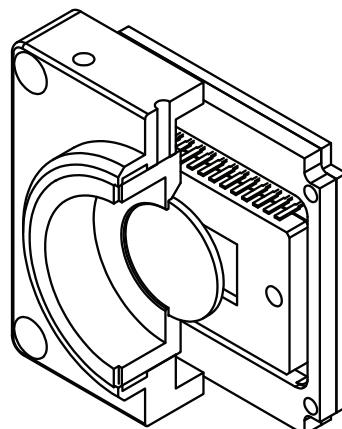
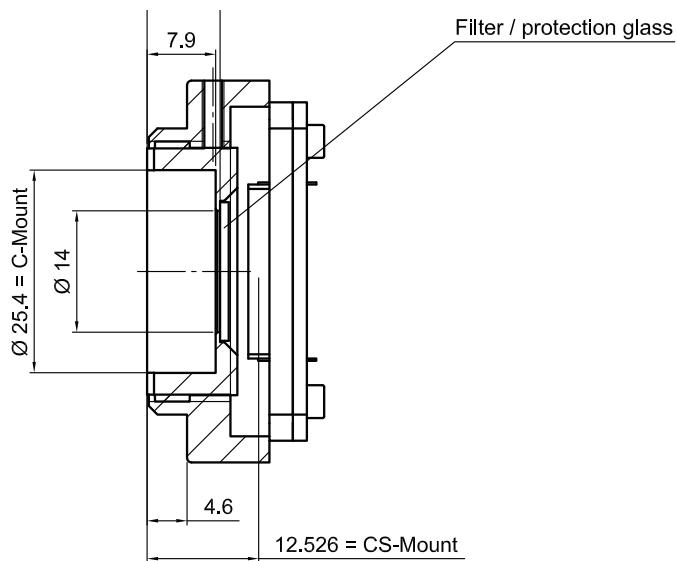


Figure 20: Pike CS-Mount dimensions (only PIKE F-032B/C)

## Cross section: C-Mount (VGA size filter)

PIKE F-032/100/145/505 cameras are equipped with VGA size filter.

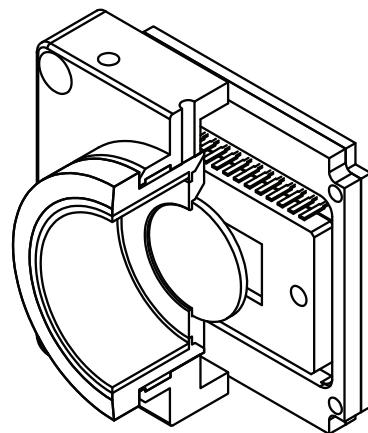
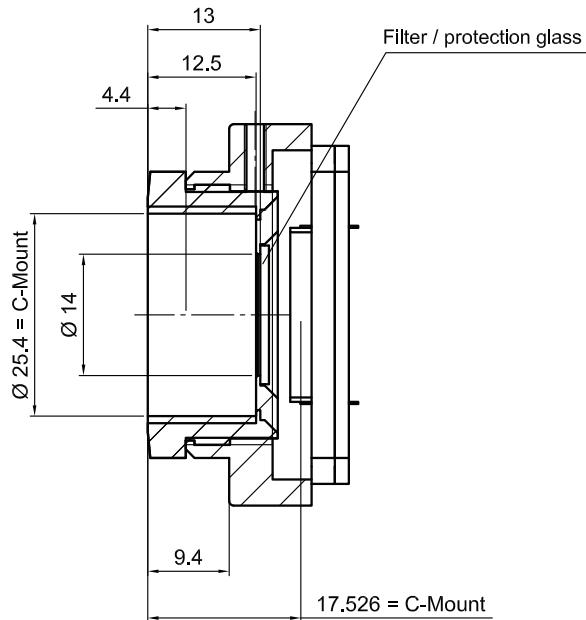


Figure 21: Pike C-Mount dimensions (VGA size filter)

## Cross section: C-Mount (large filter)

PIKE F-210/421 are equipped with a large filter.

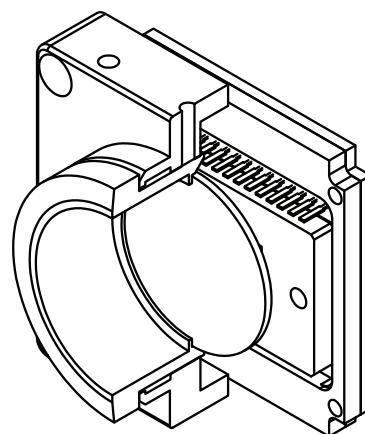
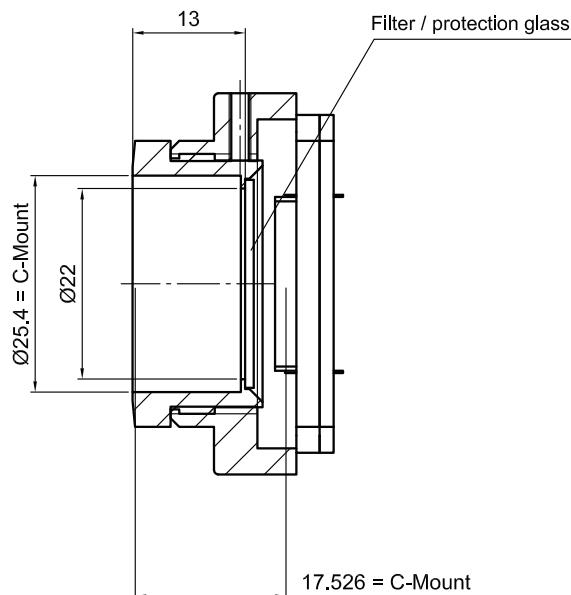


Figure 22: Pike C-Mount dimensions (large filter)

## Adjustment of C-Mount

PIKE cameras allow the precise adjustment of the back focus of the C-Mount by means of a **back focus ring** which is threaded into the C-Mount and held by **two** screws: one on the top (middle) and one on the right side of the camera. The mechanical adjustment of the imaging device is important in order to achieve a perfect alignment with the focal point of the lens.

Individual adjustment may be required:

- if you cannot focus correctly at near or far distances or
- if the back focal plane of your lens does not conform to the C-Mount back-focus specification or
- if you have e.g. removed the IR cut filter.

loosen both screws on top and the right side of the camera

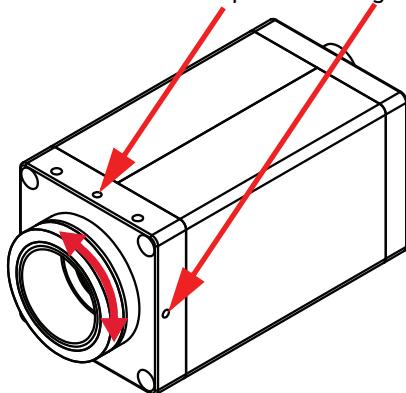


Figure 23: Back focus adjustment

Do the following:

1. Looking in front of the lens loosen both screws on the top (middle) and the right side of the housing (locations as shown above by arrows) with an Allen key (1.3 x 50; Order#: K 9020411). If one of this screws is not available (angled head models W90/W270 S90), use the screw on the other side.
2. With the lens set to infinity or a known focus distance, set the camera to view an object located at *infinity* or the known distance.
3. Rotate the C-Mount ring and lens forward or backwards on its thread until the object is in sharp focus. Be careful that the lens remains seated in the C-Mount.
4. Once focus is achieved, tighten the two locking screws without applying excessive torque.

## Adjustment of F-Mount for Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600

Different from the other Pike cameras Pike: F-1100/F-1600 have built-in filter that cannot be removed.

The dimensional adjustment cannot be done by the customer. All adjustments have to be done by the AVT factory.

**If you need any adjustments, please contact Customer Care:** For phone numbers and e-mail: See Chapter [Contacting Allied Vision Technologies](#) on page 11.

## F-Mount

For Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600 the following mounts will be available:

- F-Mount (standard)
- M42-Mount (optional)
- M58-Mount (optional)

**Note**

For Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600:

- No K-Mount available.
- No M39-Mount available.



## Pike F-Mount: standard housing (2 x 1394b copper)

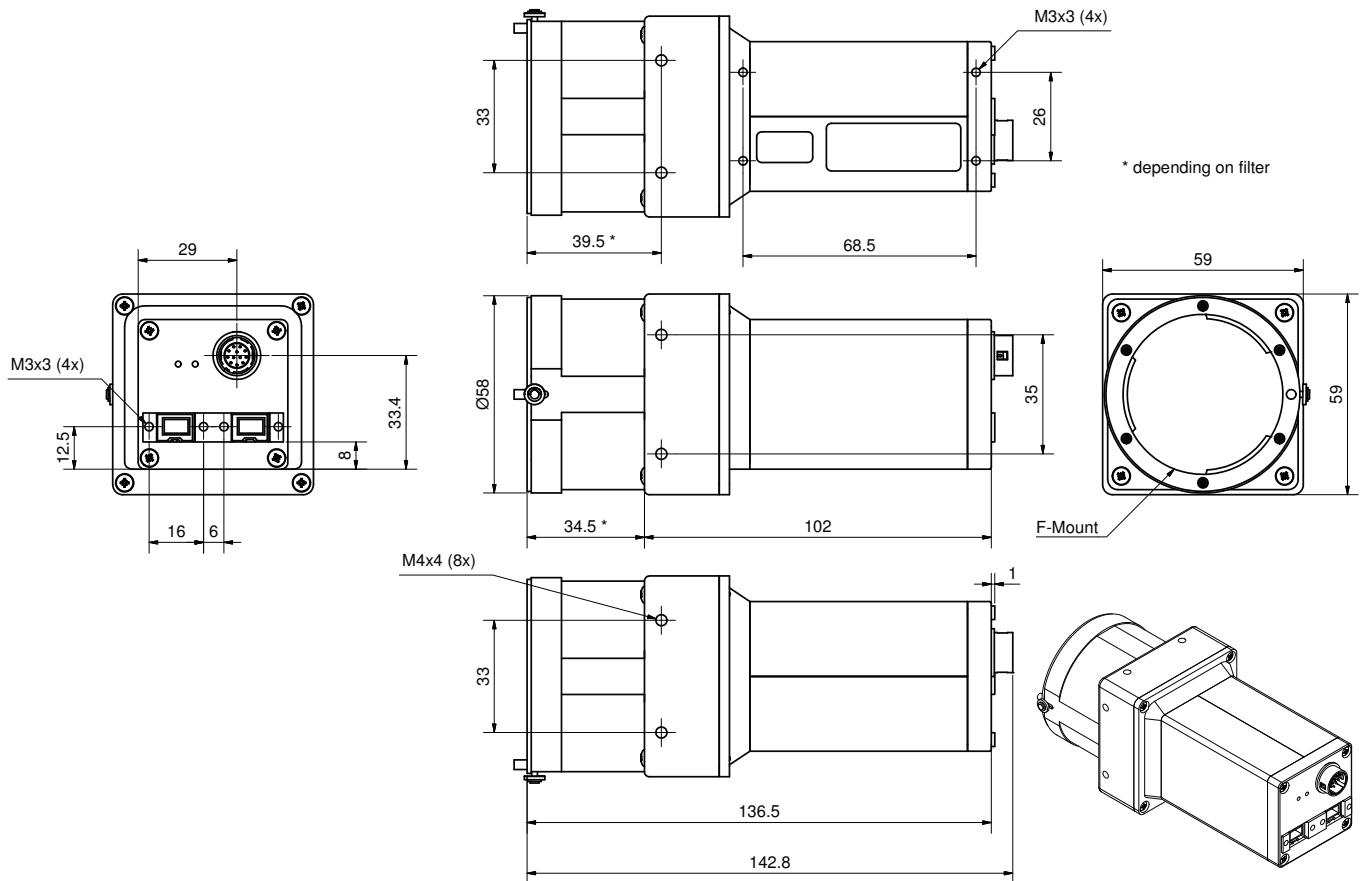


Figure 24: F-Mount Pike standard housing (2 x 1394b copper)

### Pike F-Mount (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

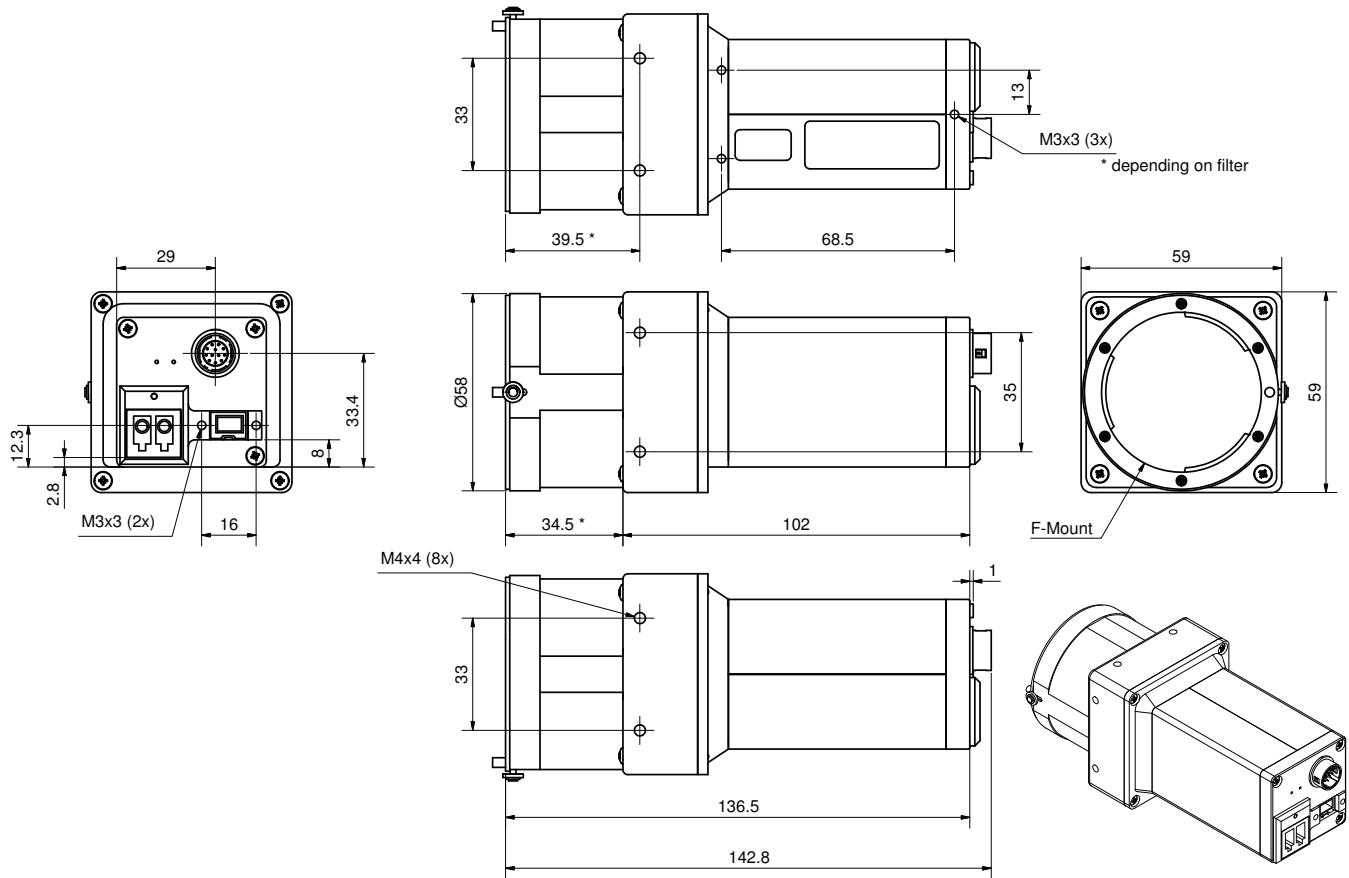


Figure 25: F-Mount Pike standard housing (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

## Pike F-Mount: Tripod adapter

This tripod adapter is designed for Pike F-Mount/M42-Mount/M58-Mount standard housings.

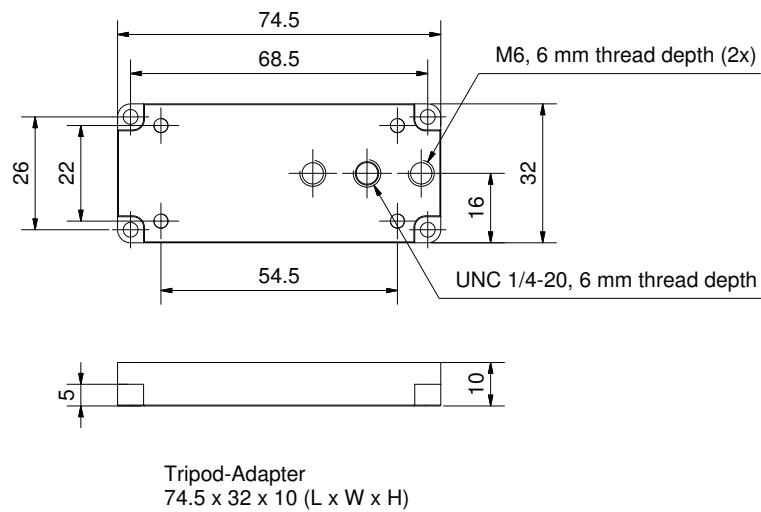


Figure 26: Tripod dimensions

## Pike F-Mount: W270 (2 x 1394b copper)

This version has the sensor tilted by 270 degrees clockwise, so that it views downwards.

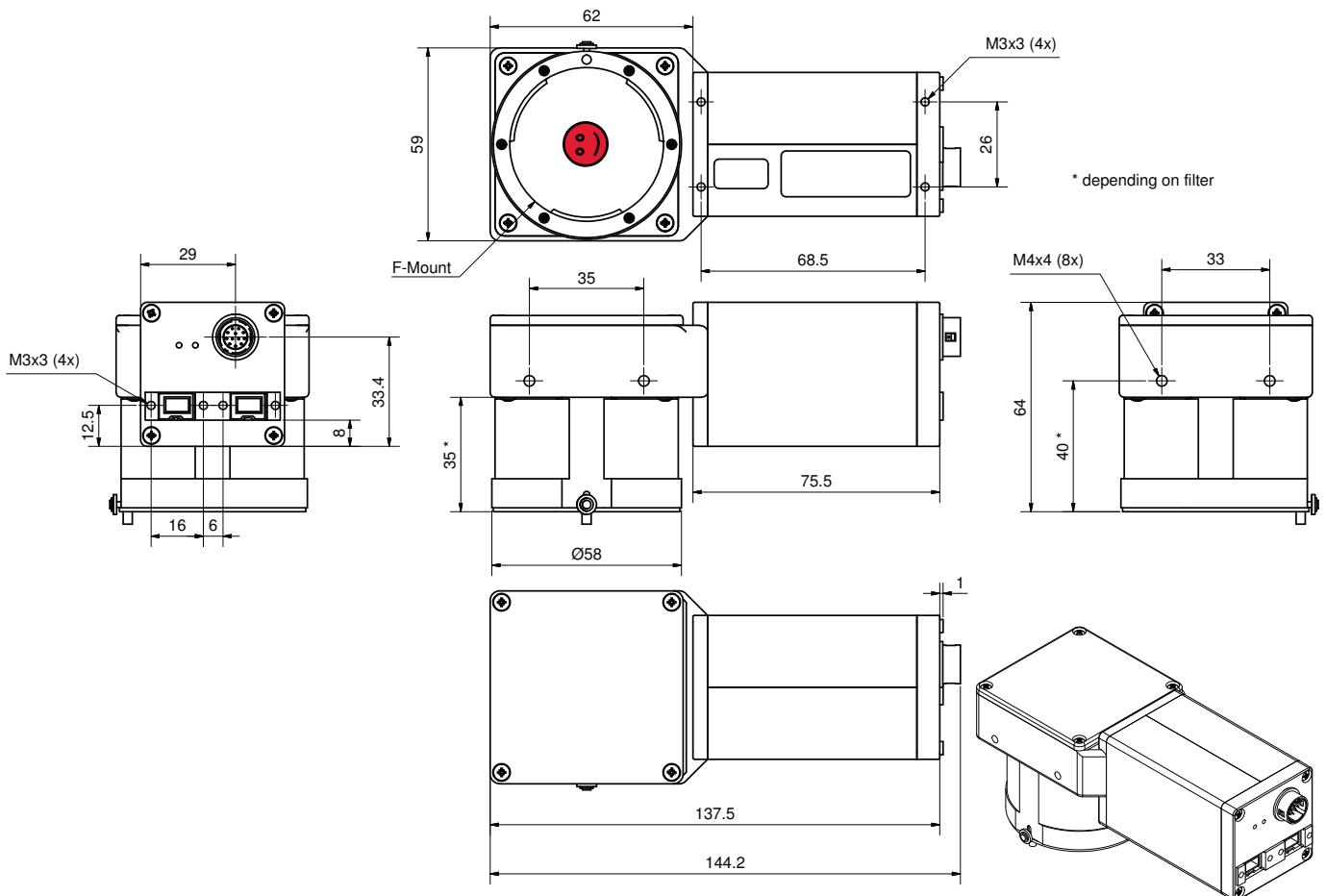


Figure 27: F-Mount Pike W270 (2 x 1394b copper)

## Pike F-Mount: W270 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

This version has the sensor tilted by 270 degrees clockwise, so that it views downwards.

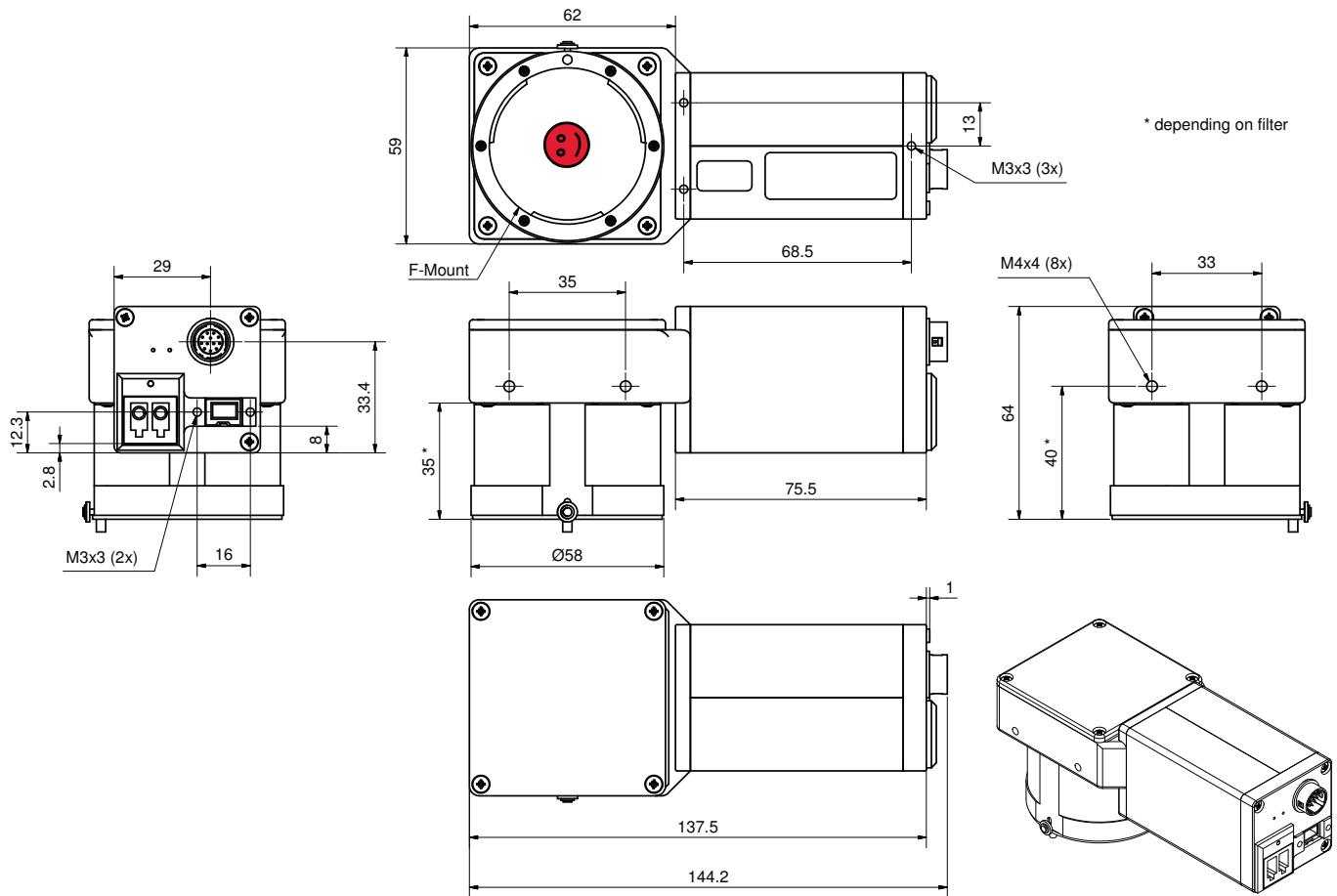


Figure 28: F-Mount Pike W270 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

## Cross section: F-Mount

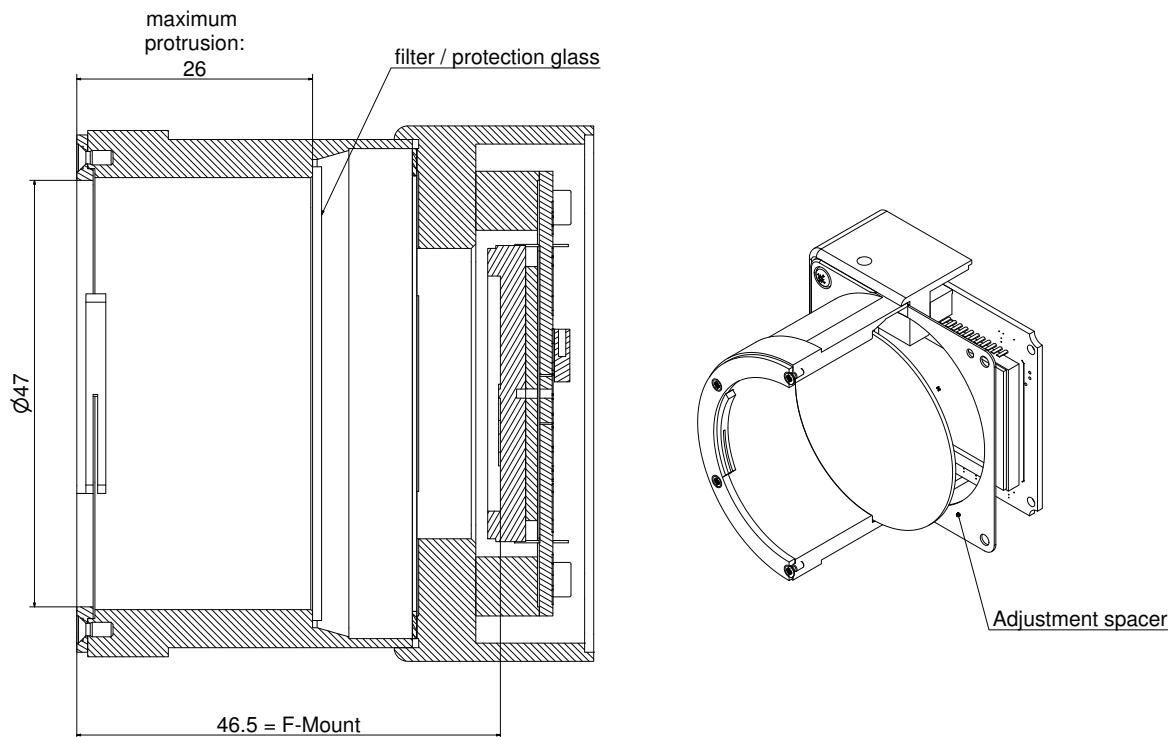


Figure 29: Pike F-Mount dimensions (standard for Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600)

## K-Mount, M39-Mount

**Note** For other mounts (e.g. K-Mount, M39-Mount) please contact your distributor.



**Note** Pike F-210 and Pike F-421 can be equipped at factory site with **M39-Mount** instead of C-Mount.



M39-Mount is ideally suited for Voigtländer (aka Voigtlander) short focal length optics. See drawing below for further details.

Please ask AVT or your local dealer if you require further information.

### Cross section: M39-Mount

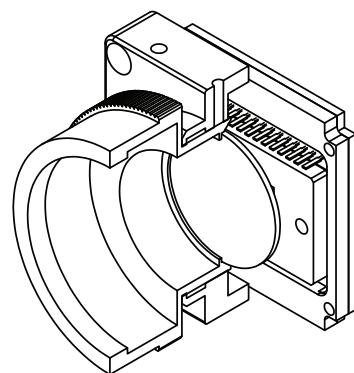
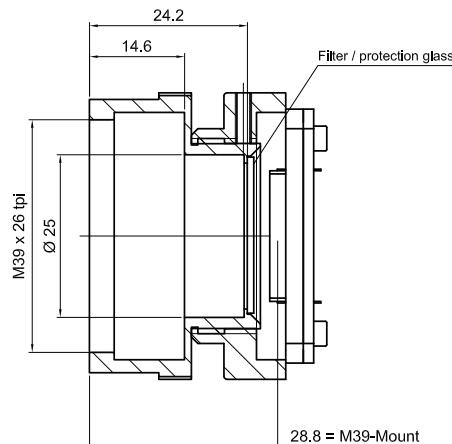


Figure 30: Pike M39-Mount dimensions (only Pike F-210 and Pike F-421)

## M42-Mount

Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600 cameras can optionally be ordered with M42-Mount.

### Pike M42-Mount: standard housing (2 x 1394b copper)

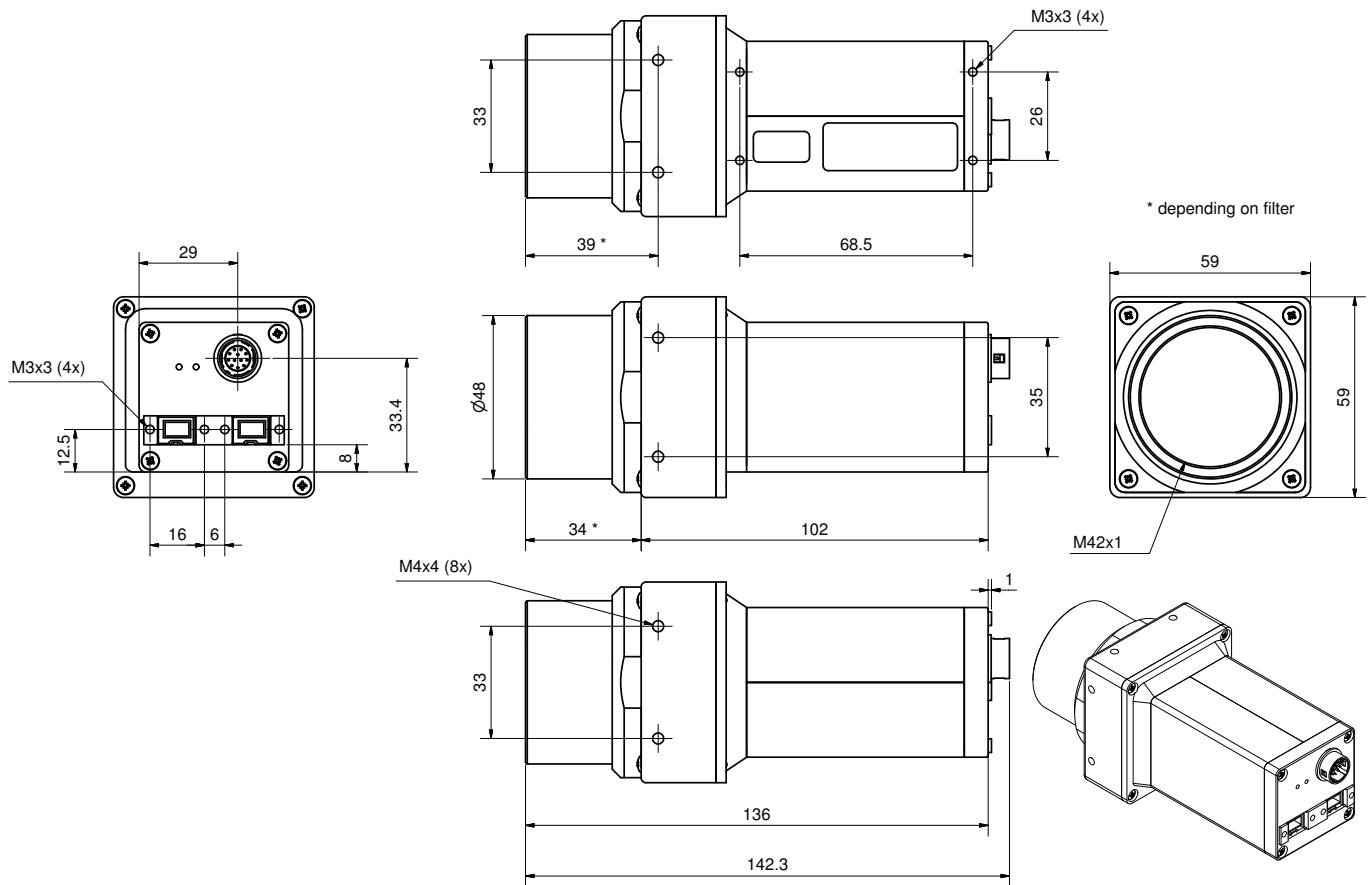


Figure 31: M42-Mount Pike standard housing (2 x 1394b copper)

## Pike M42-Mount: standard housing (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

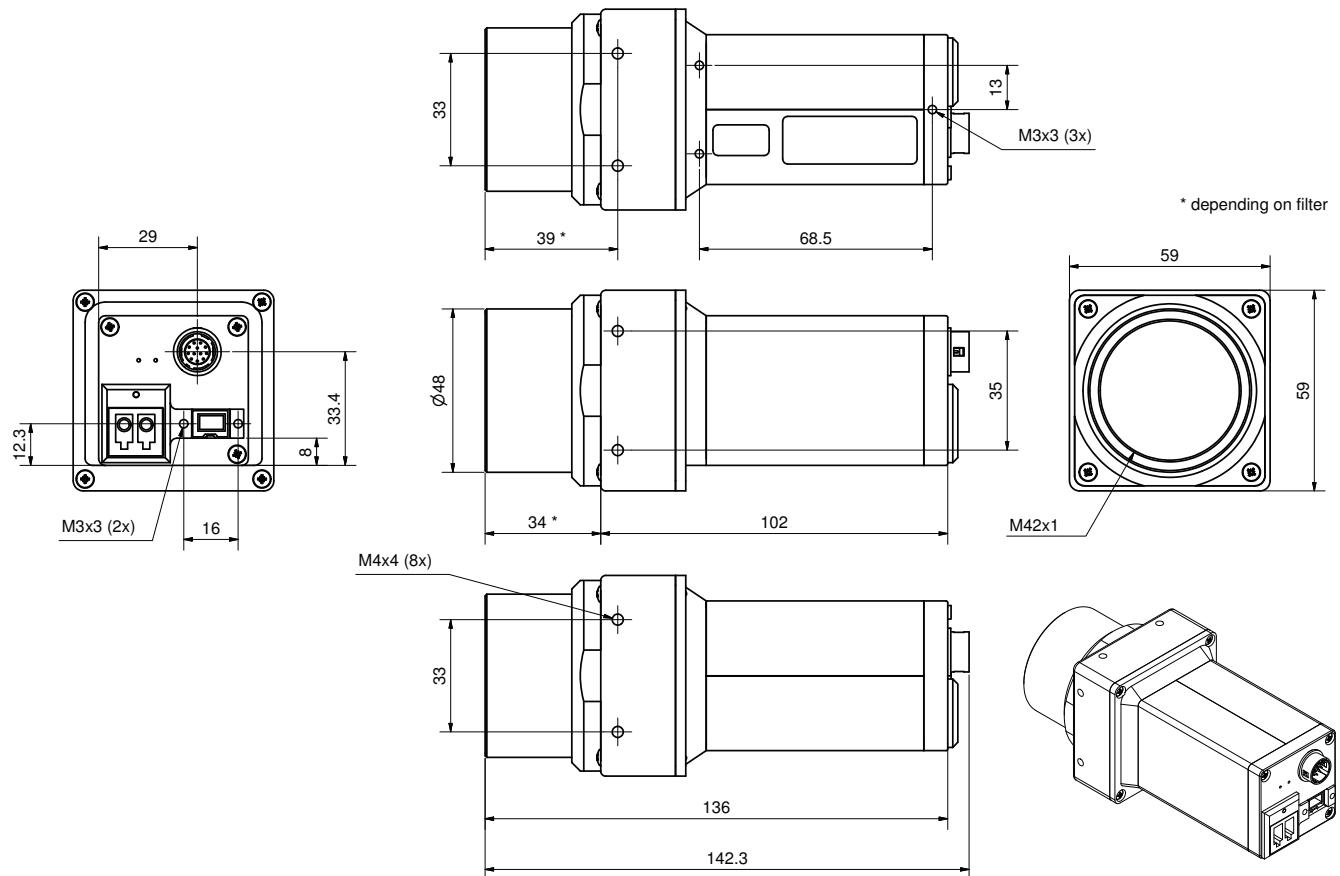


Figure 32: M42-Mount Pike standard housing (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

## Pike M42-Mount: Tripod adapter

This tripod adapter is designed for Pike F-Mount/M42-Mount/M58-Mount standard housings.

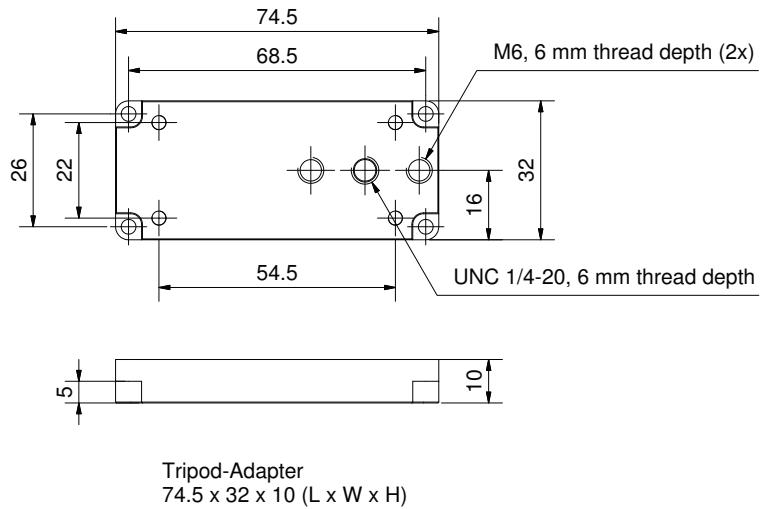


Figure 33: Tripod dimensions

## Pike M42-Mount: W270 (2 x 1394b copper)

This version has the sensor tilted by 270 degrees clockwise, so that it views downwards.

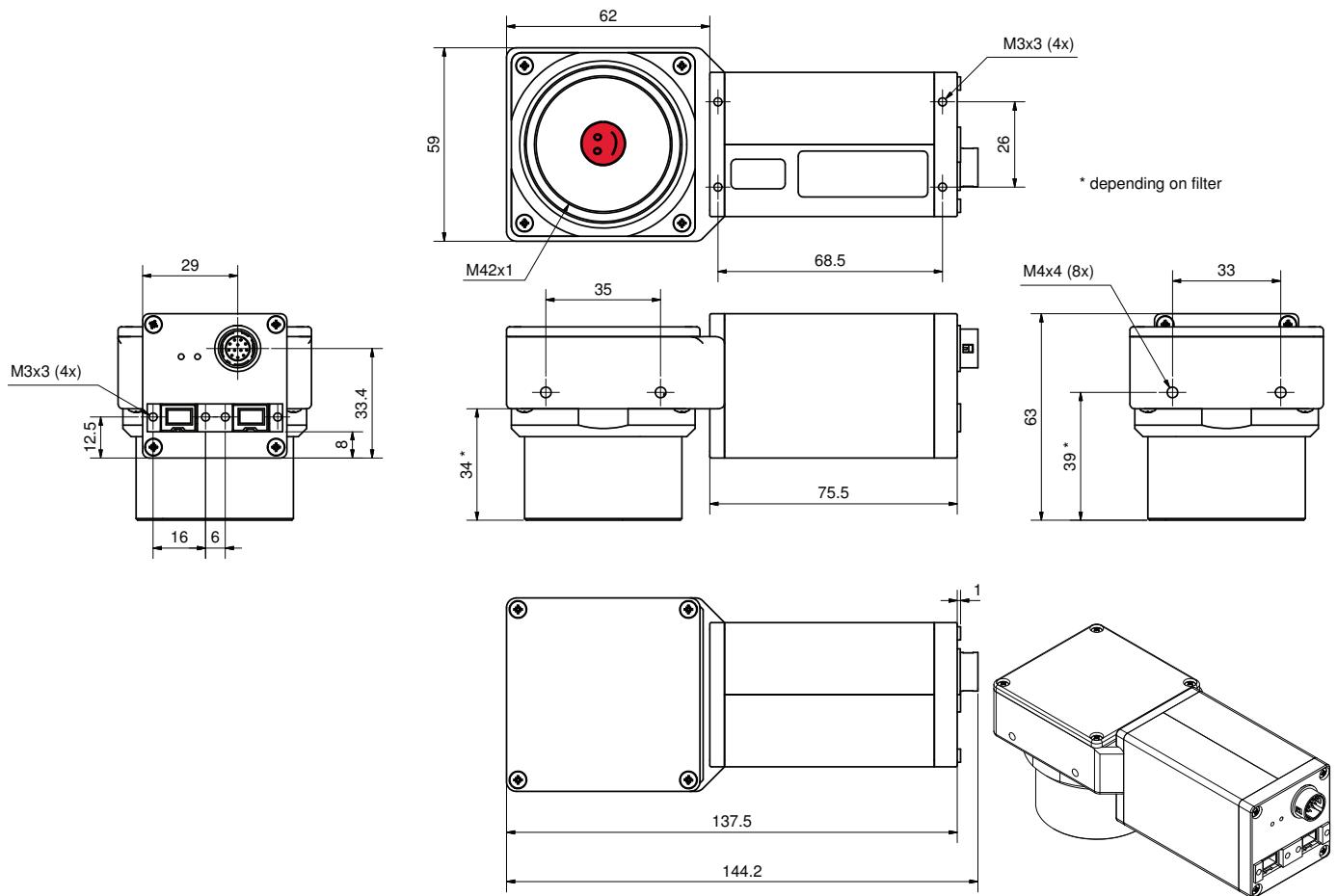


Figure 34: M42-Mount Pike W270 (2 x 1394b copper)

## Pike M42-Mount: W270 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

This version has the sensor tilted by 270 degrees clockwise, so that it views downwards.

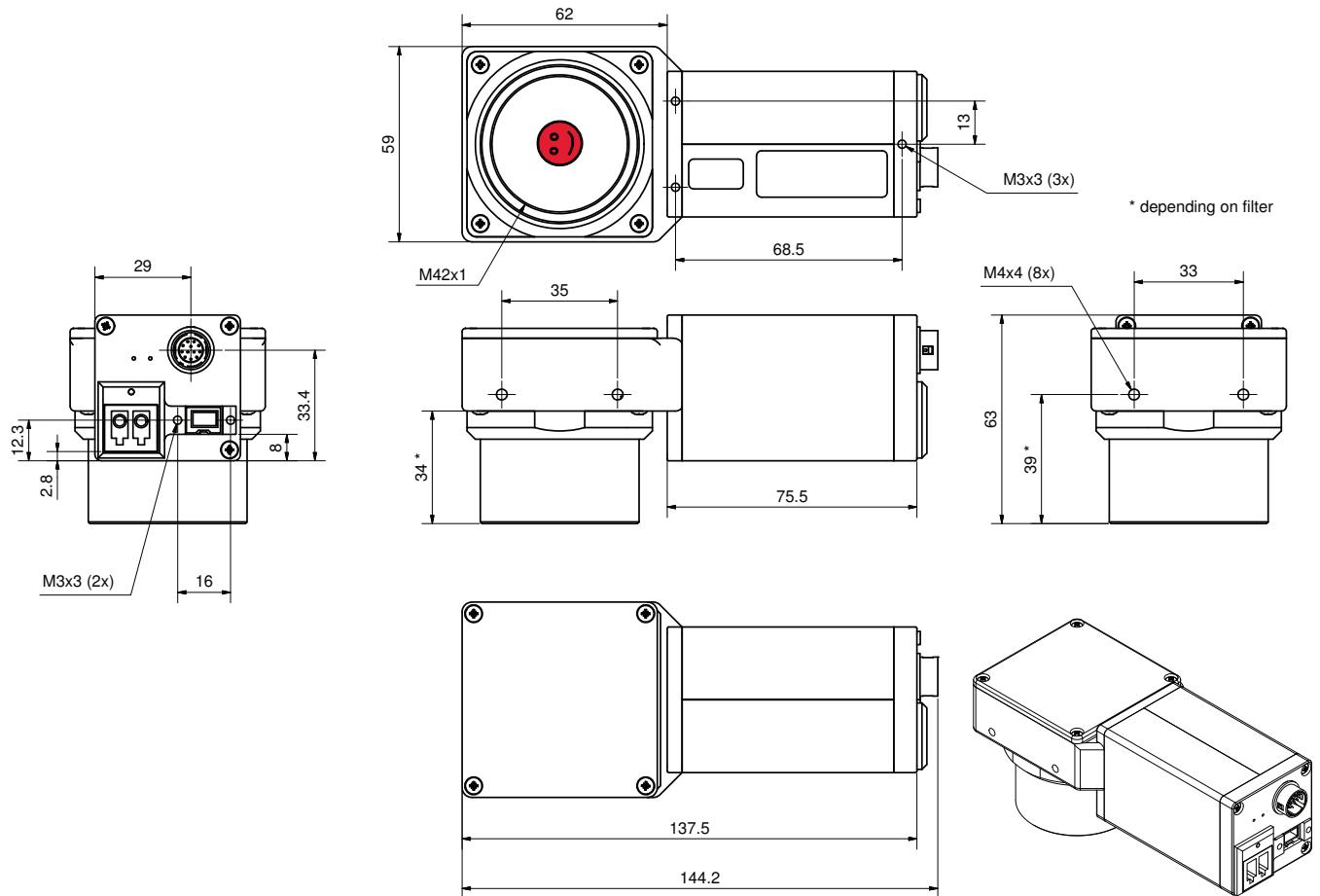


Figure 35: M42-Mount Pike W270 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

## Cross section: M42-Mount

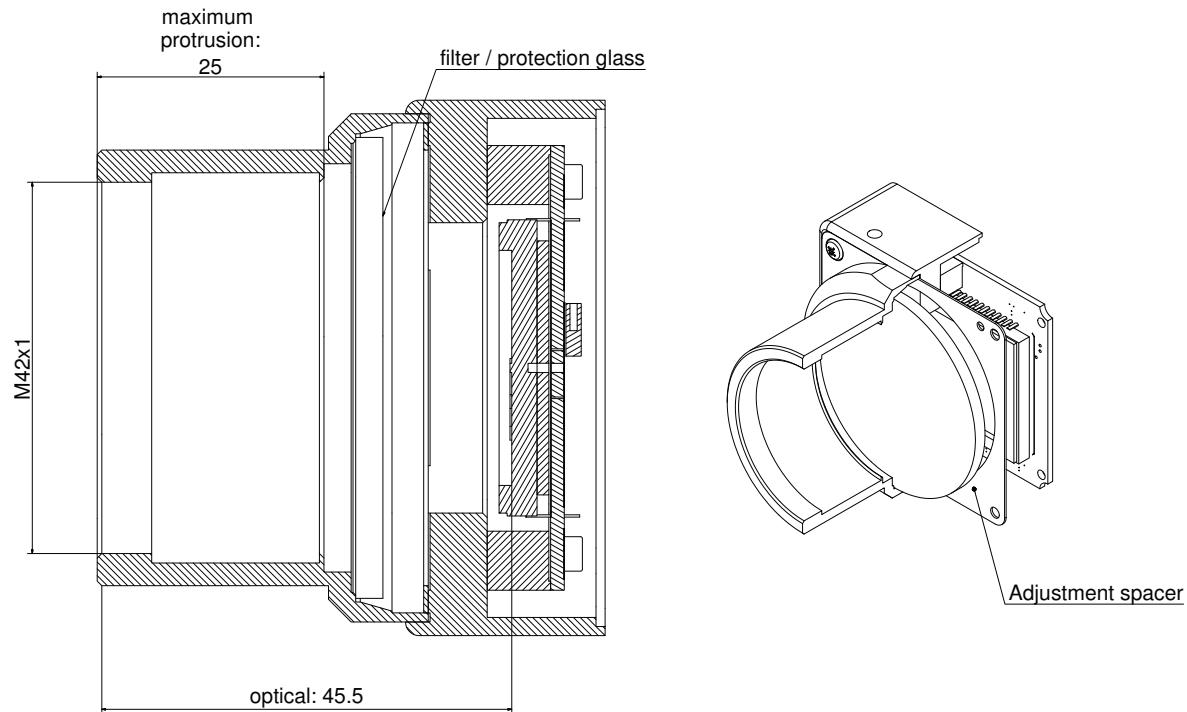


Figure 36: Pike M42-Mount dimensions (optional for Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600)

## M58-Mount

Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600 cameras can optionally be ordered with M58-Mount.

### **Pike M58-Mount: standard housing (2 x 1394b copper)**

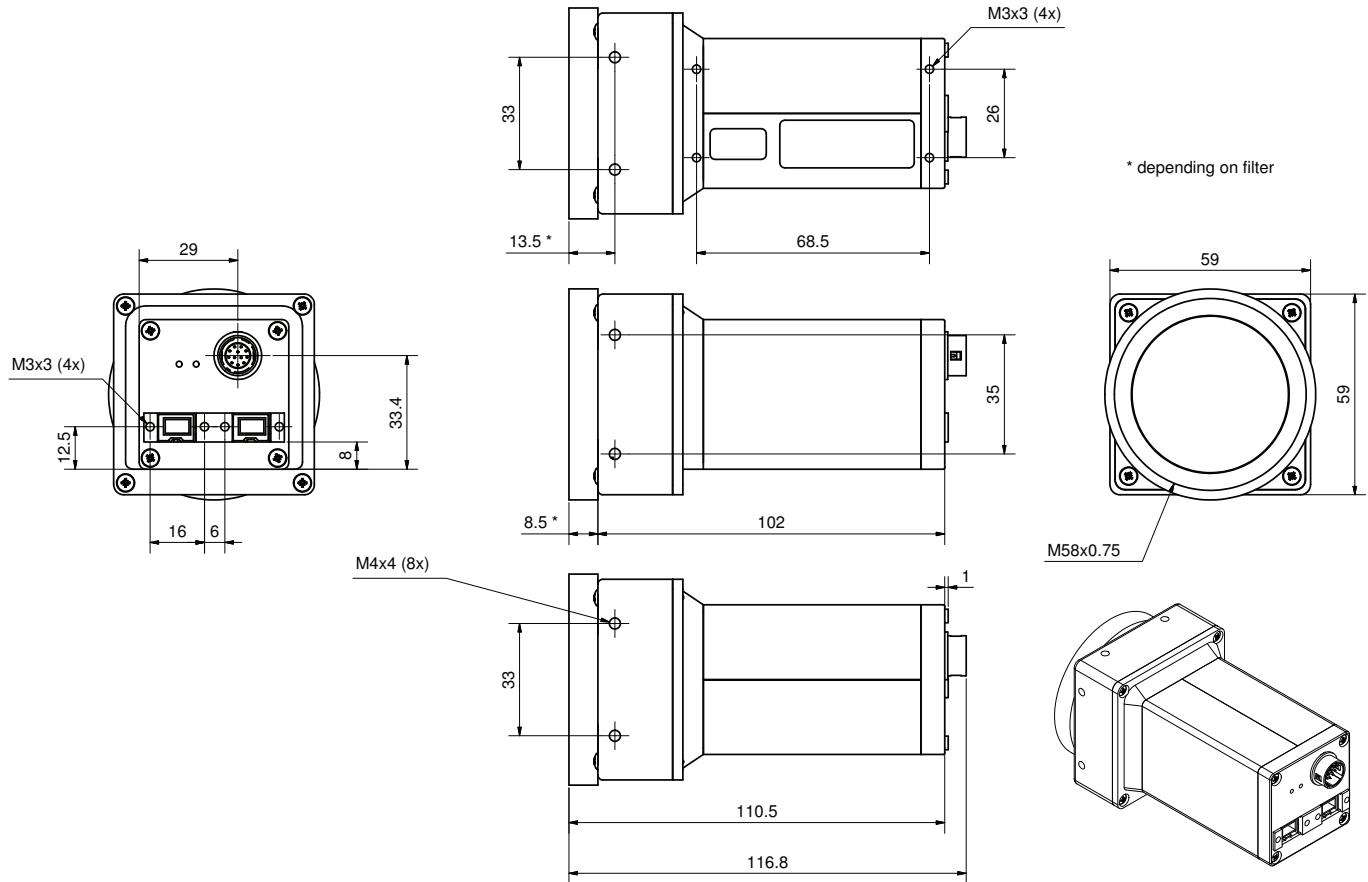


Figure 37: M58-Mount Pike standard housing (2 x 1394b copper)

## Pike M58-Mount: standard housing (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

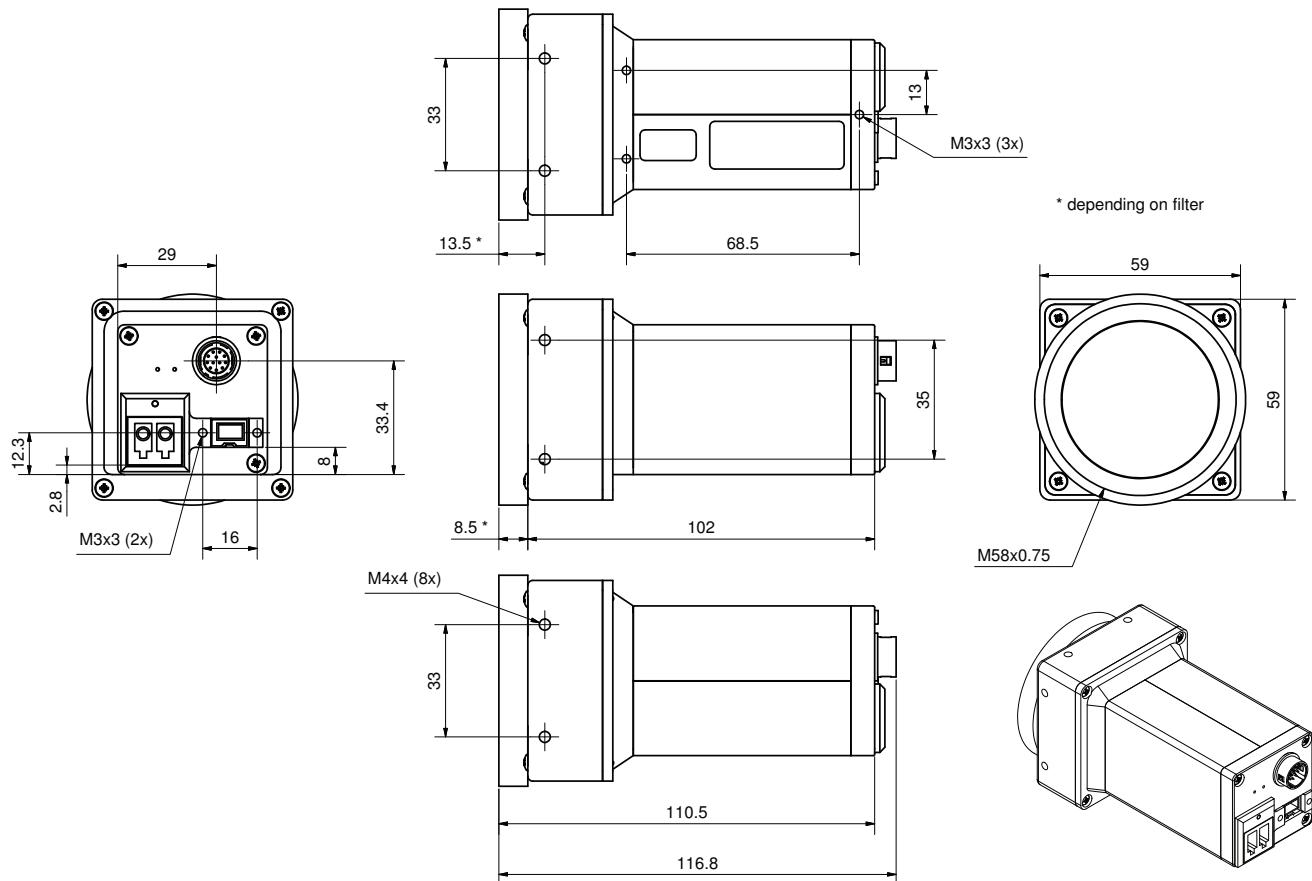


Figure 38: M58-Mount Pike standard housing (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

## Pike M58-Mount: Tripod adapter

This tripod adapter is designed for Pike F-Mount/M42-Mount/M58-Mount standard housings.

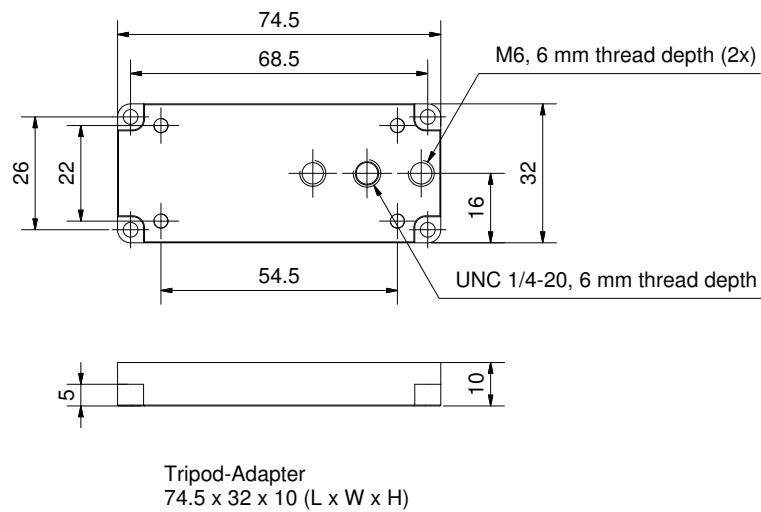


Figure 39: Tripod dimensions

## Pike M58-Mount: W270 (2 x 1394b copper)

This version has the sensor tilted by 270 degrees clockwise, so that it views downwards.

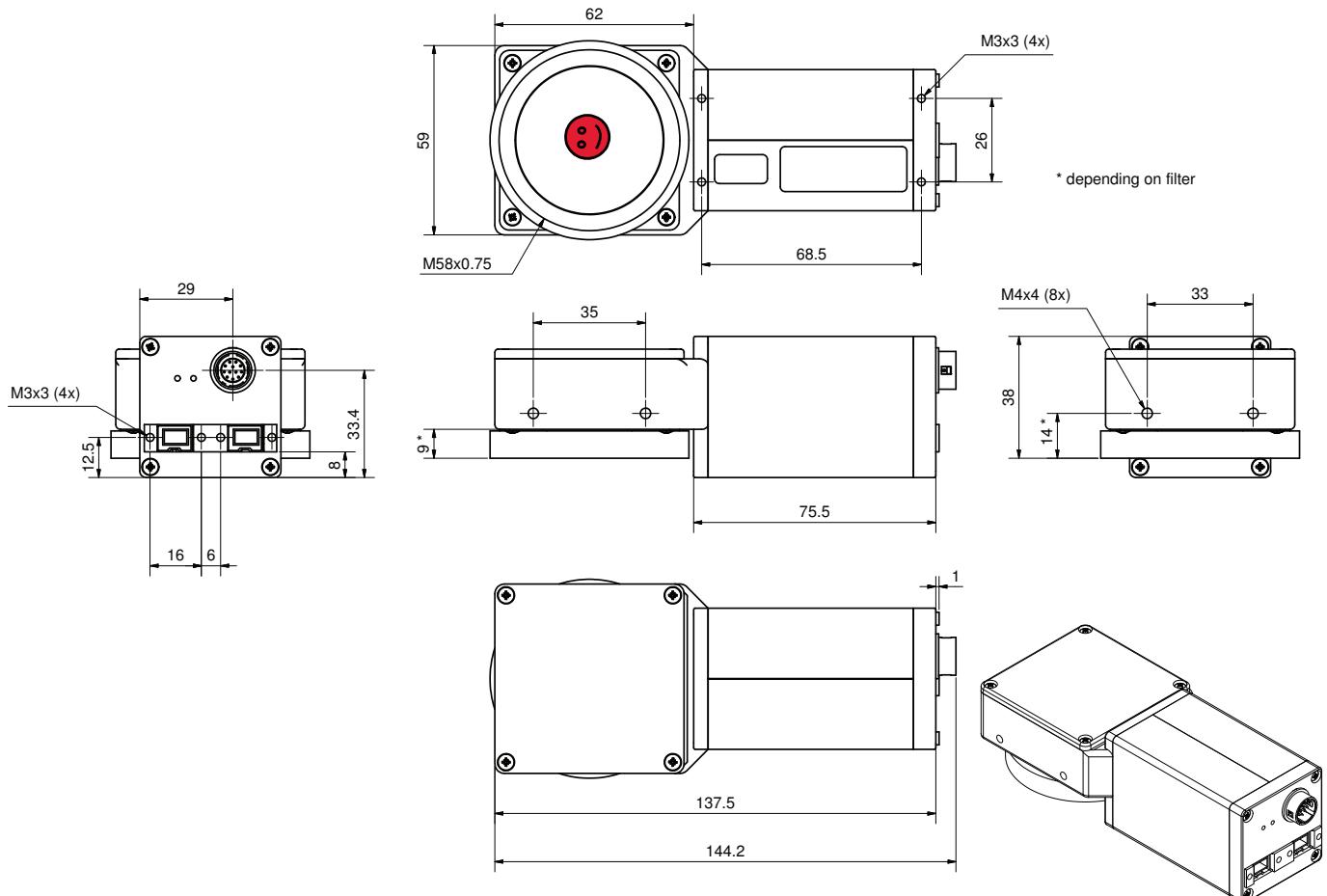


Figure 40: M58-Mount Pike W270 (2 x 1394b copper)

## Pike M58-Mount: W270 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

This version has the sensor tilted by 270 degrees clockwise, so that it views downwards.

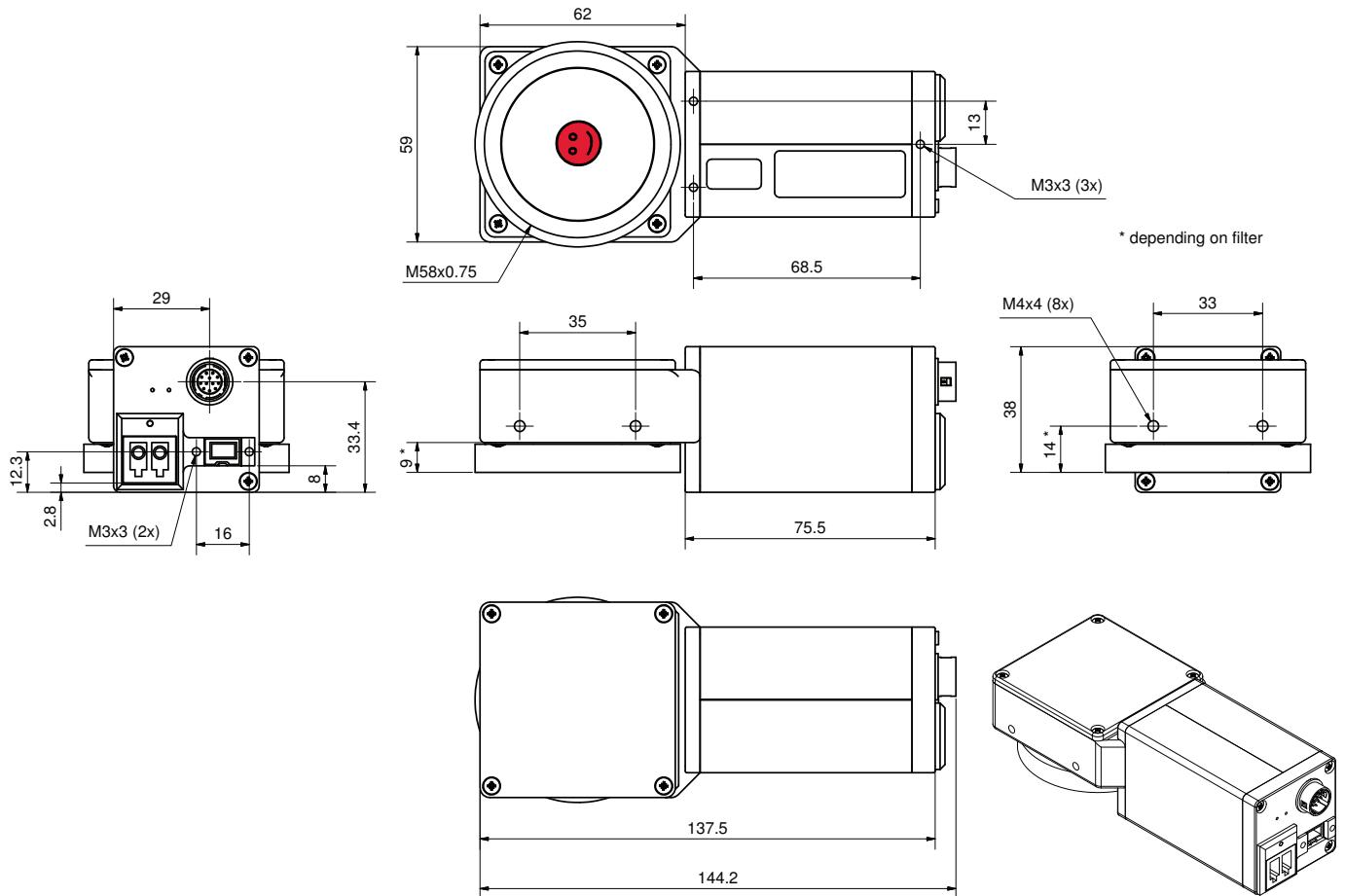


Figure 41: M58-Mount Pike W270 (1394b: 1 x GOF, 1 x copper)

## Cross section: M58-Mount

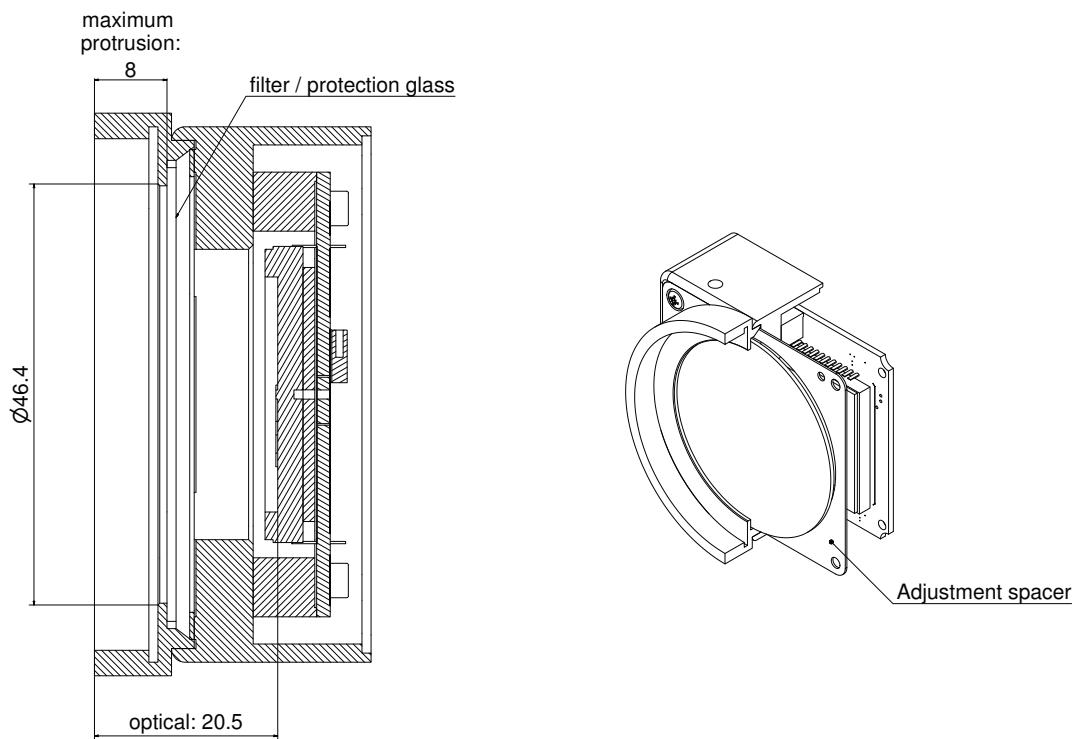


Figure 42: Pike M58-Mount dimensions (optional for Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600)

# Specifications

## PIKE F-032B/C (fiber)

Feature	Specification
Image device	Type 1/3 (diag. 5.92 mm) type progressive scan KODAK IT CCD KAI-0340A/C with HAD microlens
<b>Effective chip size</b>	<b>4.7 mm x 3.6 mm</b>
Cell size	7.4 µm x 7.4 µm
Picture size (max.)	640 x 480 pixels (Format_7 Mode_0)
Lens mount	Adjustable C-Mount: 17.526 mm (in air); Ø 25.4 mm (32 tpi) mechanical flange back to filter distance: 12.5 mm (see <a href="#">Figure 21: Pike C-Mount dimensions (VGA size filter)</a> on page 62)  Adjustable CS-Mount: 12.526 mm (in air), Ø 25.4 mm (32 tpi), mechanical flange back distance: 7.9 mm (see <a href="#">Figure 20: Pike CS-Mount dimensions (only PIKE F-032B/C)</a> on page 61)
ADC	14 bit
Color modes	<b>Only color:</b> Raw8, Raw12, Raw16, Mono8, YUV422, YUV411, RGB8
Frame rates	1.875 fps; 3.75 fps; 7.5 fps; 15 fps; 30 fps; 60 fps; 120 fps up to 208 fps in Format_7 (Mono8)
Gain control	Manual: 0-22 dB (0.0353 dB/step); auto gain (select. AOI)
Shutter speed	<b>18 µs ... 67,108,864 µs (~67s); auto shutter (select. AOI)</b>
External trigger shutter	Programmable, trigger level control, single trigger, bulk trigger, programmable trigger delay
Internal FIFO memory	Up to 105 frames
Look-up tables	16 user-defined (14 bit → 14 bit); gamma (0.45 and 0.7)
Smart functions	AGC (auto gain control), AEC (auto exposure control), real-time shading correction, LUT, 64 MByte image memory, mirror, binning, sub-sampling, High SNR, storable user sets <b>only color:</b> AWB (auto white balance), color correction, hue, saturation, sharpness  Two configurable inputs, four configurable outputs RS-232 port (serial port, IIDC V1.31)
Transfer rate	100 Mbit/s, 200 Mbit/s, 400 Mbit/s, 800 Mbit/s

Table 15: Specification PIKE F-032B/C (fiber)

Feature	Specification
Digital interface	IEEE 1394b (I IDC V1.31), 2 x copper connectors (bilingual) (daisy chain) <b>fiber:</b> IEEE 1394b, 2 connectors: 1 x copper (bilingual), 1 x GOF connector (2 x optical fiber on LCLC), (daisy chain)
Power requirements	DC 8 V - 36 V via IEEE 1394 cable or 12-pin HIROSE
Power consumption	Typical 5 W (@ 12 V DC); <b>fiber:</b> typical 5.75 W (@ 12 V DC) (full resolution and maximal frame rates)
Dimensions	96.8 mm x 44 mm x 44 mm (L x W x H); incl. connectors, without tripod and lens
Mass	250 g (without lens)
Operating temperature	+ 5 °C ... + 50 °C housing temperature (without condensation)
Storage temperature	- 10 °C ... + 70 °C ambient temperature (without condensation)
Regulations	CE, FCC Class B, RoHS (2002/95/EC)
Standard accessories	<b>b/w:</b> protection glass <b>color:</b> IR cut filter
Optional accessories	<b>b/w:</b> IR cut filter, IR pass filter <b>color:</b> protection glass
On request	Host adapter card, angled head, power out (HIROSE)
Software packages	Various SDKs with interfaces to ActiveX, DirectShow or Twain (free charge)

Table 15: Specification PIKE F-032B/C (fiber)

**Note**

The design and specifications for the products described above may change without notice.



## PIKE F-100B/C (fiber)

Feature	Specification
Image device	Type 2/3 (diag. 10.5 mm) type progressive scan KODAK IT CCD KAI-1020A/C with HAD microlens
<b>Effective chip size</b>	<b>7.4 mm x 7.4 mm</b>
Cell size	7.4 µm x 7.4 µm
Picture size (max.)	1000 x 1000 pixels (Format_7 Mode_0)
Lens mount	Adjustable C-Mount: 17.526 mm (in air); Ø 25.4 mm (32 tpi) mechanical flange back to filter distance: 12.5 mm (see <a href="#">Figure 22: Pike C-Mount dimensions (large filter)</a> on page 63)
ADC	14 bit
Color modes	<b>Only color:</b> Raw8, Raw12, Raw16, Mono8, YUV422, YUV411, RGB8
Frame rates	1.875 fps; 3.75 fps; 7.5 fps; 15 fps; 30 fps; 60 fps up to 60 fps in Format_7 (Mono8)
Gain control	Manual: 0-22 dB (0.0353 dB/step); auto gain (select. AOI)
Shutter speed	43 µs ... 67,108,864 µs (~67s); auto shutter (select. AOI)
External trigger shutter	Programmable, trigger level control, single trigger, bulk trigger, programmable trigger delay
Internal FIFO memory	Up to 32 frames
Look-up tables	16 user-defined (14 bit → 14 bit); gamma (0.45 and 0.7)
Smart functions	AGC (auto gain control), AEC (auto exposure control), real-time shading correction, LUT, 64 MByte image memory, mirror, binning, sub-sampling, High SNR, storable user sets <b>only color:</b> AWB (auto white balance), color correction, hue, saturation, sharpness Two configurable inputs, four configurable outputs RS-232 port (serial port, IIDC V1.31)
Transfer rate	100 Mbit/s, 200 Mbit/s, 400 Mbit/s, 800 Mbit/s
Digital interface	IEEE 1394b (IIDC V1.31), 2 x copper connectors (bilingual) (daisy chain) <b>fiber:</b> IEEE 1394b, 2 connectors: 1 x copper (bilingual), 1 x GOF connector (2 x optical fiber on LC/LC), (daisy chain)
Power requirements	DC 8 V - 36 V via IEEE 1394 cable or 12-pin HIROSE
Power consumption	Typical 5 W (@ 12 V DC); <b>fiber:</b> typical 5.75 W (@ 12 V DC)
Dimensions	96.8 mm x 44 mm x 44 mm (L x W x H); incl. connectors, without tripod and lens
Mass	250 g (without lens)

Table 16: Specification PIKE F-100B/C (fiber)

Feature	Specification
Operating temperature	+ 5 °C ... + 50 °C housing temperature (without condensation)
Storage temperature	- 10 °C ... + 70 °C ambient temperature (without condensation)
Regulations	CE, FCC Class B, RoHS (2002/95/EC)
Standard accessories	<b>b/w:</b> protection glass <b>color:</b> IR cut filter
Optional accessories	<b>b/w:</b> IR cut filter, IR pass filter <b>color:</b> protection glass
On request	Host adapter card, angled head, power out (HIROSE)
Software packages	Various SDKs with interfaces to ActiveX, DirectShow or Twain (free charge)

Table 16: Specification PIKE F-100B/C (fiber)

**Note**

The design and specifications for the products described above may change without notice.



## PIKE F-145B/C (fiber) (-15fps\*)

\* Variant: F-145-15fps only

This variant offers lower speed (only 15 fps), but better image quality.

Feature	Specification
Image device	Type 2/3 (diag. 11.2 mm) type progressive scan SONY ICX285AL/AQ with EXview HAD microlens
<b>Effective chip size</b>	<b>9.0 mm x 6.7 mm</b>
Cell size	6.45 µm x 6.45 µm
Picture size (max.)	1388 x 1038 pixels (Format_7 Mode_0)
Lens mount	Adjustable C-Mount: 17.526 mm (in air); Ø 25.4 mm (32 tpi) mechanical flange back to filter distance: 12.5 mm (see <a href="#">Figure 22: Pike C-Mount dimensions (large filter) on page 63</a> )
ADC	14 bit
Color modes	<b>Only color:</b> Raw8, Raw12, Raw16, Mono8, YUV422, YUV411, RGB8
Frame rates	1.875 fps; 3.75 fps; 7.5 fps; 15 fps; 30 fps (* Variant: F-145-15fps only up to 15 fps) up to 30 (16*) fps in Format_7 (Mono8/12 no sub-sampling)
Gain control	Manual: 0-32 dB (0.0358 dB/step); auto gain (select. AOI)
Shutter speed	<b>39 (71*)</b> µs ... 67,108,864 µs (~67s); auto shutter (select. AOI)
External trigger shutter	Programmable, trigger level control, single trigger, bulk trigger, programmable trigger delay
Internal FIFO memory	Up to 22 frames
Look-up tables	16 user-defined (14 bit → 14 bit); gamma (0.45 and 0.7)
Smart functions	AGC (auto gain control), AEC (auto exposure control), real-time shading correction, LUT, 64 MByte image memory, mirror, binning, sub-sampling, High SNR, storable user sets <b>only color:</b> AWB (auto white balance), color correction, hue, saturation, sharpness Two configurable inputs, four configurable outputs RS-232 port (serial port, IIDC V1.31)
Transfer rate	100 Mbit/s, 200 Mbit/s, 400 Mbit/s, 800 Mbit/s
Digital interface	IIEEE 1394b (IIDC V1.31), 2 x copper connectors (bilingual) (daisy chain) <b>fiber:</b> IEEE 1394b, 2 connectors: 1 x copper (bilingual), 1 x GOF connector (2 x optical fiber on LC/LC), (daisy chain)
Power requirements	DC 8 V - 36 V via IEEE 1394 cable or 12-pin HIROSE
Power consumption	Typical 5 W (@ 12 V DC); <b>fiber:</b> typical 5.75 W (@ 12 V DC)

Table 17: Specification PIKE F-145B/C (fiber)

Feature	Specification
Dimensions	96.8 mm x 44 mm x 44 mm (L x W x H); incl. connectors, without tripod and lens
Mass	250 g (without lens)
Operating temperature	+ 5 °C ... + 50 °C housing temperature (without condensation)
Storage temperature	- 10 °C ... + 70 °C ambient temperature (without condensation)
Regulations	CE, FCC Class B, RoHS (2002/95/EC)
Standard accessories	<b>b/w:</b> protection glass <b>color:</b> IR cut filter
Optional accessories	<b>b/w:</b> IR cut filter, IR pass filter <b>color:</b> protection glass
On request	Host adapter card, angled head, power out (HIROSE)
Software packages	Various SDKs with interfaces to ActiveX, DirectShow or Twain (free charge)

Table 17: Specification PIKE F-145B/C (fiber)

**Note**

The design and specifications for the products described above may change without notice.



## PIKE F-210B/C (fiber)

Feature	Specification
Image device	Type 1 (diag. 16.3 mm) type progressive scan KODAK IT CCD KAI-2093A/C with HAD microlens
<b>Effective chip size</b>	<b>14 mm x 8.0 mm</b>
Cell size	7.4 µm x 7.4 µm
Picture size (max.)	1920 x 1080 pixels (Format_7 Mode_0)
Lens mount	Adjustable C-Mount: 17.526 mm (in air); Ø 25.4 mm (32 tpi) mechanical flange back to filter distance: 12.5 mm (see <a href="#">Figure 22: Pike C-Mount dimensions (large filter)</a> on page 63)
ADC	14 bit
Color modes	<b>Only color:</b> Raw8, Raw12, Raw16, Mono8, YUV422, YUV411, RGB8
Frame rates	1.875 fps; 3.75 fps; 7.5 fps; 15 fps; 30 fps up to 31 fps in Format_7 (Mono8, no sub-sampling)
Gain control	Manual: 0-22 dB (0.0353 dB/step); auto gain (select. AOI)
Shutter speed	<b>43 µs ... 67,108,864 µs (~67s); auto shutter (select. AOI)</b>
External Trigger Shutter	Programmable, trigger level control, single trigger, bulk trigger, programmable trigger delay
Internal FIFO memory	Up to 15 frames
Look-up tables	16 user-defined (14 bit → 14 bit); gamma (0.45 and 0.7)
Smart functions	AGC (auto gain control), AEC (auto exposure control), real-time shading correction, LUT, 64 MByte image memory, mirror, binning, sub-sampling, High SNR, storable user sets <b>only color:</b> AWB (auto white balance), color correction, hue, saturation, sharpness Two configurable inputs, four configurable outputs RS-232 port (serial port, IIDC V1.31)
Transfer rate	100 Mbit/s, 200 Mbit/s, 400 Mbit/s, 800 Mbit/s
Digital interface	IEEE 1394b (IIDC V1.31), 2 x copper connectors (bilingual) (daisy chain) <b>fiber:</b> IEEE 1394b, 2 connectors: 1 x copper (bilingual), 1 x GOF connector (2 x optical fiber on LC/LC), (daisy chain)
Power requirements	DC 8 V - 36 V via IEEE 1394 cable or 12-pin HIROSE
Power consumption	Typical 5.5 W (@ 12 V DC); <b>fiber:</b> typical 6.25 W (@ 12 V DC)
Dimensions	96.8 mm x 44 mm x 44 mm (L x W x H); incl. connectors, without tripod and lens
Mass	250 g (without lens)

Table 18: Specification PIKE F-210B/C (fiber)

Feature	Specification
Operating temperature	+ 5 °C ... + 50 °C housing temperature (without condensation)
Storage temperature	- 10 °C ... + 70 °C ambient temperature (without condensation)
Regulations	CE, FCC Class B, RoHS (2002/95/EC)
Standard accessories	<b>b/w:</b> protection glass <b>color:</b> IR cut filter
Optional accessories	<b>b/w:</b> IR cut filter, IR pass filter <b>color:</b> protection glass
On request	Host adapter card, angled head, power out (HIROSE) M39-Mount suitable for e.g. Voigtländer optics Adjustable M39-Mount: 28.80 mm (in air); M39 x 26 tpi mechanical flange back to filter distance: 24.2 mm (see <a href="#">Figure 30: Pike M39-Mount dimensions (only Pike F-210 and Pike F-421) on page 72</a> )
Software packages	Various SDKs with interfaces to ActiveX, DirectShow or Twain (free charge)

Table 18: Specification PIKE F-210B/C (fiber)

Note

The design and specifications for the products described above may change without notice.



## PIKE F-421B/C (fiber)

Feature	Specification
Image device	Type 1.2 (diag. 21.4 mm) type progressive scan KODAK IT CCD KAI-04022A/C with HAD microlens
<b>Effective chip size</b>	<b>15 mm x 15 mm</b>
Cell size	7.4 µm x 7.4 µm
Picture size (max.)	2048 x 2048 pixels (Format_7 Mode_0)
Lens mount	Adjustable C-Mount: 17.526 mm (in air); Ø 25.4 mm (32 tpi) mechanical flange back to filter distance: 12.5 mm (see <a href="#">Figure 22: Pike C-Mount dimensions (large filter)</a> on page 63)
ADC	14 bit
Color modes	<b>Only color:</b> Raw8, Raw12, Raw16, Mono8, YUV422, YUV411, RGB8
Frame rates	1.875 fps; 3.75 fps; 7.5 fps; 15 fps; 30 fps up to 16 fps in Format_7 (Mono8)
Gain control	Manual: 0-22 dB (0.0353 dB/step); auto gain (select. AOI)
Shutter speed	<b>70</b> µs ... 67,108,864 µs (~67s); auto shutter (select. AOI)
External trigger shutter	Programmable, trigger level control, single trigger, bulk trigger, programmable trigger delay
Internal FIFO memory	Up to 6 frames
Look-up tables	16 user-defined (14 bit → 14 bit); gamma (0.45 and 0.7)
Smart functions	AGC (auto gain control), AEC (auto exposure control), real-time shading correction, LUT, 64 MByte image memory, mirror, binning, sub-sampling, High SNR, storable user sets <b>only color:</b> AWB (auto white balance), color correction, hue, saturation, sharpness Two configurable inputs, four configurable outputs RS-232 port (serial port, IIDC V1.31)
Transfer rate	100 Mbit/s, 200 Mbit/s, 400 Mbit/s, 800 Mbit/s
Digital interface	IEEE 1394b (IIDC V1.31), 2 x copper connectors (bilingual) (daisy chain) <b>fiber:</b> IEEE 1394b, 2 connectors: 1 x copper (bilingual), 1 x GOF connector (2 x optical fiber on LC/LC), (daisy chain)
Power requirements	DC 8 V - 36 V via IEEE 1394 cable or 12-pin HIROSE
Power consumption	Typical 5.5 W (@ 12 V DC); <b>fiber:</b> typical 6.25 W (@ 12 V DC)
Dimensions	96.8 mm x 44 mm x 44 mm (L x W x H); incl. connectors, without tripod and lens
Mass	250 g (without lens)

Table 19: Specification PIKE F-421B/C (fiber)

Feature	Specification
Operating temperature	+ 5 °C ... + 50 °C housing temperature (without condensation)
Storage temperature	- 10 °C ... + 70 °C ambient temperature (without condensation)
Regulations	CE, FCC Class B, RoHS (2002/95/EC)
Standard accessories	<b>b/w:</b> protection glass <b>color:</b> IR cut filter
Optional accessories	<b>b/w:</b> IR cut filter, IR pass filter <b>color:</b> protection glass
On request	Host adapter card, angled head, power out (HIROSE) M39-Mount suitable for e.g. Voigtländer optics Adjustable M39-Mount: 28.80 mm (in air); M39 x 26 tpi mechanical flange back to filter distance: 24.2 mm (see <a href="#">Figure 30: Pike M39-Mount dimensions (only Pike F-210 and Pike F-421) on page 72</a> )
Software packages	Various SDKs with interfaces to ActiveX, DirectShow or Twain (free charge)

Table 19: Specification PIKE F-421B/C (fiber)

Note

The design and specifications for the products described above may change without notice.



## PIKE F-505B/C (fiber)

Feature	Specification
Image device	Type 2/3 (diag. 11.0 mm) progressive scan SONY ICX625ALA/AQA with Super HAD microlens
<b>Effective chip size</b>	<b>8.5 mm × 7.1 mm</b>
Cell size	3.45 µm × 3.45 µm
Picture size (max.)	2452 x 2054 pixels (Format_7 Mode_0)
Lens mount	Adjustable C-Mount: 17.526 mm (in air); Ø 25.4 mm (32 tpi) mechanical flange back to filter distance: 12.5 mm (see <a href="#">Figure 22: Pike C-Mount dimensions (large filter) on page 63</a> )
ADC	14 bit
Color modes	<b>Only color:</b> Raw8, Raw12, Raw16, Mono8, YUV422, YUV411, RGB8
Frame rates	1.875 fps; 3.75 fps; 7.5 fps; 15 fps up to 14* fps in Format_7 (Mono8 no sub-sampling) * at 11000 bytes per packet
Gain control	Manual: 0-24 dB (0.0359 dB/step); auto gain (select. AOI)
Shutter speed	<b>27</b> µs ... 67,108,864 µs (~67s); auto shutter (select. AOI)
External trigger shutter	Programmable, trigger level control, single trigger, bulk trigger, programmable trigger delay
Internal FIFO memory	Up to 5 frames
Look-up tables	16 user-defined (14 bit → 14 bit); gamma (0.45 and 0.7)
Smart functions	AGC (auto gain control), AEC (auto exposure control), real-time shading correction, LUT, 64 MByte image memory, mirror, binning, sub-sampling, High SNR, storable user sets <b>only color:</b> AWB (auto white balance), color correction, hue, saturation, sharpness Two configurable inputs, four configurable outputs RS-232 port (serial port, IIDC V1.31)
Transfer rate	100 Mbit/s, 200 Mbit/s, 400 Mbit/s, 800 Mbit/s
Digital interface	IEEE 1394b (IIDC V1.31), 2 x copper connectors (bilingual) (daisy chain) <b>fiber:</b> IEEE 1394b, 2 connectors: 1 x copper (bilingual), 1 x GOF connector (2 x optical fiber on LCLC), (daisy chain)
Power requirements	DC 8 V - 36 V via IEEE 1394 cable or 12-pin HIROSE
Power consumption	Typical 5.75 W (@ 12 V DC); <b>fiber:</b> typical 6.50 W (@ 12 V DC)

Table 20: Specification PIKE F-505B/C (fiber)

Feature	Specification
Dimensions	96.8 mm x 44 mm x 44 mm (L x W x H); incl. connectors, without tripod and lens
Mass	250 g (without lens)
Operating temperature	+ 5 °C ... + 50 °C housing temperature (without condensation)
Storage temperature	- 10 °C ... + 70 °C ambient temperature (without condensation)
Regulations	CE, FCC Class B, RoHS (2002/95/EC)
Standard accessories	<b>b/w:</b> protection glass <b>color:</b> IR cut filter
Optional accessories	<b>b/w:</b> IR cut filter, IR pass filter <b>color:</b> protection glass
On request	Host adapter card, angled head, power out (HIROSE)
Software packages	Various SDKs with interfaces to ActiveX, DirectShow or Twain (free charge)

Table 20: Specification PIKE F-505B/C (fiber)

**Note**

The design and specifications for the products described above may change without notice.



## PIKE F-1100B/C (fiber)

Feature	Specification
Image device	Type 35 mm (diag. 43.3 mm) progressive scan KODAK IT CCD KAI-11002 with Super HAD microlens
<b>Effective chip size</b>	<b>37.25 mm × 25.7 mm</b>
Cell size	9.0 µm × 9.0 µm
Picture size (max.)	4008 x 2672 pixels
Lens mount	Standard: F-Mount: 46.5 mm (in air) maximum protrusion: 26 mm (see <a href="#">Figure 29: Pike F-Mount dimensions (standard for Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600) on page 71</a> ) Optional: M42-Mount: 45.5 mm (in air) maximum protrusion: 28 mm ( <a href="#">Figure 36: Pike M42-Mount dimensions (optional for Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600) on page 78</a> ) Optional: M58-Mount: 20.5 mm (in air) maximum protrusion: 8 mm ( <a href="#">Figure 42: Pike M58-Mount dimensions (optional for Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600) on page 84</a> )
ADC	14 bit
Color modes	<b>Only color:</b> Raw8, Raw12, Raw16, Mono8, YUV422, YUV411, RGB8
Frame rates	1.875 fps; 3.75 fps up to 2.6* fps (single-tap) / up to 4.9* fps (dual-tap) in Format_7 (Mono8 no sub-sampling) * at 11000 bytes per packet  User can switch between single-tap and dual-tap.
Gain control	Manual: 0-24 dB (0.0359 dB/step); auto gain (select. AOI)
Shutter speed	<b>129 µs ... 67,108,864 µs (~67s); auto shutter (select. AOI)</b>
External trigger shutter	Programmable, trigger level control, single trigger, bulk trigger, programmable trigger delay
Internal FIFO memory	Up to 5 frames
Look-up tables	16 user-defined (14 bit → 14 bit); gamma (0.45 and 0.7)

Table 21: Specification PIKE F-1100B/C (fiber)

Feature	Specification
Smart functions	AGC (auto gain control), AEC (auto exposure control), real-time shading correction, LUT, 256 MByte image memory, mirror, binning, sub-sampling, High SNR, storable user sets <b>only color:</b> AWB (auto white balance), color correction, hue, saturation, sharpness Two configurable inputs, four configurable outputs RS-232 port (serial port, IIDC V1.31)
Transfer rate	100 Mbit/s, 200 Mbit/s, 400 Mbit/s, 800 Mbit/s
Digital interface	IEEE 1394b (IIDC V1.31), 2 x copper connectors (bilingual) (daisy chain) <b>fiber:</b> IEEE 1394b, 2 connectors: 1 x copper (bilingual), 1 x GOF connector (2 x optical fiber on LCLC), (daisy chain)
Power requirements	DC 8 V - 36 V via IEEE 1394 cable or 12-pin HIROSE
Power consumption	Typical single-tap: 5 W (@ 12 V DC); <b>fiber:</b> typical 5.5 W (@ 12 V DC) Typical dual-tap: 5.5 W (@ 12 V DC); <b>fiber:</b> typical 6.0 W (@ 12 V DC)
Dimensions	142.8 mm x 59 mm x 59 mm (L x W x H); incl. connectors, without tripod and lens
Mass	380 g (without lens)
Operating temperature	+ 5 °C ... + 50 °C housing temperature (without condensation)
Storage temperature	- 10 °C ... + 70 °C ambient temperature (without condensation)
Regulations	CE, FCC Class B, RoHS (2002/95/EC)
Standard accessories	<b>b/w:</b> protection glass <b>color:</b> IR cut filter
Optional accessories	<b>b/w:</b> IR cut filter, IR pass filter <b>color:</b> protection glass
On request	Host adapter card, angled head, power out (HIROSE)
Software packages	Various SKDs with interfaces to ActiveX, DirectShow or Twain (free charge)

Table 21: Specification PIKE F-1100B/C (fiber)

Note

The design and specifications for the products described above may change without notice.



## PIKE F-1600B/C (fiber)

Feature	Specification
Image device	Type 35 mm (diag. 43.3 mm) progressive scan KODAK IT CCD KAI-16000 with Super HAD microlens
<b>Effective chip size</b>	<b>36.1 mm × 24 mm</b>
Cell size	7.4 µm x 7.4 µm
Picture size (max.)	4872 x 3248 pixels
Lens mount	Standard: F-Mount: 46.5 mm (in air) maximum protrusion: 26 mm (see <a href="#">Figure 29: Pike F-Mount dimensions (standard for Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600) on page 71</a> )  Optional: M42-Mount: 45.5 mm (in air) maximum protrusion: 28 mm ( <a href="#">Figure 36: Pike M42-Mount dimensions (optional for Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600) on page 78</a> )  Optional: M58-Mount: 20.5 mm (in air) maximum protrusion: 8 mm ( <a href="#">Figure 42: Pike M58-Mount dimensions (optional for Pike F-1100 and Pike F-1600) on page 84</a> )
ADC	14 bit
Color modes	<b>Only color:</b> Raw8, Raw12, Raw16, Mono8, YUV422, YUV411, RGB8
Frame rates	1.875 fps; 3.75 fps; 7.5 fps; 15 fps up to 1.7* fps (single-tap) / up to 3.1* fps (dual-tap) in Format_7 (Mono8 no sub-sampling) * at 11000 bytes per packet  User can switch between single-tap and dual-tap.
Gain control	Manual: 0-24 dB (0.0359 dB/step); auto gain (select. AOI)
Shutter speed	<b>636 µs ... 67,108,864 µs (~67s); auto shutter (select. AOI)</b>
External trigger shutter	Programmable, trigger level control, single trigger, bulk trigger, programmable trigger delay
Internal FIFO memory	Up to 5 frames
Look-up tables	16 user-defined (14 bit → 14 bit); gamma (0.45 and 0.7)

Table 22: Specification PIKE F-1600B/C (fiber)

Feature	Specification
Smart functions	AGC (auto gain control), AEC (auto exposure control), real-time shading correction, LUT, 256 MByte image memory, mirror, binning, sub-sampling, High SNR, storable user sets <b>only color:</b> AWB (auto white balance), color correction, hue, saturation, sharpness Two configurable inputs, four configurable outputs RS-232 port (serial port, IIDC V1.31)
Transfer rate	100 Mbit/s, 200 Mbit/s, 400 Mbit/s, 800 Mbit/s
Digital interface	IEEE 1394b (IIDC V1.31), 2 x copper connectors (bilingual) (daisy chain) <b>fiber:</b> IEEE 1394b, 2 connectors: 1 x copper (bilingual), 1 x GOF connector (2 x optical fiber on LCLC), (daisy chain)
Power requirements	DC 8 V - 36 V via IEEE 1394 cable or 12-pin HIROSE
Power consumption	Typical single-tap: 6.25 W (@ 12 V DC); <b>fiber:</b> typical 6.75 W (@ 12 V DC) Typical dual-tap: 6.5 W (@ 12 V DC); <b>fiber:</b> typical 7.0 W (@ 12 V DC)
Dimensions	142.8 mm x 59 mm x 59 mm mm (L x W x H); incl. connectors, without tripod and lens
Mass	380 g (without lens)
Operating temperature	+ 5 °C ... + 50 °C housing temperature (without condensation)
Storage temperature	- 10 °C ... + 70 °C ambient temperature (without condensation)
Regulations	CE, FCC Class B, RoHS (2002/95/EC)
Standard accessories	<b>b/w:</b> protection glass <b>color:</b> IR cut filter
Optional accessories	<b>b/w:</b> IR cut filter, IR pass filter <b>color:</b> protection glass
On request	Host adapter card, angled head, power out (HIROSE)
Software packages	Various SKDs with interfaces to ActiveX, DirectShow or Twain (free charge)

Table 22: Specification PIKE F-1600B/C (fiber)

Note

The design and specifications for the products described above may change without notice.



## Spectral sensitivity

**Note**



All measurements were done without protection glass / without filter.

The uncertainty in measurement of the QE values is  $\pm 10\%$ .

This is due to:

- Manufacturing tolerance of the sensor
- Uncertainties in the measuring apparatus itself (GERMAN: Ulbricht-Kugel / ENGLISH: Ulbricht sphere, optometer, etc.)

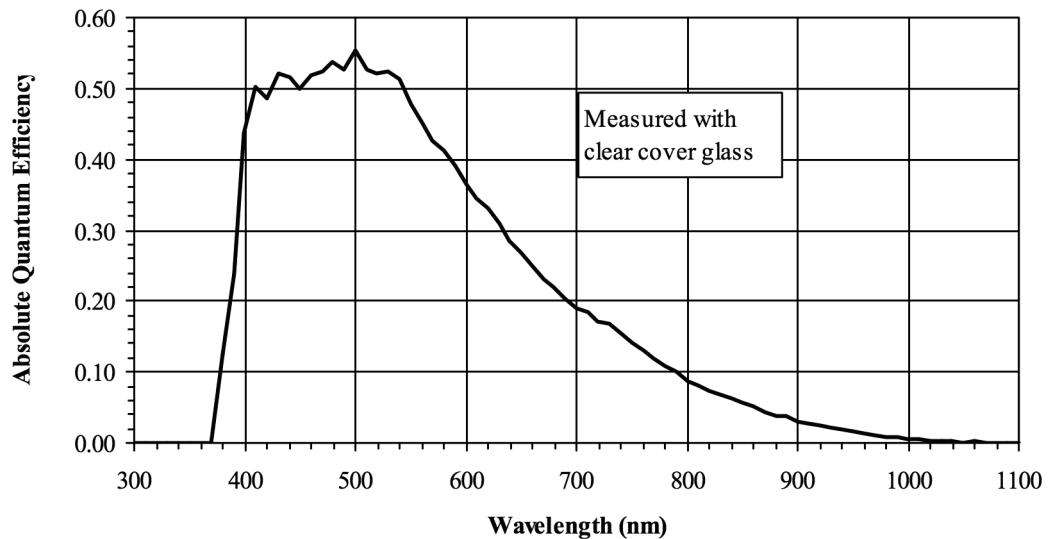


Figure 43: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-032B

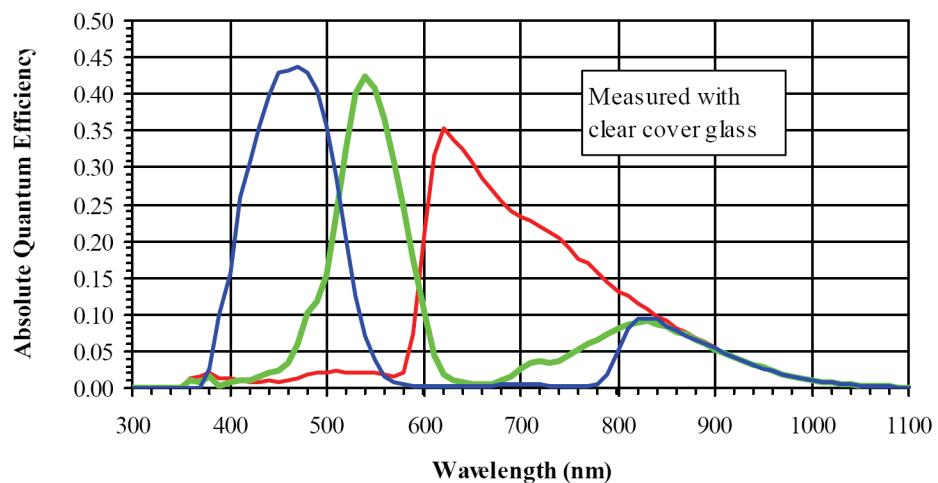


Figure 44: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-032C

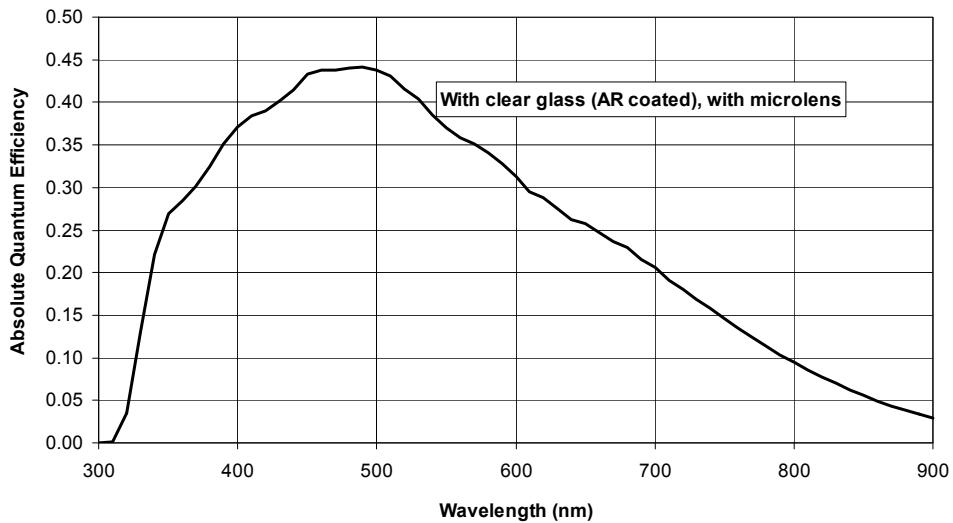


Figure 45: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-100B

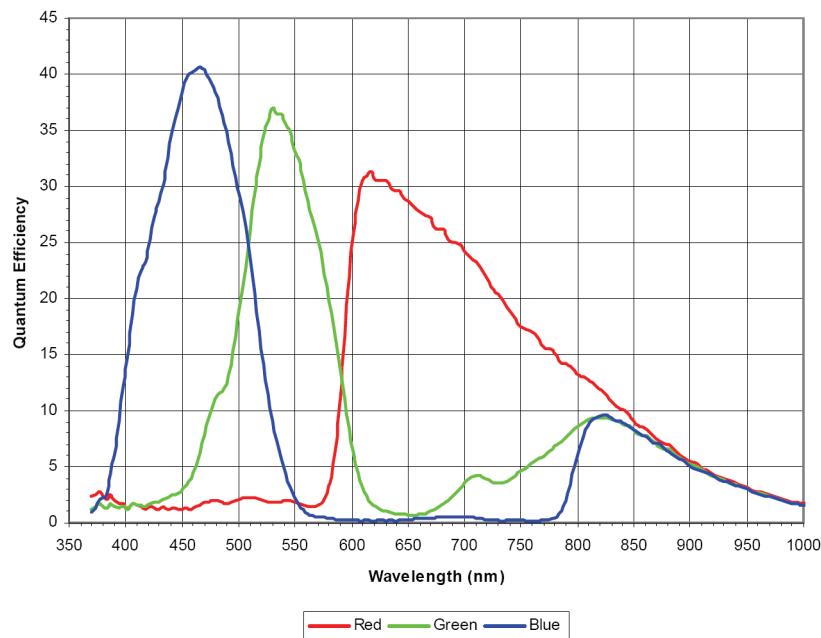


Figure 46: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-100C

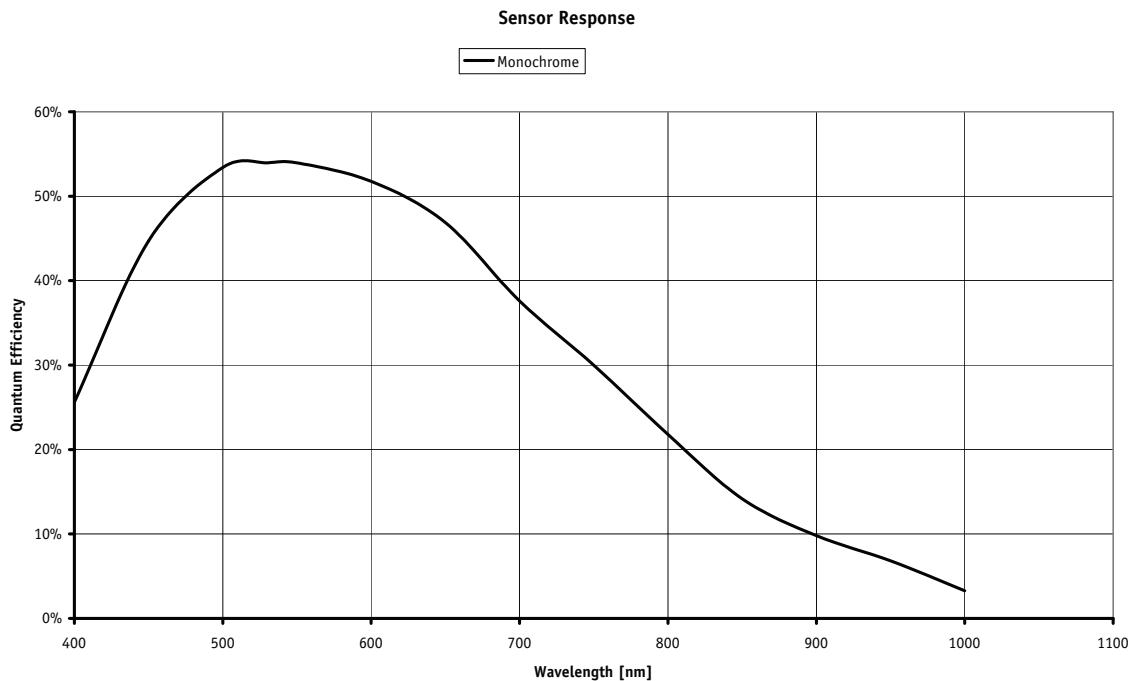


Figure 47: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-145B

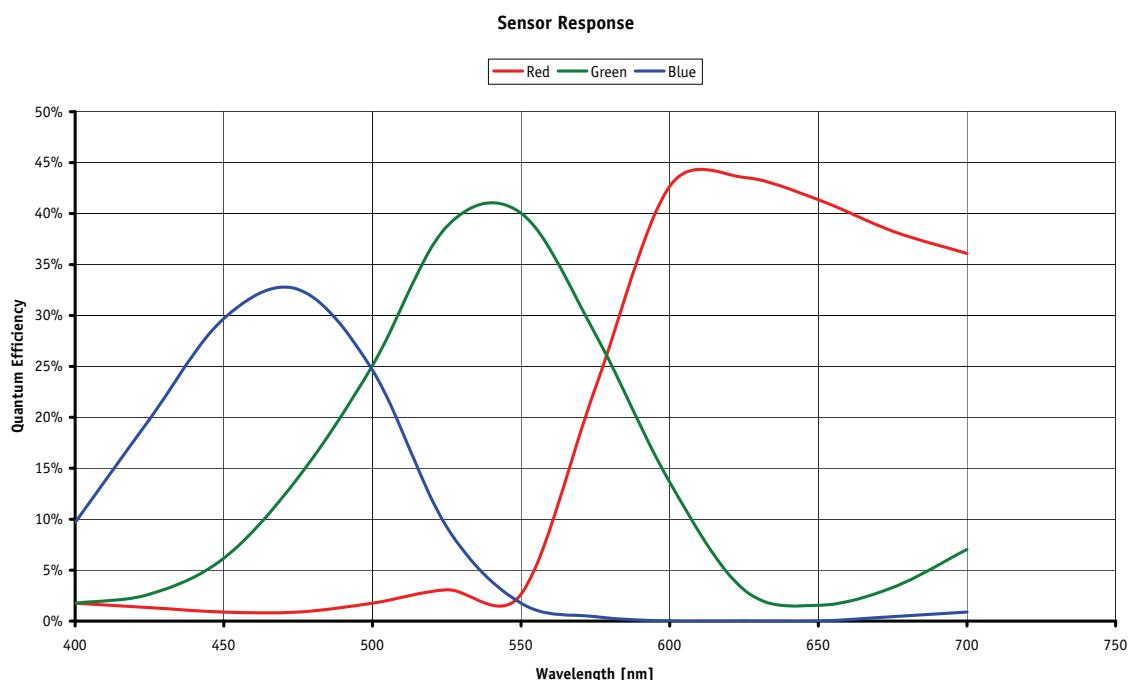


Figure 48: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-145C

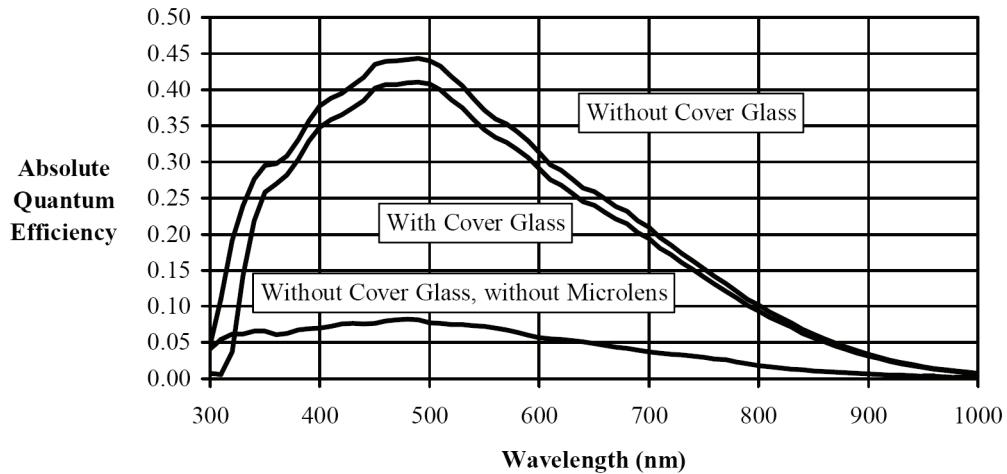


Figure 49: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-210B

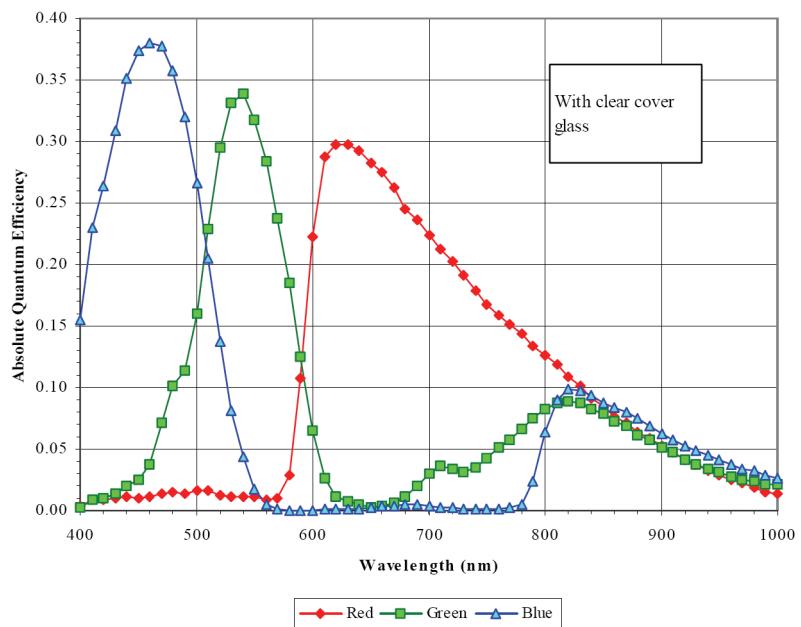


Figure 50: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-210C

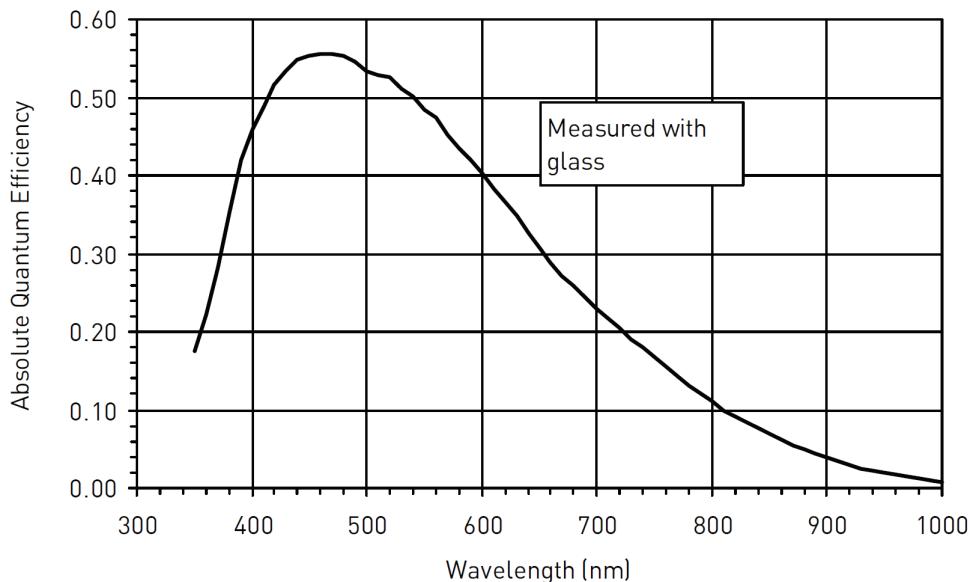


Figure 51: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-421B

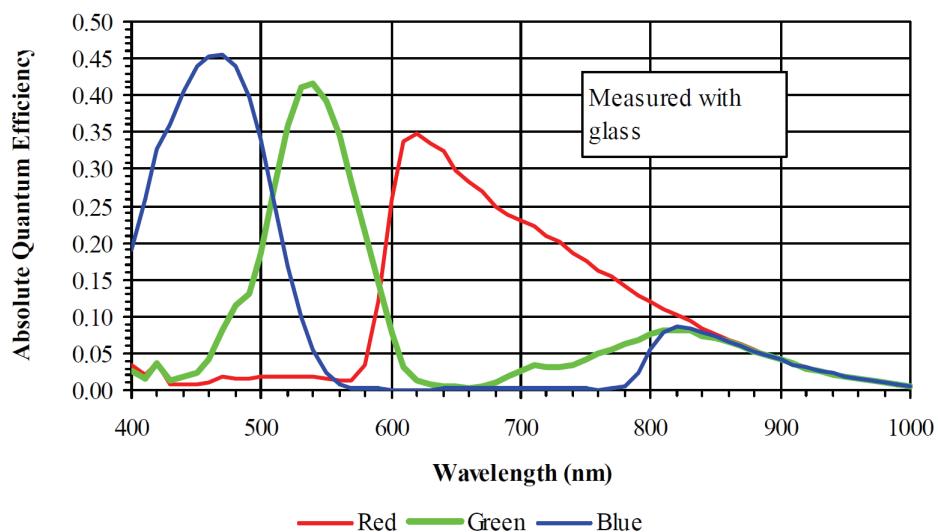


Figure 52: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-421C

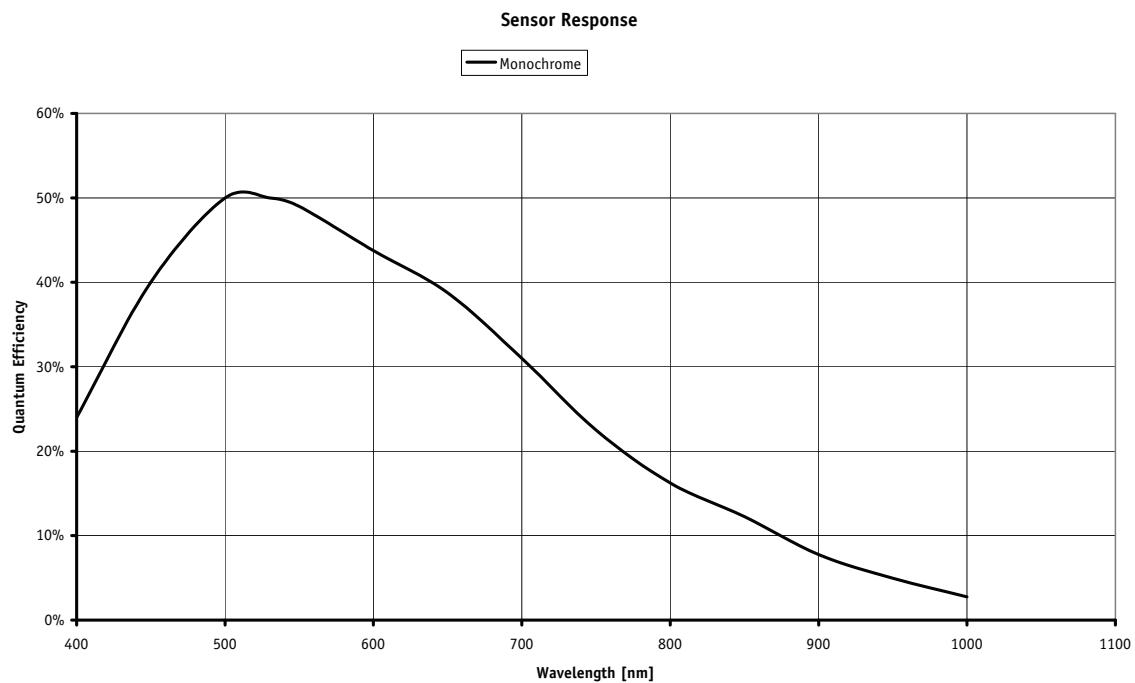


Figure 53: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-505B

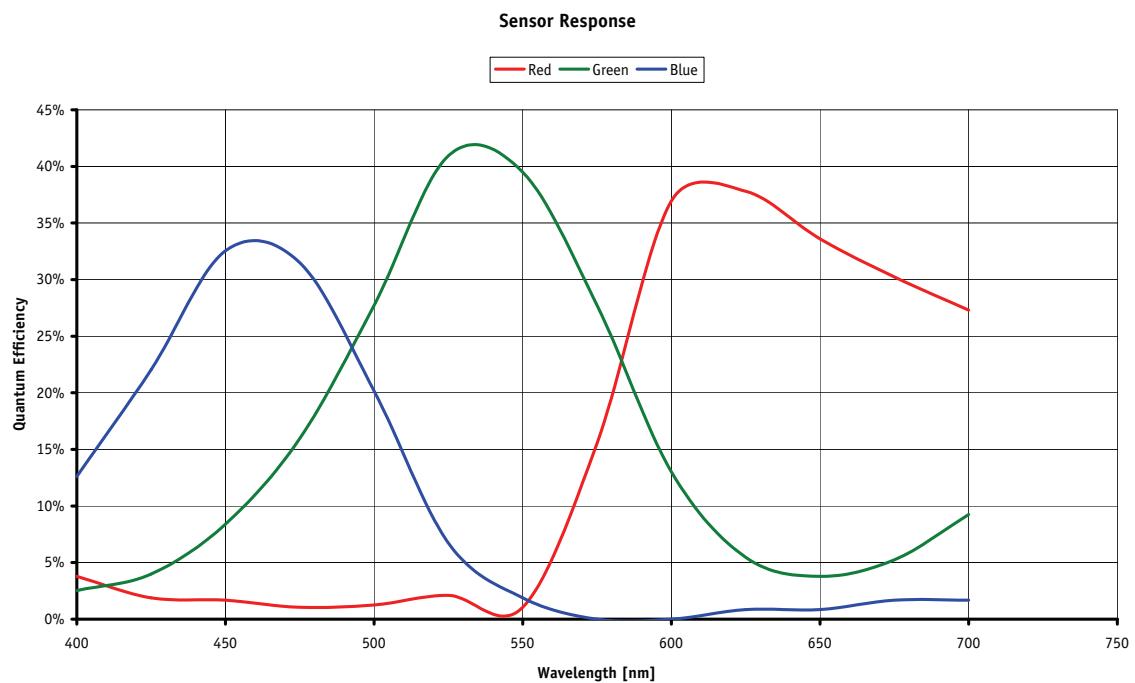


Figure 54: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-505C

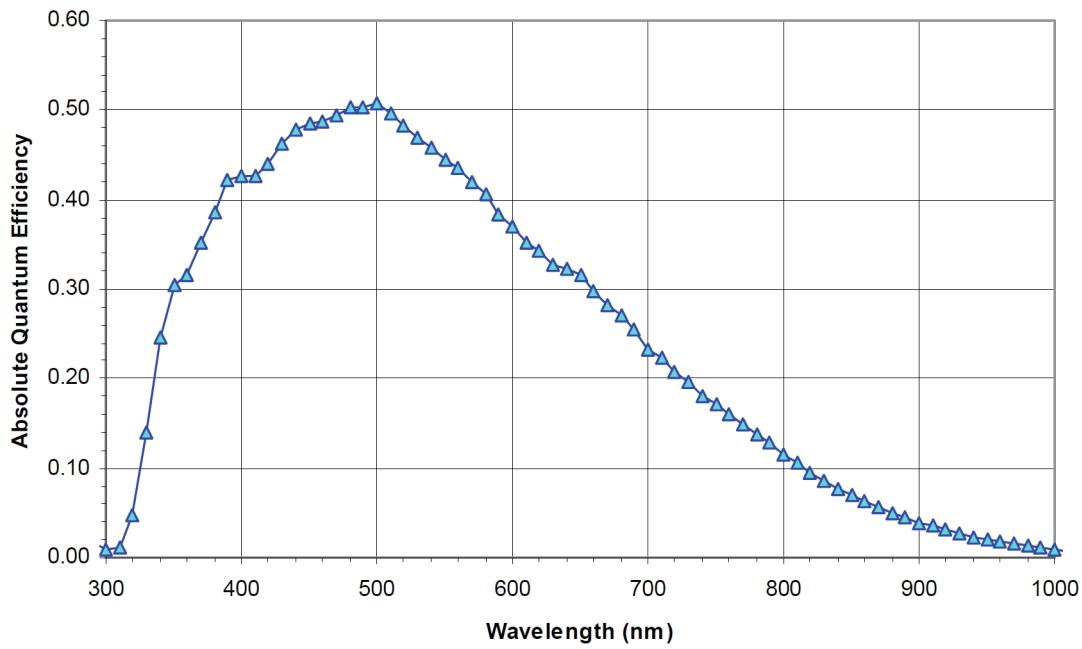


Figure 55: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-1100B

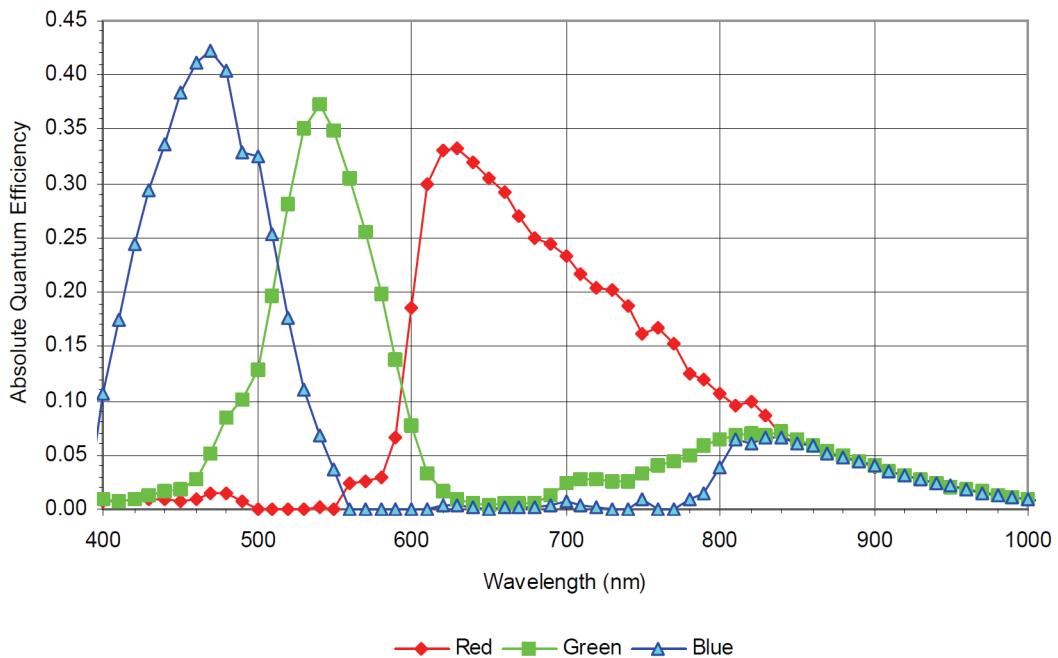


Figure 56: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-1100C

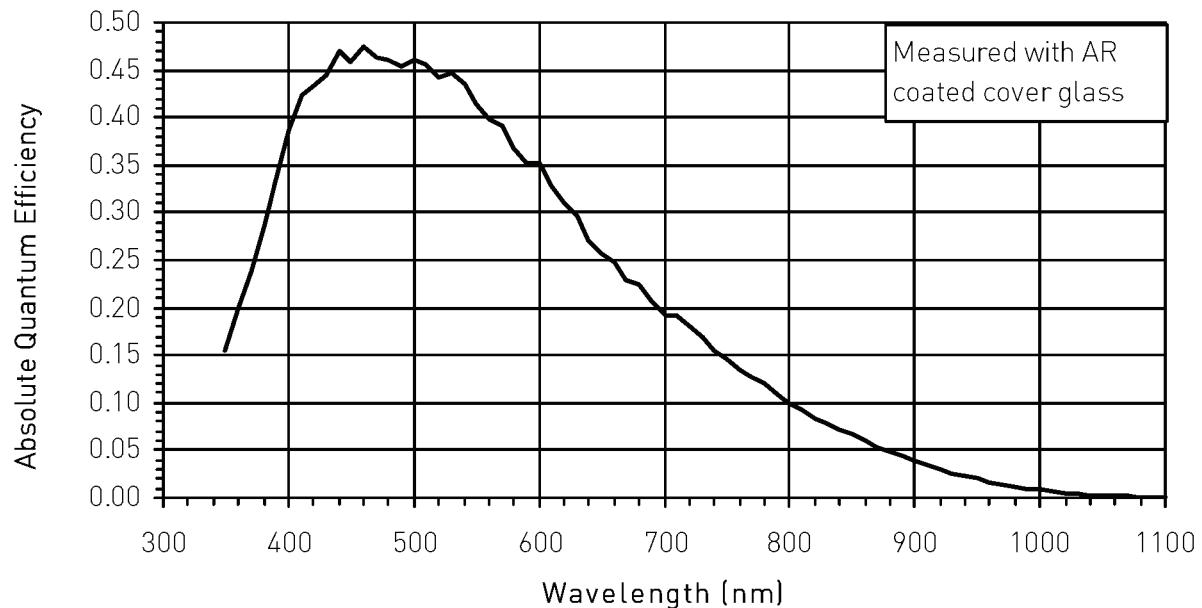


Figure 57: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-1600B

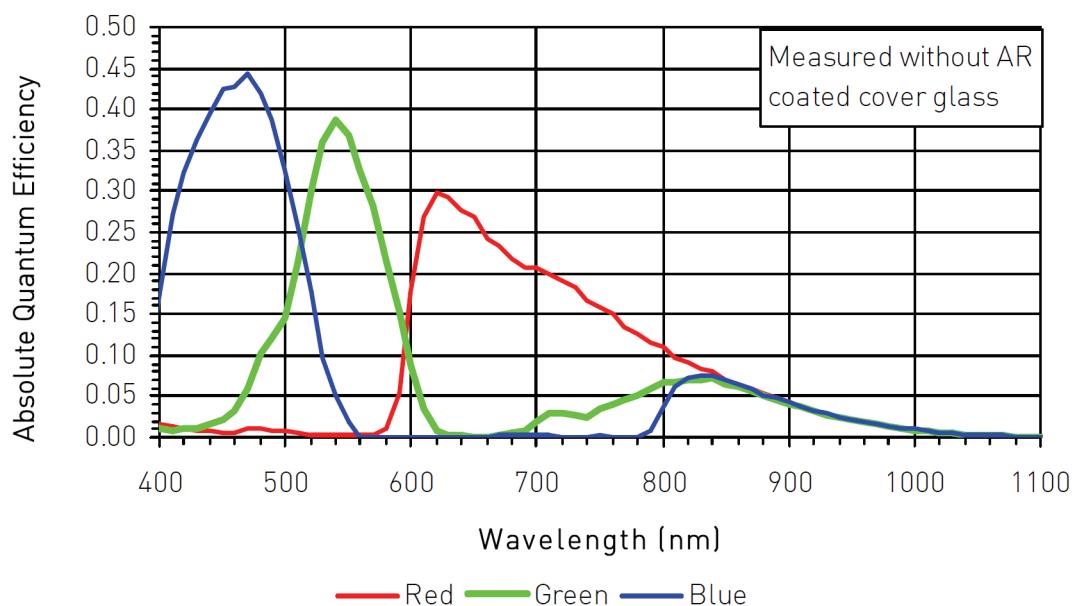


Figure 58: Spectral sensitivity of Pike F-1600C

# Camera interfaces

This chapter gives you detailed information on status LEDs, inputs and outputs, trigger features and transmission of data packets.

**Note**

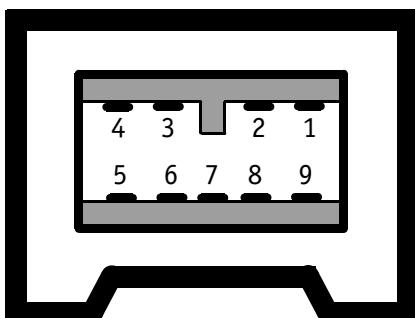


For a detailed description of the **camera interfaces (FireWire, I/O connector)**, **ordering numbers** and **operating instructions** see the **Hardware Installation Guide**, Chapter *Camera interfaces*.

Read all **Notes** and **Cautions** in the **Hardware Installation Guide**, before using any interfaces.

## IEEE 1394b port pin assignment

The IEEE 1394b connector is designed for industrial use and has the following pin assignment as per specification:



Pin	Signal
1	TPB-
2	TPB+
3	TPA-
4	TPA+
5	TPA (Reference ground)
6	VG (GND)
7	N.C.
8	VP (Power, VCC)
9	TPB (Reference ground)

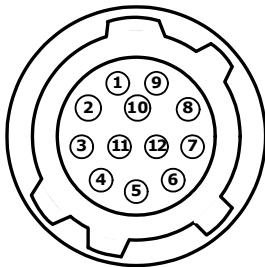
Figure 59: IEEE 1394b connector

**Note**



- Both IEEE 1394b connectors with **screw lock** mechanism provide access to the IEEE 1394 bus and thus makes it possible to control the camera and output frames. Connect the camera by using either of the connectors. The other connector can be used to daisy chain a second camera.
- Cables with latching connectors on one or both sides can be used and are available with lengths of 5 m or 7.5 m. Ask your local dealer for more details.

## Camera I/O connector pin assignment



Pin	Signal	Direction	Level	Description
1	External GND		GND for RS232 and ext. power	External Ground for RS232 and external power
2	External Power		+8...+36 V DC	Power supply
3	Camera Out 4	Out	Open emitter	Camera Output 4 (GPOut4) default: -
4	Camera In 1	In	$U_{in}(\text{high}) = 2 \text{ V} \dots U_{inVCC}$ $U_{in}(\text{low}) = 0 \text{ V} \dots 0.8 \text{ V}$	Camera Input 1 (GPIn1) default: Trigger
5	Camera Out 3	Out	Open emitter	Camera Output 3 (GPOut3) default: Busy
6	Camera Out 1	Out	Open emitter	Camera Output 1 (GPOut1) default: IntEna
7	Camera In GND	In	Common GND for inputs	Camera Common Input Ground (In GND)
8	RxD RS232	In	RS232	Terminal Receive Data
9	TxD RS232	Out	RS232	Terminal Transmit Data
10	Camera Out Power	In	Common VCC for outputs max. 36 V DC	Camera Output Power for digital outputs (OutVCC)
11	Camera In 2	In	$U_{in}(\text{high}) = 2 \text{ V} \dots U_{inVCC}$ $U_{in}(\text{low}) = 0 \text{ V} \dots 0.8 \text{ V}$	Camera Input 2 (GPIn2) default: -
12	Camera Out 2	Out	Open emitter	Camera Output 2 (GPOut2) default: Follow CameraIn2

Figure 60: Camera I/O connector pin assignment

Note

GP = General Purpose



For a detailed description of the **I/O connector and its operating instructions** see the **Hardware Installation Guide, Chapter PIKE input description**.

Read all **Notes** and **Cautions** in the **Hardware Installation Guide**, before using the I/O connector.

## Status LEDs

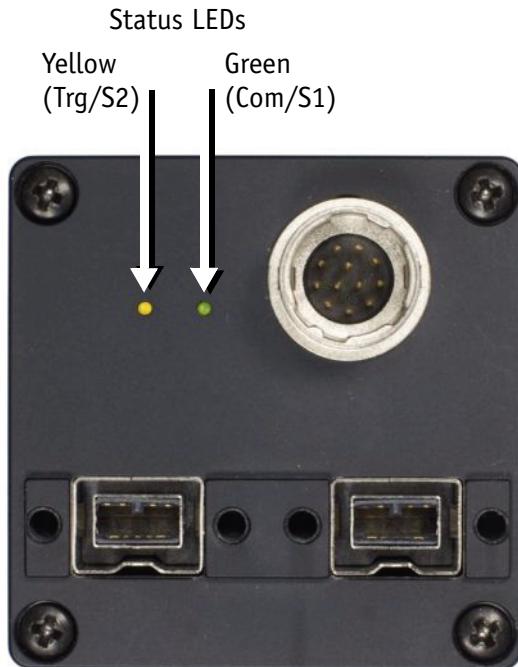


Figure 61: Position of status LEDs

### On LED (green)

The green power LED indicates that the camera is being supplied with sufficient voltage and is ready for operation.

### Status LED

The following states are displayed via the LED:

State	Description
Com/S1 (green)	Asynchronous and isochronous data transmission active (indicated asynchronously to transmission via the 1394 bus)
Trg/S2 (yellow)	LED on - waiting for external trigger LED off - triggered / internal sync

Table 23: LED indication

Blink codes are used to signal warnings or error states:

<b>Class S1 →</b> <b>Error code S2</b>	<b>Warning 1 blink</b>	<b>DCAM 2 blinks</b>	<b>MISC 3 blinks</b>	<b>FPGA 4 blinks</b>	<b>Stack 5 blinks</b>
FPGA boot error				1-5 blinks	
Stack setup					1 blink
Stack start					2 blinks
No FLASH object			1 blink		
No DCAM object		1 blink			
Register mapping		3 blinks			
VMode_ERROR_STATUS	1 blink				
FORMAT_7_ERROR_1	2 blinks				
FORMAT_7_ERROR_2	3 blinks				

Table 24: Error codes

The following sketch illustrates the series of blinks for a Format\_7\_error\_1:

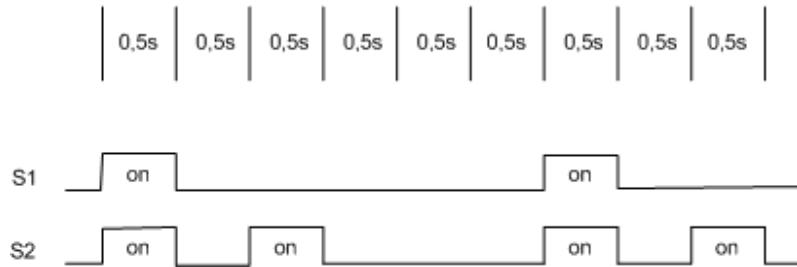


Figure 62: Warning and error states

You should wait for at least 2 full cycles because the display of blinking codes starts asynchronously - e.g. on the second blink from S2.

## Control and video data signals

The inputs and outputs of the camera can be configured by software. The different modes are described below.

### Inputs

**Note**



For a general description of the **inputs** and **warnings** see the **Hardware Installation Guide**, Chapter **PIKE input description**.

The optocoupler inverts all input signals. Inversion of the signal is controlled via the IO\_INP\_CTRL1..2 register (see [Table 25: Advanced register: Input control](#) on page 116).

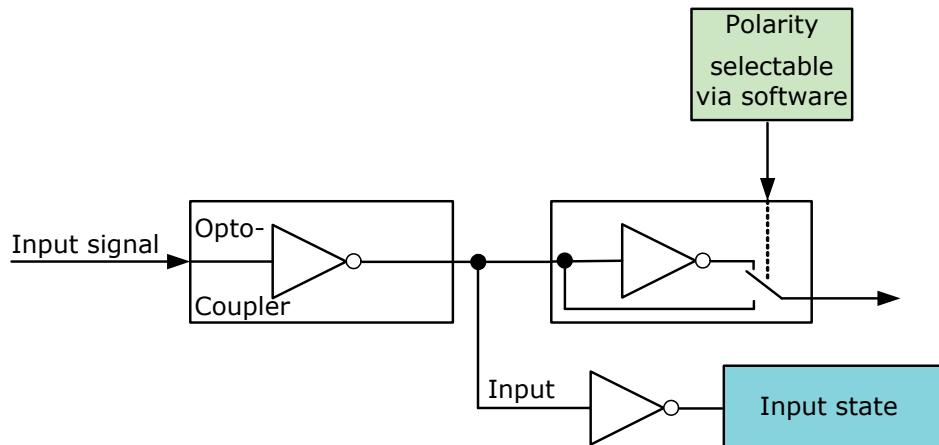


Figure 63: Input block diagram

### Triggers

All inputs configured as triggers are linked by AND. If several inputs are being used as triggers, a high signal must be present on all inputs in order to generate a trigger signal. Each signal can be inverted. The camera must be set to **external triggering** to trigger image capture by the trigger signal.

## Input/output pin control

All input and output signals running over the camera I/O connector are controlled by an advanced feature register.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000300	IO_INP_CTRL1	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..6]	Reserved
		Polarity	[7]	0: Signal not inverted 1: Signal inverted
		---	[8..10]	Reserved
		InputMode	[11..15]	Mode see <a href="#">Table 26: Input routing on page 117</a>
		---	[16..30]	Reserved
		PinState	[31]	RD: Current state of pin
0xF1000304	IO_INP_CTRL2	Same as IO_INP_CTRL1		

Table 25: Advanced register: **Input control**

## IO\_INP\_CTRL 1-2

The **Polarity** flag determines whether the input is low active (0) or high active (1). The **input mode** can be seen in the following table. The **PinState** flag is used to query the current status of the input.

The **PinState** bit reads the inverting optocoupler status after an internal negation. See [Figure 63: Input block diagram](#) on page 115.

This means that an open input sets the **PinState** bit to **0**. (This is different to AVT Marlin/Dolphin/Oscar, where an open input sets **PinState** bit to **1**.)

ID	Mode	Default
0x00	Off	
0x01	Reserved	
0x02	Trigger input	Input 1
0x03	Reserved	
0x06	Sequence Step	
0x07	Sequence Reset	
0x08..0x1F	Reserved	

Table 26: Input routing

**Note** If you set more than 1 input to function as a trigger input, all trigger inputs are ANDed.



## Trigger delay

Pike cameras feature various ways to delay image capture based on external trigger.

With IIDC V1.31 there is a standard CSR at Register F0F00534/834h to control a delay up to FFFh x time base value.

The following table explains the inquiry register and the meaning of the various bits.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF0F00534	TRIGGER_DELAY_INQUIRY	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		Abs_Control_Inq	[1]	Capability of control with absolute value
		---	[2]	Reserved
		One_Push_Inq	[3]	One-push auto mode (controlled automatically by the camera once)
		Readout_Inq	[4]	Capability of reading out the value of this feature
		ON_OFF	[5]	Capability of switching this feature ON and OFF
		Auto_Inq	[6]	Auto mode (controlled automatically by the camera)
		Manual_Inq	[7]	Manual mode (controlled by user)
		Min_Value	[8..19]	Minimum value for this feature
		Max_Value	[20..31]	Maximum value for this feature

Table 27: Trigger delay inquiry register

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF0F00834	TRIGGER_DELAY	Presence_Inq	[0]	Presence of this feature: 0:N/ 1: Available
		Abs_Control	[1]	Absolute value control 0: Control with value in the value field 1: Control with value in the absolute value CSR. If this bit=1 the value in the value field has to be ignored.
		---	[2..5]	Reserved
		ON_OFF	[6]	Write ON or OFF this feature Read: Status of the feature ON=1 OFF=0
		---	[7..19]	Reserved
		Value	[20..31]	Value

Table 28: Trigger Delay CSR

The cameras also have an advanced register which allows even more precise image capture delay after receiving a hardware trigger.

#### Trigger delay advanced register

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000400	TRIGGER_DELAY	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	-
		ON_OFF	[6]	Trigger delay on/off
		---	[7..10]	-
		DelayTime	[11..31]	Delay time in $\mu$ s

Table 29: Trigger delay advanced CSR

The advanced register allows the start of the integration to be delayed by max.  $2^{21} \mu$ s, which is max. 2.1 s after a trigger edge was detected.

**Note**

- Switching trigger delay to ON also switches external Trigger\_Mode\_0 to ON.
- This feature works with external Trigger\_Mode\_0 only.

**Outputs****Note**

For a general description of the **outputs** and **warnings** see the **Hardware Installation Guide**, Chapter **PIKE output description**.

Output features are configured by software. Any signal can be placed on any output.

The main features of output signals are described below:

Signal	Description
IntEna (Integration Enable) signal	This signal displays the time in which exposure was made. By using a register this output can be delayed by up to 1.05 seconds.
Fval (Frame valid) signal	This feature signals readout from the sensor. This signal Fval follows IntEna.
Busy signal	This indicator appears when the exposure is being made; the sensor is being read from or data transmission is active. The camera is busy.

Table 30: Output signals

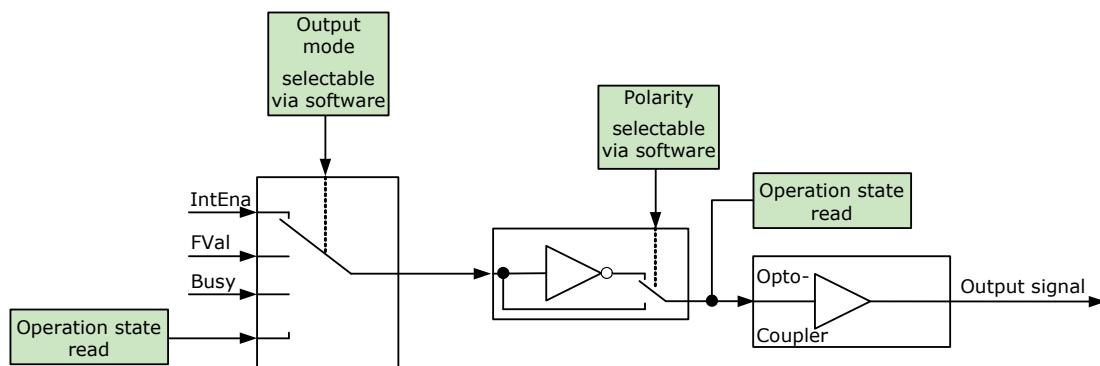


Figure 64: Output block diagram

## IO\_OUTP\_CTRL 1-4

The outputs (Output mode, Polarity) are controlled via 4 advanced feature registers (see [Table 31: Advanced register: Output control](#) on page 121).

The **Polarity** field determines whether the output is inverted or not. The **output mode** can be viewed in the table below. The current status of the output can be queried and set via the **PinState**.

It is possible to read back the status of an output pin regardless of the output mode. This allows for example the host computer to determine if the camera is busy by simply polling the BUSY output.

**Note** Outputs in **Direct Mode**:  
 For correct functionality the **Polarity should always be set to 0** (SmartView: Trig/IO tab, Invert=No).

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000320	IO_OUTP_CTRL1	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		PWMCapable	[1]	Indicates if an output pin supports the PWM feature. See <a href="#">Table 33: PWM configuration registers</a> on page 124.
		---	[2..6]	Reserved
		Polarity	[7]	0: Signal not inverted 1: Signal inverted
		---	[8..10]	Reserved
		Output mode	[11..15]	Mode see <a href="#">Table 32: Output routing on page 122</a>
		---	[16..30]	Reserved
		PinState	[31]	RD: Current state of pin WR: New state of pin
0xF1000324	IO_OUTP_CTRL2	Same as IO_OUTP_CTRL1		
0xF1000328	IO_OUTP_CTRL3	Same as IO_OUTP_CTRL1		
0xF100032C	IO_OUTP_CTRL4	Same as IO_OUTP_CTRL1		

Table 31: Advanced register: **Output control**

## Output modes

ID	Mode	Default / description
0x00	Off	
0x01	Output state follows <b>PinState</b> bit	Using this mode, the Polarity bit has to be set to 0 (not inverted). This is necessary for an error free display of the output status.
0x02	Integration enable	Output 1
0x03	Reserved	
0x04	Reserved	
0x05	Reserved	
0x06	FrameValid	
0x07	Busy	Output 2
0x08	Follow corresponding input (Inp1 → Out1, Inp2 → Out2)	
0x09	PWM (=pulse-width modulation)	
0x0A..0x0F	Reserved	
0x10..0x1F	Reserved	

Table 32: Output routing

**PinState 0** switches off the output transistor and produces a low level over the resistor connected from the output to ground.

The following diagram illustrates the dependencies of the various output signals.

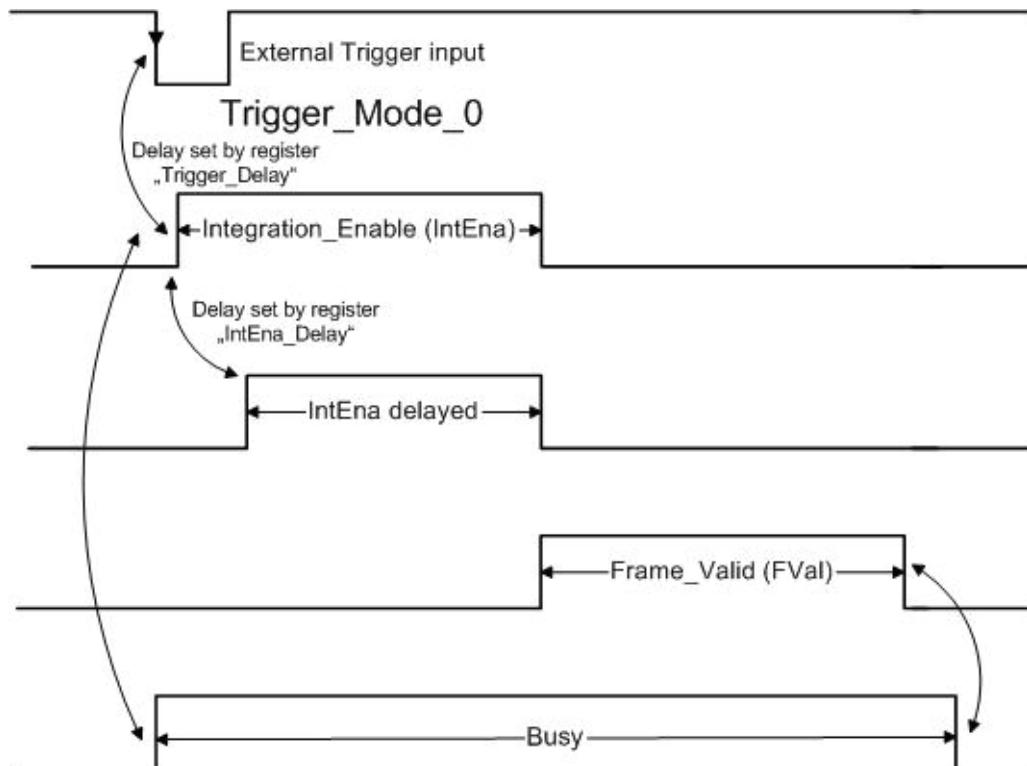


Figure 65: Output impulse diagram

**Note** The signals can be inverted.



**Caution** Firing a new trigger while **IntEna** is still active can result in **missing image**.



**Note**

- Note that **trigger delay** in fact delays the image capture whereas the **IntEna\_Delay** only delays the leading edge of the IntEna output signal but does not delay the image capture.
- As mentioned before, it is possible to set the outputs by software. Doing so, the achievable maximum frequency is strongly dependent on individual software capabilities. As a rule of thumb, the camera itself will limit the toggle frequency to not more than 700 Hz.

**Pulse-width modulation**

The 2 inputs and 4 outputs are independent. Each output has pulse-width modulation (PWM) capabilities, which can be used (with additional external electronics) for motorized speed control or autofocus control.

Period (in  $\mu$ s) and pulse width (in  $\mu$ s) are adjustable via the following registers (see also examples in Chapter [PWM: Examples in practice](#) on page 126):

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000800	IO_OUTP_PWM1	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1]	Reserved
		---	[2..3]	Reserved
		MinPeriod	[4..19]	Minimum PWM period in $\mu$ s (read only)
		---	[20..27]	Reserved
		---	[28..31]	Reserved
		PulseWidth	[0..15]	PWM pulse width in $\mu$ s
0xF1000804		Period	[16..31]	PWM period in $\mu$ s
0xF1000808	IO_OUTP_PWM2	Same as IO_OUTP_PWM1		
0xF100080C		Same as IO_OUTP_PWM1		
0xF1000810	IO_OUTP_PWM3	Same as IO_OUTP_PWM1		
0xF1000814		Same as IO_OUTP_PWM1		
0xF1000818	IO_OUTP_PWM4	Same as IO_OUTP_PWM1		
0xF100081C		Same as IO_OUTP_PWM1		

Table 33: PWM configuration registers

To enable the PWM feature select output mode 0x09. Control the signal state via the **PulseWidth** and **Period** fields (all times in microseconds ( $\mu$ s)).

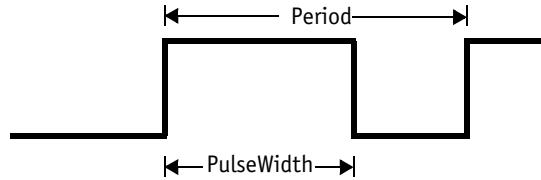


Figure 66: PulseWidth and Period definition

**Note**

Note the following conditions:

- PulseWidth < Period
- Period ≥ MinPeriod

**PWM: minimal and maximal periods and frequencies**

In the following formulas you find the minimal/maximal periods and frequencies for the pulse-width modulation (PWM).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{period}_{\min} &= 3\mu\text{s} \\ \Rightarrow \text{frequency}_{\max} &= \frac{1}{\text{period}_{\min}} = \frac{1}{3\mu\text{s}} = 333.33\text{kHz} \\ \text{frequency}_{\min} &= \frac{1}{2^{16} \times 10^{-6}\text{s}} = 15.26\text{Hz} \\ \Rightarrow \text{period}_{\max} &= \frac{1}{\text{frequency}_{\min}} = 2^{16}\mu\text{s} \end{aligned}$$

Formula 1: Minimal/maximal period and frequency

**PWM: Examples in practice**

In this chapter we give you two examples, how to write values in the PWM registers. All values have to be written in microseconds ( $\mu\text{s}$ ) in the PWM registers, therefore remember always the factor  $10^{-6}\text{s}$ .

**Example 1:**

Set PWM with 1kHz at 30% pulse width.

$$\text{RegPeriod} = \frac{1}{\text{frequency} \times 10^{-6}\text{s}} = \frac{1}{1\text{kHz} \times 10^{-6}\text{s}} = 1000$$

$$\text{RegPulseWidth} = \text{RegPeriod} \times 30\% = 1000 \times 30\% = 300$$

Formula 2: PWM example 1

**Example 2:**

Set PWM with 250 Hz at 12% pulse width.

$$\text{RegPeriod} = \frac{1}{\text{frequency} \times 10^{-6}\text{s}} = \frac{1}{250\text{Hz} \times 10^{-6}\text{s}} = 4000$$

$$\text{RegPulseWidth} = \text{RegPeriod} \times 12\% = 4000 \times 12\% = 480$$

Formula 3: PWM example 2

## Pixel data

Pixel data are transmitted as isochronous data packets in accordance with the 1394 interface described in IIDC V1.31. The first packet of a frame is identified by the **1** in the **sync bit** (sy) of the packet header.

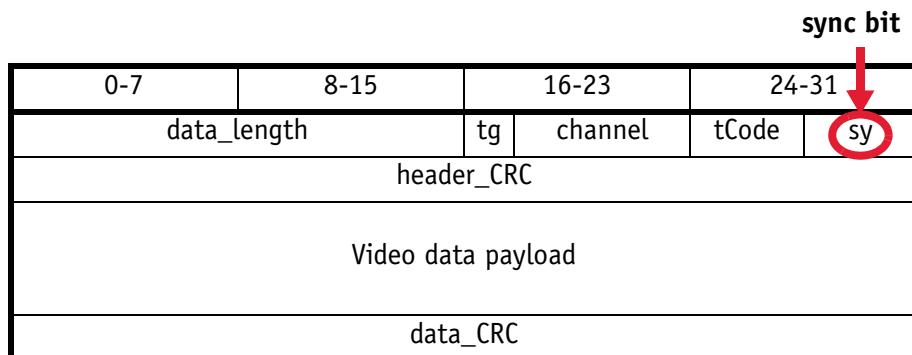


Table 34: Isochronous data block packet format. Source: IIDC V1.31

Field	Description
data_length	Number of bytes in the data field
tg	<b>Tag field</b> shall be set to zero
channel	<b>Isochronous channel number</b> , as programmed in the iso_channel field of the cam_sta_ctrl register
tCode	<b>Transaction code</b> shall be set to the isochronous data block packet tCode
sy	<b>Synchronization value (sync bit)</b> This is one single bit. It indicates the start of a new frame. It shall be set to 0001h on the first isochronous data block of a frame, and shall be set to zero on all other isochronous blocks
Video data payload	Shall contain the digital video information

Table 35: Description of data block packet format

- The video data for each pixel are output in either 8-bit or 14-bit format (**Packed 12-Bit Mode**: 12-bit format).
- Each pixel has a range of 256 or 16384 (**Packed 12-Bit Mode**: 4096) shades of gray.
- The digital value 0 is black and 255 or 16383 (**Packed 12-Bit Mode**: 4095) is white. In 16-bit mode the data output is MSB aligned.

The following table provides a description of the video data format for the different modes. (Source: IIDC V1.31; packed 12-bit mode: AVT)

<YUV (4:2:2) format >

U-(K+0)	Y-(K+0)	V-(K+0)	Y-(K+1)
U-(K+2)	Y-(K+2)	V-(K+2)	Y-(K+3)
U-(K+4)	Y-(K+4)	V-(K+4)	Y-(K+5)
<hr/>			
U-(K+Pn-6)	Y-(K+Pn-6)	V-(K+Pn-6)	Y-(K+Pn-5)
U-(K+Pn-4)	Y-(K+Pn-4)	V-(K+Pn-4)	Y-(K+Pn-3)
U-(K+Pn-2)	Y-(K+Pn-2)	V-(K+Pn-2)	Y-(K+Pn-1)

<YUV (4:1:1) format >

U-(K+0)	Y-(K+0)	Y-(K+1)	V-(K+0)
Y-(K+2)	Y-(K+3)	U-(K+4)	Y-(K+4)
Y-(K+5)	V-(K+4)	Y-(K+6)	Y-(K+7)
<hr/>			
U-(K+Pn-8)	Y-(K+Pn-8)	Y-(K+Pn-7)	V-(K+Pn-8)
Y-(K+Pn-6)	Y-(K+Pn-5)	U-(K+Pn-4)	Y-(K+Pn-4)
Y-(K+Pn-3)	V-(K+Pn-4)	Y-(K+Pn-2)	Y-(K+Pn-1)

Figure 67: YUV 4:2:2 and YUV 4:1:1 format: Source: IIDC V1.31 specification

<Y (Mono) format >

Y-(K+0)	Y-(K+1)	Y-(K+2)	Y-(K+3)
Y-(K+4)	Y-(K+5)	Y-(K+6)	Y-(K+7)
<hr/>			
Y-(K+Pn-8)	Y-(K+Pn-7)	Y-(K+Pn-6)	Y-(K+Pn-5)
Y-(K+Pn-4)	Y-(K+Pn-3)	Y-(K+Pn-2)	Y-(K+Pn-1)

< Y (Mono16) format >

High byte	Low byte
Y-(K+0)	Y-(K+1)
Y-(K+2)	Y-(K+3)
<hr/>	
Y-(K+Pn-4)	Y-(K+Pn-3)
Y-(K+Pn-2)	Y-(K+Pn-1)

Figure 68: Y8 and Y16 format: Source: IIDC V1.31 specification

<Y (Mono12) format>

Y-(K+0) [11..4]	Y-(K+1) [3..0]	Y-(K+1) [11..4]	Y-(K+2) [11..4]
Y-(K+0) [3..0]			
Y-(K+3) [3..0]	Y-(K+3) [11..4]	Y-(K+4) [11..4]	Y-(K+5) [3..0]
Y-(K+2) [3..0]			Y-(K+4) [3..0]
Y-(K+5) [11..4]	Y-(K+6) [11..4]	Y-(K+7) [3..0]	Y-(K+7) [11..4]
		Y-(K+6) [3..0]	

Table 36: **Packed 12-Bit Mode** (mono and raw) Y12 format

## &lt;Y, R, G, B&gt;

Each component has 8bit data. The data type is "Unsigned Char".

	Signal level (Decimal)	Data (Hexadecimal)
Highest	255	0xFF
	254	0xFE
	:	:
	1	0x01
Lowest	0	0x00

## &lt;U, V&gt;

Each component has 8bit data. The data type is "Straight Binary".

	Signal level (Decimal)	Data (Hexadecimal)
Highest (+)	127	0xFF
	126	0xFE
	:	:
	1	0x81
Lowest	0	0x80
	-1	0x7F
	:	:
	-127	0x01
Highest (-)	-128	0x00

## &lt;Y(Mono16)&gt;

Y component has 16bit data. The data type is "Unsigned Short (big-endian)".

Y	Signal level (Decimal)	Data (Hexadecimal)
Highest	65535	0xFFFF
	65534	0xFFFF
	:	:
	1	0x0001
Lowest	0	0x0000

Figure 69: Data structure: Source: IIDC V1.31 specification

## &lt;Y(Mono12)&gt;

Y component has 12-bit data. The data type is „unsigned“.

Y	Signal level (decimal)	Data (hexadecimal)
Highest	4095	0xFFFF
	4094	0xFFE
	.	.
	.	.
	1	0x0001
Lowest	0	0x0000

Table 37: Data structure of **Packed 12-Bit Mode** (mono and raw)

# Description of the data path

## Block diagrams of the cameras

The following diagrams illustrate the data flow and the bit resolution of image data after being read from the CCD sensor chip in the camera. The individual blocks are described in more detail in the following paragraphs. For sensor data see Chapter [Specifications](#) on page 85.

### Black and white cameras

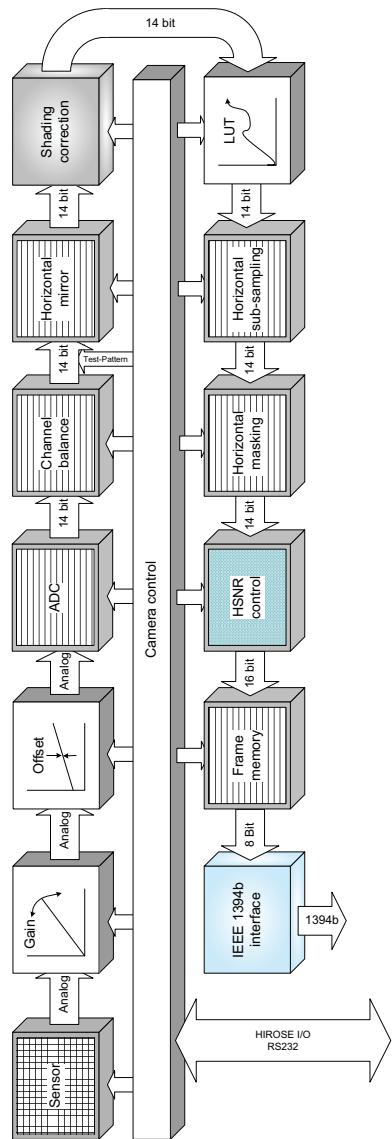


Figure 70: Block diagram b/w camera

## Color cameras

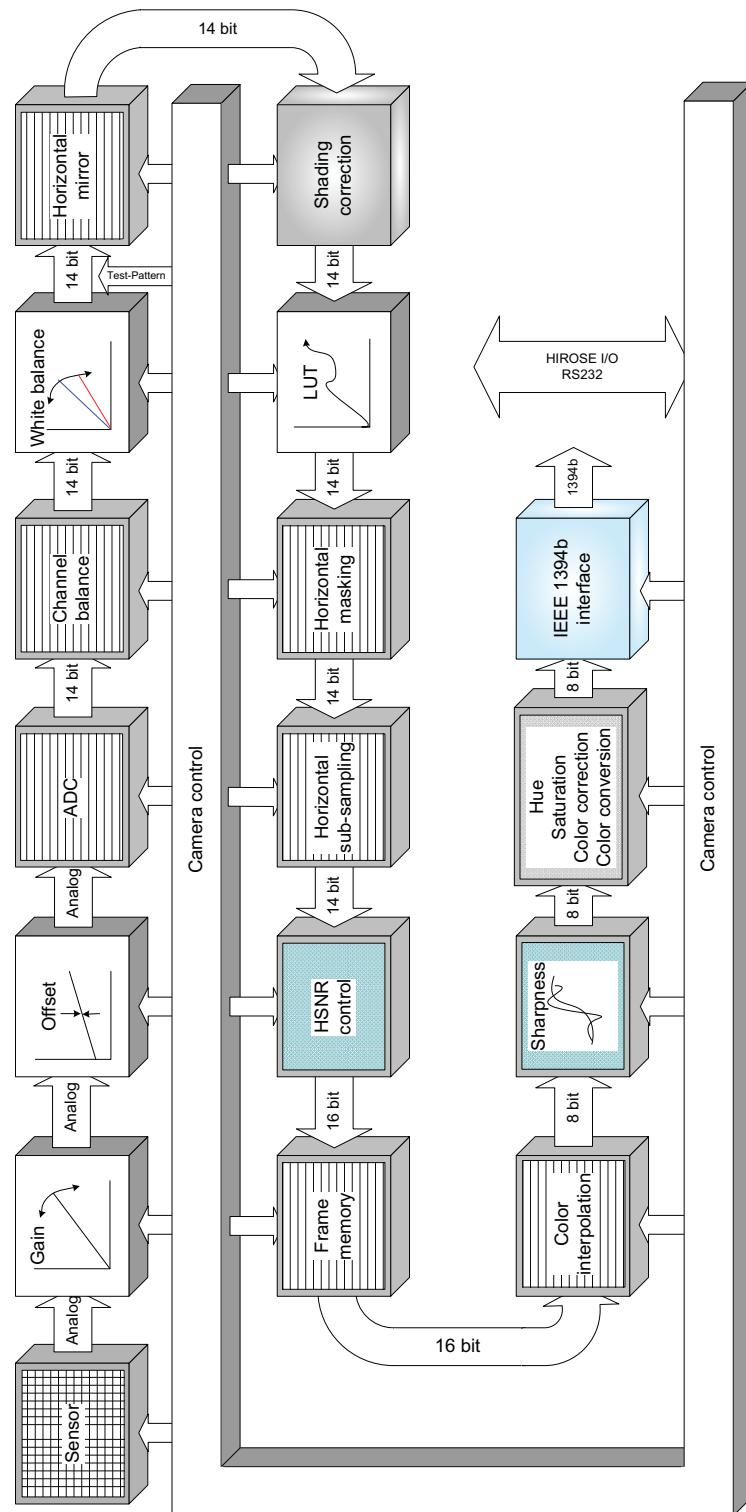


Figure 71: Block diagram color camera

## Channel balance

All KODAK PIKE sensors and the SONY sensor (of Pike F-505) are read out via two channels: the first channel for the left half of the image and the second channel for the right half of the image (divided by a central vertical line).

**Note**

PIKE F-1100 and PIKE F-1600 can also be used in single-tap readout mode, to prevent channel balance related problems.



See [Sensor digitization taps \(Pike F-1100/1600 only\)](#) on page 349ff.

All KODAK equipped cameras come with a sensor-specific pre-adjusted channel balance.

However in some cases it may be advantageous to carry out a fine adjustment with the so-called channel balance.

To carry out a **gain adjustment** in an advanced register: see [Table 164: Advanced register: Channel balance](#) on page 341.

To carry out a **dual-tap offset adjustment** in an advanced register: see [Table 165: Advanced register: Dual-tap offset adjustment](#) on page 341

**Note**

**Automatic** adjustment of gain (and offset) is implemented in SmartView and is not available on register basis.



## Channel adjustment with SmartView (>1.5)

Prerequisites:

- Test sheet with continuous b/w gradient
- PIKE camera with defocused lens
- PIKE color cameras set to RAW8 or RAW16 (debayering: none)
- In case of using AOI, be aware that the middle vertical line (+/- 20 pixel) is part of the AOI.

To carry out an adjustment in SmartView, perform the following steps:

1. In SmartView click **Extras → Adjust channels...** or use **Alt+Ctrl+A**.

The following window opens:

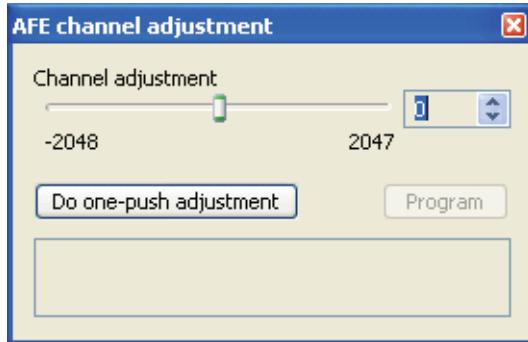


Figure 72: SmartView: channel adjustment (>1.5 up to 1.9.1)

**Note**

**Program** button is only available for AVT factory.



2. To perform an automatic channel adjustment, click on **Do one-push adjustment**.
3. If the adjustment is not sufficient, repeat this step or adjust by clicking the arrow buttons.

The two channels are automatically adjusted. For the channel adjustment a region from +/- 20 pixel around the middle vertical is taken into account.

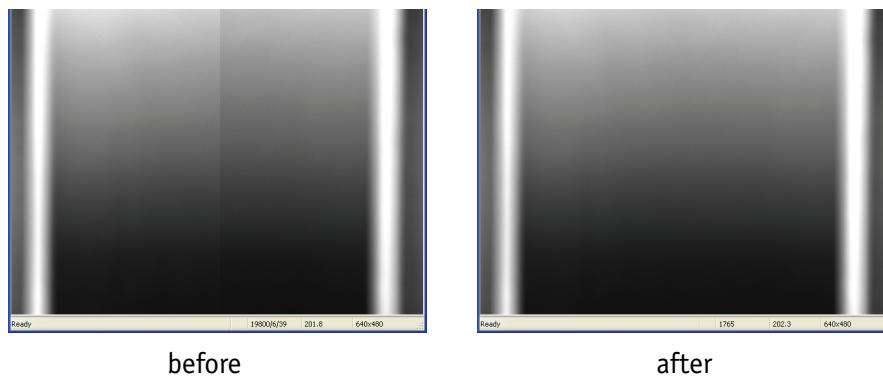


Figure 73: Example of channel adjustment: PIKE F-032B

**Dual-tap offset adjustment with SmartView (1.10 or greater)**

Prerequisites:

- Lens cap
- Test sheet with continuous b/w gradient

- Only following cameras: Pike F-032/Pike F-100/Pike F-210/Pike F-421/Pike F-505/Pike F-1100/Pike F-1600
- PIKE camera with defocused lens
- PIKE color cameras set to RAW8 or RAW16 (debayering: none)
- In case of using AOI, be aware that the middle vertical line (+/- 20 pixel) is part of the AOI.
- First do offset adjustment, then do gain adjustment.

To carry out an adjustment (offset adjustment + gain adjustment) in SmartView, perform the following steps:

1. In SmartView click **Extras** → **Adjust channels...** or use **Alt+Ctrl+A**.  
The following window opens:

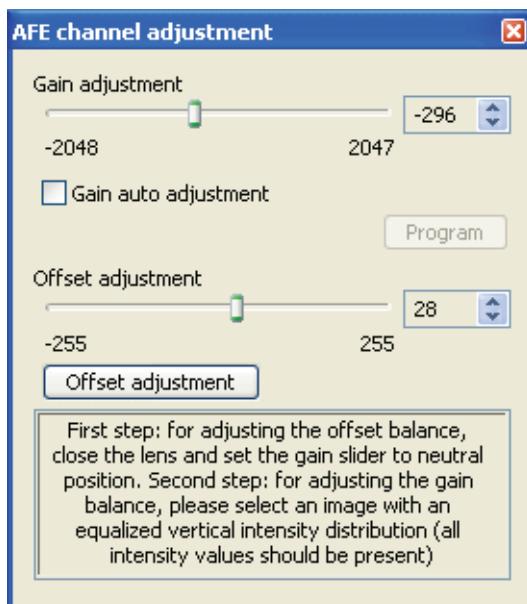


Figure 74: SmartView: channel adjustment (gain+offset) (1.10 and greater)

2. Put on lens cap.
3. Set gain adjustment slider and offset adjustment slider to 0.
4. Click several times **Offset adjustment** until the slider does not move any more.
5. Put off lens cap.
6. Take test sheet with vertical continuous b/w gradient, defocus lens and start image acquisition.
7. Activate **Gain auto adjustment**.

Now left and right channel should be adjusted for all grey values, so that vertical line is no more visible.

8. To save these settings in the user profiles: see Chapter [User profiles](#) on page 359ff. and [Table 185: User profile: stored settings](#) on page 361 (CHANNEL\_ADJUST\_CTRL, CHANNEL\_ADJUST\_VALUE, ADV\_CHN\_ADJ\_OFFSET, ADV\_CHN\_ADJ\_OFFSET+1).

**Note**

Channel adjustment should be done in the same gain region as in your real application.



If you use a much greater gain in your application, it may be necessary to do the dual-tap offset adjustment again.

Dual-tap offset adjustment is done once in the AVT factory and saved via **Program** button in User set 0.

The **Program** button is not available for the user.

## White balance

There are two types of white balance:

- **one-push white balance**: white balance is done only once (not continuously)
- **auto white balance (AWB)**: continuously optimizes the color characteristics of the image

Pike color cameras have both **one-push white balance** and **auto white balance**. White balance is applied so that non-colored image parts are displayed non-colored.

From the user's point, the white balance settings are made in register 80Ch of IIDC V1.31. This register is described in more detail below.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF0F0080C	WHITE_BALANCE	Presence_Inq	[0]	Presence of this feature: 0: N/A 1: Available
		Abs_Control	[1]	Absolute value control 0: Control with value in the <b>Value</b> field 1: Control with value in the <b>Absolute</b> value CSR If this bit=1, the value in the <b>Value</b> field will be ignored.
		---	[2..4]	Reserved
		One_Push	[5]	Write 1: begin to work (self-cleared after operation) Read: 1: in operation 0: not in operation If A_M_Mode = 1, this bit will be ignored.
		ON_OFF	[6]	Write: ON or OFF this feature Read: read a status 0: OFF 1: ON
		A_M_MODE	[7]	Write: set mode Read: read current mode 0: MANUAL 1: AUTO
		U/B_Value	[8..19]	U/B value This field is ignored when writing the value in Auto or OFF mode. If readout capability is not available, reading this field has no meaning.
		V/R_Value	[20..31]	V/R Value This field is ignored when writing the value in Auto or OFF mode. If readout capability is not available, reading this field has no meaning.

Table 38: White balance register

The values in the **U/B\_Value** field produce changes from green to blue; the **V/R\_Value** field from green to red as illustrated below.

**Note** While lowering both U/B and V/R registers from 284 towards 0, the lower one of the two effectively controls the green gain.

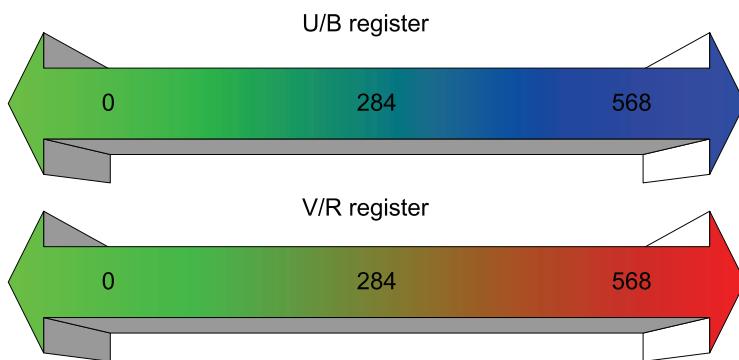


Figure 75: U/V slider range

Type	Range	Range in dB
Pike color cameras	0 ... 568	$\pm 10$ dB

Table 39: Manual gain range of the various Pike types

The increment length is  $\sim 0.0353$  dB/step.

## One-push white balance

**Note**

### Configuration



To configure this feature in control and status register (CSR): See [Table 38: White balance register](#) on page 136.

The camera automatically generates frames, based on the current settings of all registers (GAIN, OFFSET, SHUTTER, etc.).

For white balance, in total **9** frames are processed. For the white balance algorithm the whole image or a subset of it is used. The R-G-B component values of the samples are added and are used as actual values for the **one-push white balance**.

This feature uses the assumption that the R-G-B component sums of the samples shall be equal; i.e., it assumes that the average of the sampled grid pixels is to be monochrome.

**Note**

The following ancillary conditions should be observed for successful white balance:



- There are no stringent or special requirements on the image content, it requires only the presence of equally weighted RGB pixels in the image.

If the image capture is active (e.g. **IsoEnable** set in register 614h), the frames used by the camera for white balance are also output on the 1394 bus. Any previously active image capture is restarted after the completion of white balance.

The following flow diagram illustrates the **one-push white balance** sequence.

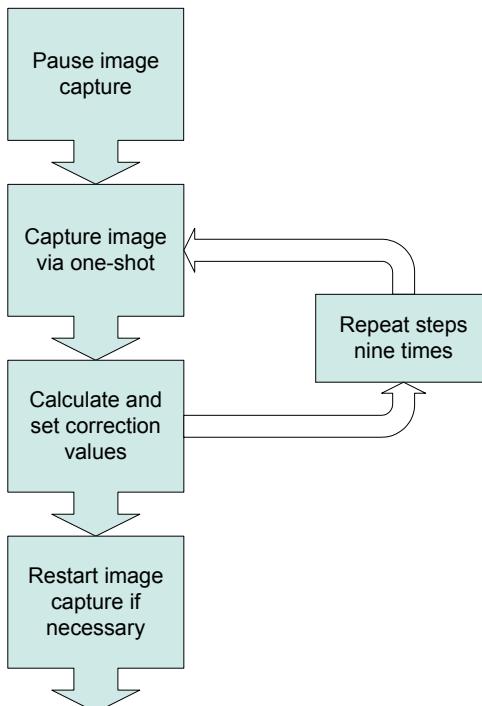


Figure 76: **One-push white balance** sequence

Finally, the calculated correction values can be read from the **WHITE\_BALANCE** register 80Ch.

## Auto white balance (AWB)

There is also an **auto white balance** feature available which continuously optimizes the color characteristics of the image.

For the white balance algorithm the whole image or a subset of it is used.

**Auto white balance** can also be enabled by using an external trigger. However, if there is a pause of >10 seconds between capturing individual frames this process is aborted.

### Note

The following ancillary conditions should be observed for successful white balance:



- There are no stringent or special requirements on the image content, it requires only the presence of equally weighted RGB pixels in the image.
- Automatic white balance can be started both during active image capture and when the camera is in idle state.

### Note

### Configuration



To set position and size of the control area (Auto\_Function\_AOI) in an advanced register: see [Table 160: Advanced register: Autofunction AOI](#) on page 338.

AUTOFNC\_AOI affects the auto shutter, auto gain and auto white balance features and is independent of the Format7 AOI settings. If this feature is switched off the work area position and size will follow the current active image size.

Within this area, the R-G-B component values of the samples are added and used as actual values for the feedback.

The following drawing illustrates the AUTOFNC\_AOI settings in greater detail.

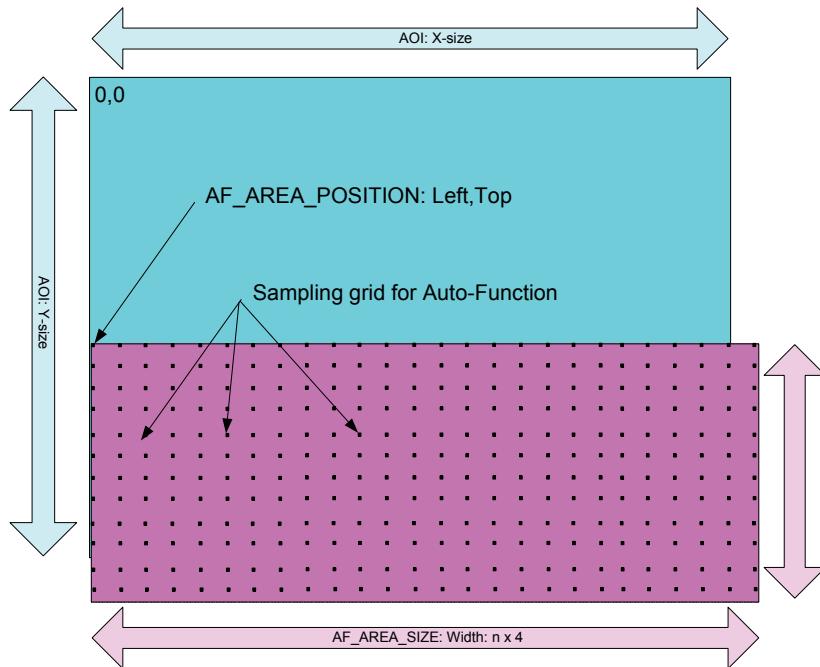


Figure 77: AUTOFNC\_AOI positioning

The algorithm is based on the assumption that the R-G-B component sums of the samples are equal, i.e., it assumes that the mean of the sampled grid pixels is to be monochrome.

## Auto shutter

In combination with auto white balance, PIKE cameras are equipped with auto-shutter feature.

When enabled, the auto shutter adjusts the shutter within the default shutter limits or within those set in advanced register F1000360h in order to reach the reference brightness set in auto exposure register.

**Note**

Target grey level parameter in **SmartView** corresponds to **Auto\_exposure** register 0xF0F00804 (I IDC).



**Increasing the auto exposure value increases the average brightness in the image and vice versa.**

**Increasing the auto exposure value increases the average brightness in the image and vice versa.**

The applied algorithm uses a proportional plus integral controller (PI controller) to achieve minimum delay with zero overshoot.

To configure this feature in control and status register (CSR):

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF0F0081C	SHUTTER	Presence_Inq	[0]	Presence of this feature: 0: N/A 1: Available
		Abs_Control	[1]	Absolute value control 0: Control with value in the <b>Value</b> field 1: Control with value in the <b>Absolute</b> value CSR If this bit=1, the value in the <b>Value</b> field will be ignored.
		---	[2..4]	Reserved
		One_Push	[5]	Write 1: begin to work (self-cleared after operation) Read: 1: in operation 0: not in operation If A_M_Mode = 1, this bit will be ignored.
		ON_OFF	[6]	Write: ON or OFF this feature Read: read a status 0: OFF 1: ON
		A_M_MODE	[7]	Write: set mode Read: read current mode 0: MANUAL 1: AUTO
		---	[8..19]	Reserved
		Value	[20..31]	Read/Write Value This field is ignored when writing the value in Auto or OFF mode. If readout capability is not available, reading this field has no meaning.

Table 40: CSR: **Shutter**

**Note**

**Configuration**



To configure this feature in an advanced register: See [Table 158: Advanced register: Auto shutter control](#) on page 336.

## Auto gain

All Pike cameras are equipped with auto gain feature.

**Note**



**Configuration**

To configure this feature in an advanced register: See [Table 159: Advanced register: Auto gain control](#) on page 337.

When enabled auto gain adjusts the gain within the default gain limits or within the limits set in advanced register F1000370h in order to reach the brightness set in auto exposure register as reference.

Increasing the auto exposure value (aka **target grey value**) increases the average brightness in the image and vice versa.

The applied algorithm uses a proportional plus integral controller (PI controller) to achieve minimum delay with zero overshoot.

The following table shows both the gain and auto exposure CSR.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF0F00820	GAIN	Presence_Inq	[0]	Presence of this feature: 0: N/A 1: Available
		Abs_Control	[1]	Absolute value control 0: Control with value in the value field 1: Control with value in the absolute value CSR If this bit=1 the value in the value field has to be ignored.
		---	[2..4]	Reserved
		One_Push	[5]	Write: Set bit high to start Read: Status of the feature: Bit high: WIP Bit low: Ready
		ON_OFF	[6]	Write: ON or OFF this feature Read: read a status 0: OFF 1: ON
		A_M_MODE	[7]	Write: set mode Read: read current mode 0: MANUAL 1: AUTO
		---	[8..19]	Reserved
		Value	[20..31]	Read/Write Value  This field is ignored when writing the value in Auto or OFF mode.  If readout capability is not available, reading this field has no meaning.

Table 41: CSR: **Gain**

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF0F00804	AUTO_EXPOSURE	Presence_Inq	[0]	Presence of this feature: 0: N/A 1: Available
		Abs_Control	[1]	Absolute value control 0: Control with value in the value field 1: Control with value in the absolute value CSR If this bit=1 the value in the value field has to be ignored.
		---	[2..4]	Reserved
		One_Push	[5]	Write: Set bit high to start Read: Status of the feature: Bit high: WIP Bit low: Ready
		ON_OFF	[6]	Write: ON or OFF this feature Read: read a status 0: OFF 1: ON
		A_M_MODE	[7]	Write: set mode Read: read current mode 0: MANUAL 1: AUTO
		---	[8..19]	Reserved
		Value	[20..31]	Read/Write Value  This field is ignored when writing the value in Auto or OFF mode.  If readout capability is not available, reading this field has no meaning.

Table 42: CSR: Auto Exposure

**Note**

To configure auto gain control in an advanced register: See [Table 159: Advanced register: Auto gain control](#) on page 337.



**Note**

- Values can only be changed within the limits of gain CSR.
- Changes in auto exposure register only have an effect when auto gain is active.
- Auto exposure limits are 50..205. (**SmartView**→**Ctrl1** tab: **Target grey level**)

## Manual gain

PIKE cameras are equipped with a gain setting, allowing the gain to be **manually** adjusted on the fly by means of a simple command register write.

The following ranges can be used when manually setting the gain for the analog video signal:

Type	Range	Range in dB	Increment length
PIKE color cameras	0 ... 565	0 ... 20 dB	
PIKE b/w cameras	1 ... 630	0 ... 22 dB	~0.0353 dB/step
PIKE F-145B	0 ... 900	0 ... 32 dB	
PIKE F-145C	0 ... 900	0 ... 32 dB	~0.0358 dB/step
PIKE F-145B-15fps	0 ... 900	0 ... 32 dB	
PIKE F-145C-15fps	0 ... 900	0 ... 32 dB	~0.0358 dB/step
PIKE F-505B	0 ... 670	0 ... 24 dB	
PIKE F-505C	0 ... 670	0 ... 24 dB	~0.0359 dB/step
PIKE F-1100B	0 ... 670	0 ... 24 dB	
PIKE F-1100C	0 ... 670	0 ... 24 dB	~0.0359 dB/step
PIKE F-1600B	0 ... 670	0 ... 24 dB	
PIKE F-1600C	0 ... 670	0 ... 24 dB	~0.0359 dB/step

Table 43: Manual gain range of the various PIKE types

**Note**

- Setting the gain does not change the offset (black value)
- A higher gain produces greater image noise. This reduces image quality. For this reason, try first to increase the brightness, using the aperture of the camera optics and/or longer shutter settings.

## Brightness (black level or offset)

It is possible to set the black level in the camera within the following ranges:  
 0 ... +16 gray values (@ 8 bit)  
 Increments are in 1/16 LSB (@ 8 bit)

**Note**

- Setting the gain does not change the offset (black value).



The IIDC register brightness at offset 800h is used for this purpose.

The following table shows the BRIGHTNESS register.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF0F00800	BRIGHTNESS	Presence_Inq	[0]	Presence of this feature: 0: N/A 1: Available
		Abs_Control	[1]	Absolute value control 0: Control with value in the value field 1: Control with value in the absolute value CSR If this bit= 1 the value in the value field has to be ignored
		---	[2..4]	Reserved
		One_Push	[5]	Write: Set bit high to start Read: Status of the feature: Bit high: WIP Bit low: Ready
		ON_OFF	[6]	Write: ON or OFF this feature Read: read a status 0: OFF 1: ON
		A_M_MODE	[7]	Write: set mode Read: read current mode 0: MANUAL 1: AUTO
		---	[8..19]	Reserved
		Value	[20..31]	Read/Write Value; this field is ignored when writing the value in Auto or OFF mode; if readout capability is not available reading this field has no meaning

Table 44: CSR: Brightness

## Horizontal mirror function

All Pike cameras are equipped with an electronic mirror function, which mirrors pixels from the left side of the image to the right side and vice versa. The mirror is centered to the actual **FOV** center and can be combined with all image manipulation functions, like **binning** and **shading**.

This function is especially useful when the camera is looking at objects with the help of a mirror or in certain microscopy applications.

**Note**



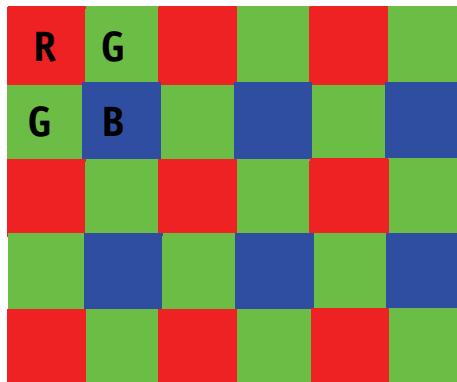
**Configuration**

To configure this feature in an advanced register: See [Table 163: Advanced register: Mirror](#) on page 340.

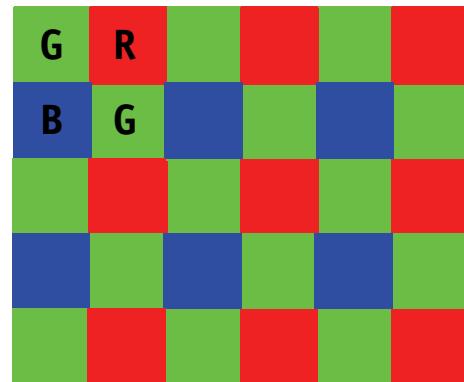
**Note**



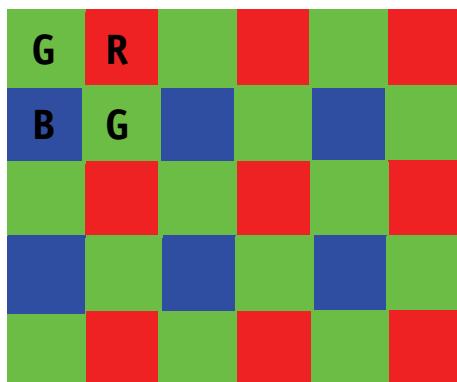
The use of the mirror function with color cameras and image output in RAW format has implications on the BAYER-ordering of the colors.



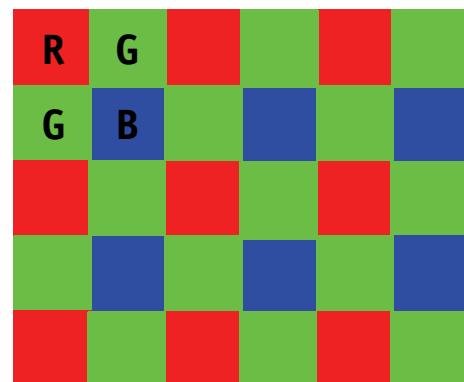
Mirror OFF: R-G-G-B for Pike 145C



Mirror ON: G-R-B-G Pike 145 C



Mirror OFF: G-R-B-G for all other Pikes



Mirror ON: R-G-G-B for all other Pikes

Figure 78: Mirror and Bayer order

**Note**

During switchover one image may be temporarily corrupted.



## Shading correction

Shading correction is used to compensate for non-homogeneities caused by lighting or optical characteristics within specified ranges.

To correct a frame, a multiplier from 1...2 is calculated for each pixel in 1/256 steps: this allows for shading to be compensated by up to 50%.

Besides generating shading data off-line and downloading it to the camera, the camera allows correction data to be generated automatically in the camera itself.

**Note**



- Shading correction does not support the mirror function.
- If you use shading correction, don't change the mirror function.
- Due to binning and sub-sampling in the Format\_7 modes read the following hints to build shading image in Format\_7 modes.

### Building shading image in Format\_7 modes

**horizontal** Binning/sub-sampling is always done after shading correction. Shading is always done on full horizontal resolution. Therefore shading image has always to be built in **full horizontal resolution**.

**vertical** Binning/sub-sampling is done in the sensor, before shading correction. Therefore shading image has to be built in the **correct vertical resolution**.

**Note**



**Build shading image** always with the **full horizontal resolution** (0 x horizontal binning / 0 x horizontal sub-sampling), but with the **desired vertical binning/sub-sampling**.

#### First example

4 x horizontal binning, 2 x vertical binning  
⇒ build shading image with 0 x horizontal binning and 2 x vertical binning

#### Second example

2 out of 16 horizontal sub-sampling, 2 out of 8 vertical sub-sampling  
⇒ build shading image with 0 x horizontal binning and 2 out of 8 vertical sub-sampling

## How to store shading image

There are two storing possibilities:

- After generating the shading image in the camera, it can be uploaded to the host computer for nonvolatile storage purposes.
- The shading image can be stored in the camera itself.

The following pictures describe the process of automatic generation of correction data (PIKE F-032C). Surface plots and histograms were created using the **ImageJ** program.

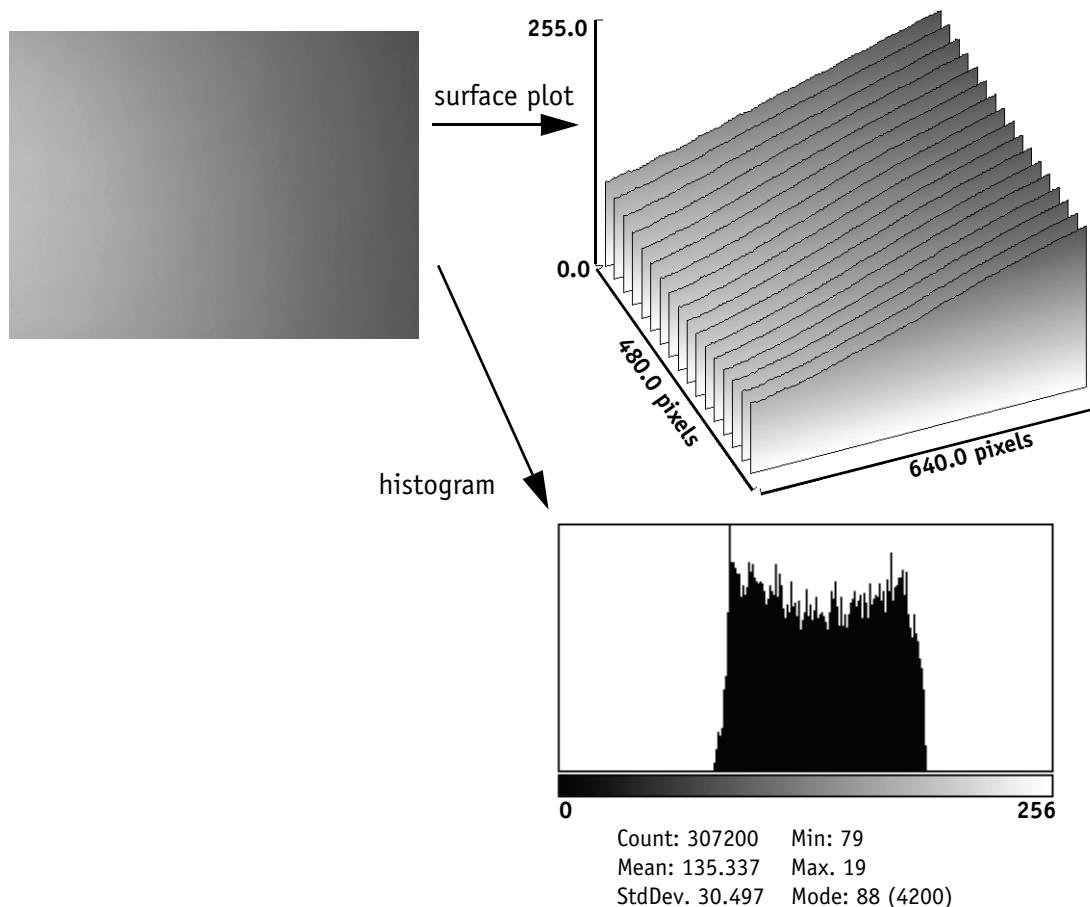


Figure 79: Shading correction: Source image with non-uniform illumination

- On the left you see the source image with non-uniform illumination.
- The surface plot on the right clearly shows a gradient of the brightness (0: brightest → 255: darkest pixels).
- The histogram shows a wide band of gray values.

By defocusing the lens, high-frequency image data is removed from the source image, therefore its not included in the shading image.

## Automatic generation of correction data

### Requirements

Shading correction compensates for non-homogeneities by giving all pixels the same gray value as the brightest pixel. This means that only the background must be visible and the brightest pixel has a gray value of less than 255 when automatic generation of shading data is started.

It may be necessary to use a neutral white reference, e.g. a piece of paper, instead of the real image.

### Algorithm

After the start of automatic generation, the camera pulls in the number of frames set in the GRAB\_COUNT register. Recommended values are 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128 or 256. An arithmetic mean value is calculated from them (to reduce noise).

After this, a search is made for the brightest pixel in the mean value frame. The brightest pixel(s) remain unchanged. A factor is then calculated for each pixel to be multiplied by, giving it the gray value of the brightest pixel.

All of these multipliers are saved in a **shading reference image**. The time required for this process depends on the number of frames to be calculated and on the resolution of the image.

Correction alone can compensate for shading by up to 50% and relies on full resolution data to minimize the generation of missing codes.

How to proceed:

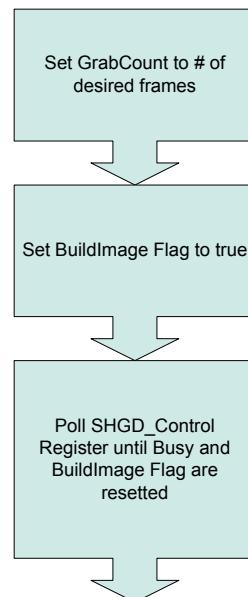


Figure 80: Automatic generation of a shading image

**Note**



**Configuration and storing non-volatile**

To configure this feature in an advanced register: See [Table 153: Advanced register: Shading](#) on page 330.

To store shading image data into **non-volatile memory**: See [Chapter Non-volatile memory operations](#) on page 331.

**Note**



- The SHDG\_CTRL register should not be queried at very short intervals. This is because each query delays the generation of the shading image. An optimal interval time is 500 ms.

**Note**



- The calculation of shading data is always carried out at the current resolution setting. If the AOI is later larger than the window in which correction data was calculated, none of the pixels lying outside are corrected.
- For Format\_7 mode, it is advisable to generate the shading image in the largest displayable frame format. This ensures that any smaller AOIs are completely covered by the shading correction.
- The automatic generation of shading data can also be enabled when image capture is already running. The camera then pauses the running image capture for the time needed for generation and resumes after generation is completed.
- Shading correction can be combined with the image mirror and gamma functionality.
- Changing binning modes involves the generation of new shading reference images due to a change in the image size.

After the lens has been focused again the image below will be seen, but now with a considerably more uniform gradient.

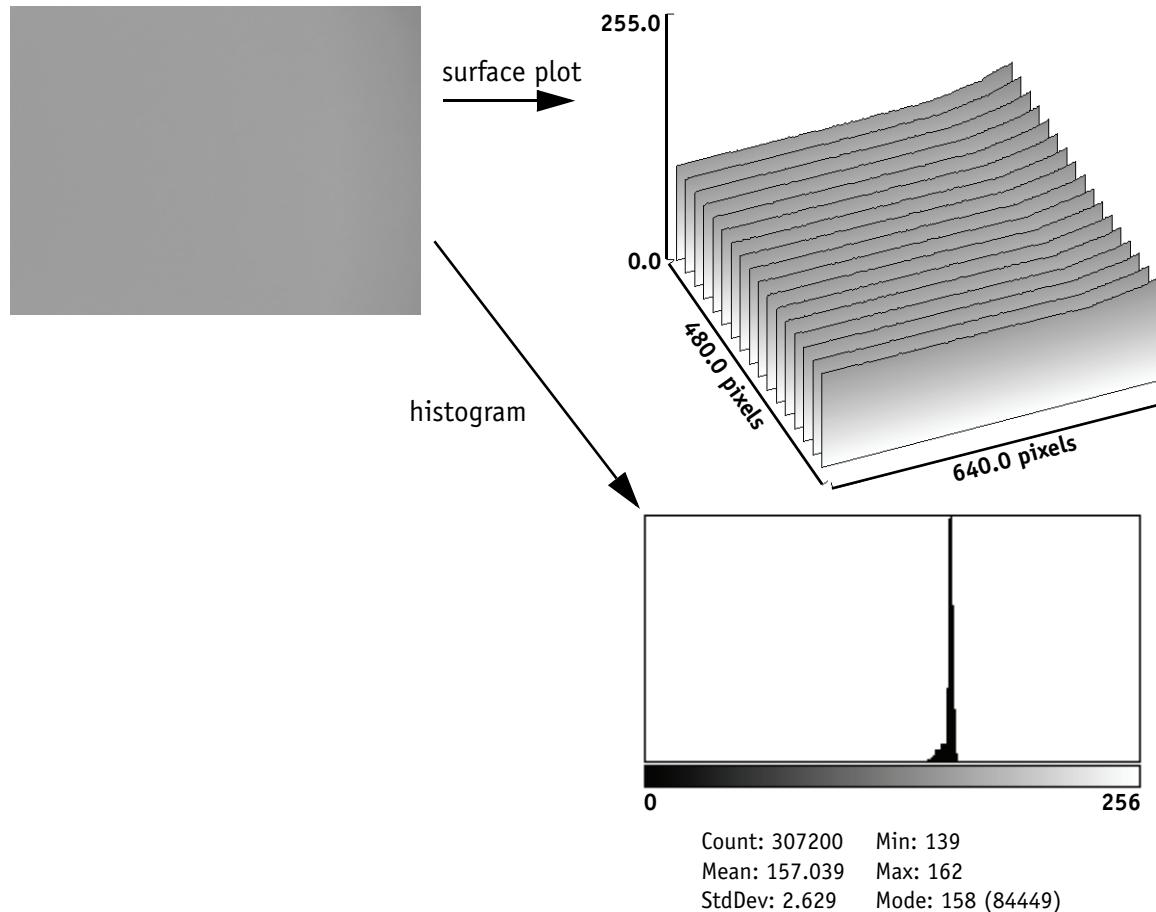


Figure 81: Example of shaded image

- On the left you see the image after shading correction.
- The surface plot on the right clearly shows nearly no more gradient of the brightness (0: brightest → 255: darkest pixels). The remaining gradient is related to the fact that the source image is lower than 50% on the right hand side.
- The histogram shows a peak with very few different gray values.

## Loading a shading image out of the camera

GPDATA\_BUFFER is used to load a shading image out of the camera. Because the size of a shading image is larger than GPDATA\_BUFFER, input must be handled in several steps:

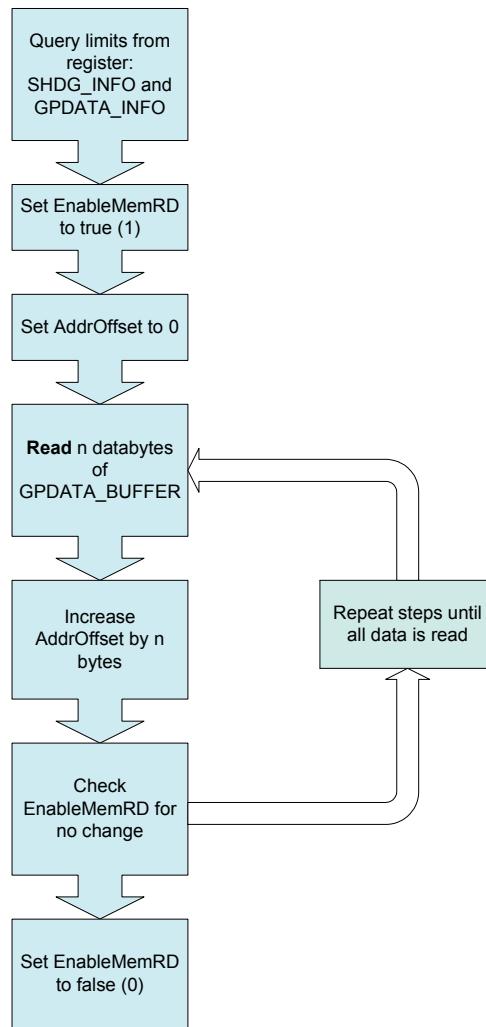


Figure 82: Uploading shading image to host

### Note



### Configuration

- To configure this feature in an advanced register: See [Table 153: Advanced register: Shading](#) on page 330.
- For information on GPDATA\_BUFFER: See Chapter [GPDATA\\_BUFFER](#) on page 364.

## Loading a shading image into the camera

GPDATA\_BUFFER is used to load a shading image into the camera. Because the size of a shading image is larger than GPDATA\_BUFFER, input must be handled in several steps (see also Chapter [Reading or writing shading image from/into the camera](#) on page 331):

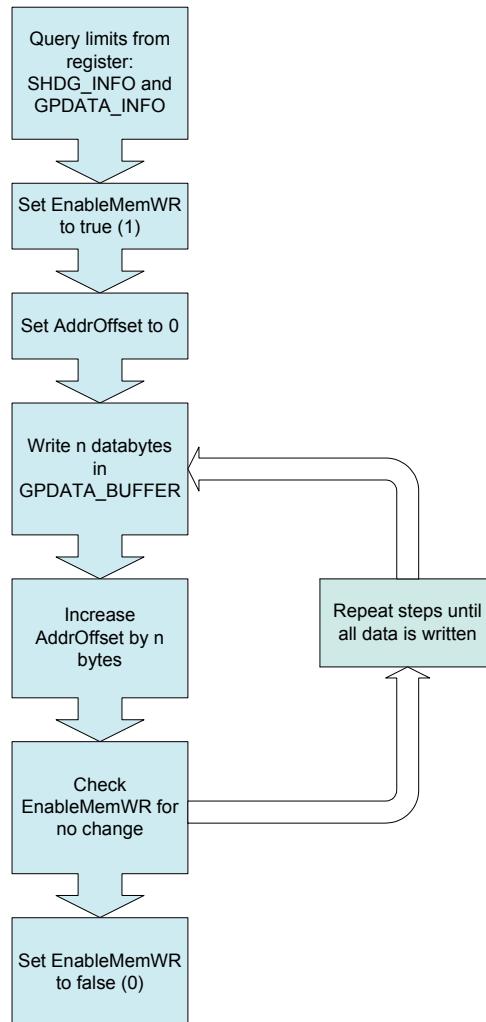


Figure 83: Loading the shading reference image

### Note



### Configuration

- To configure this feature in an advanced register: See [Table 153: Advanced register: Shading](#) on page 330.
- For information on GPDATA\_BUFFER: See Chapter [GPDATA\\_BUFFER](#) on page 364.

## Look-up table (LUT) and gamma function

The AVT Pike camera provides **sixteen (0-15)** user-defined look-up tables (LUT). The use of one LUT allows any function (in the form Output = F(Input)) to be stored in the camera's RAM and to be applied on the individual pixels of an image at run-time.

The address lines of the RAM are connected to the incoming digital data, these in turn point to the values of functions which are calculated offline, e.g. with a spreadsheet program.

This function needs to be loaded into the camera's RAM before use.

One example of using an LUT is the gamma LUT:

There are two gamma LUTs (gamma=0.7 and gamma=0.45)

$\text{Output} = (\text{Input})^{0.7}$  and  $\text{Output} = (\text{Input})^{0.45}$

These two gamma LUTs are used with all Pike models.

Gamma is known as compensation for the nonlinear brightness response of many displays e.g. CRT monitors. The look-up table converts the incoming **14 bit** from the digitizer to outgoing up to **14 bit**.

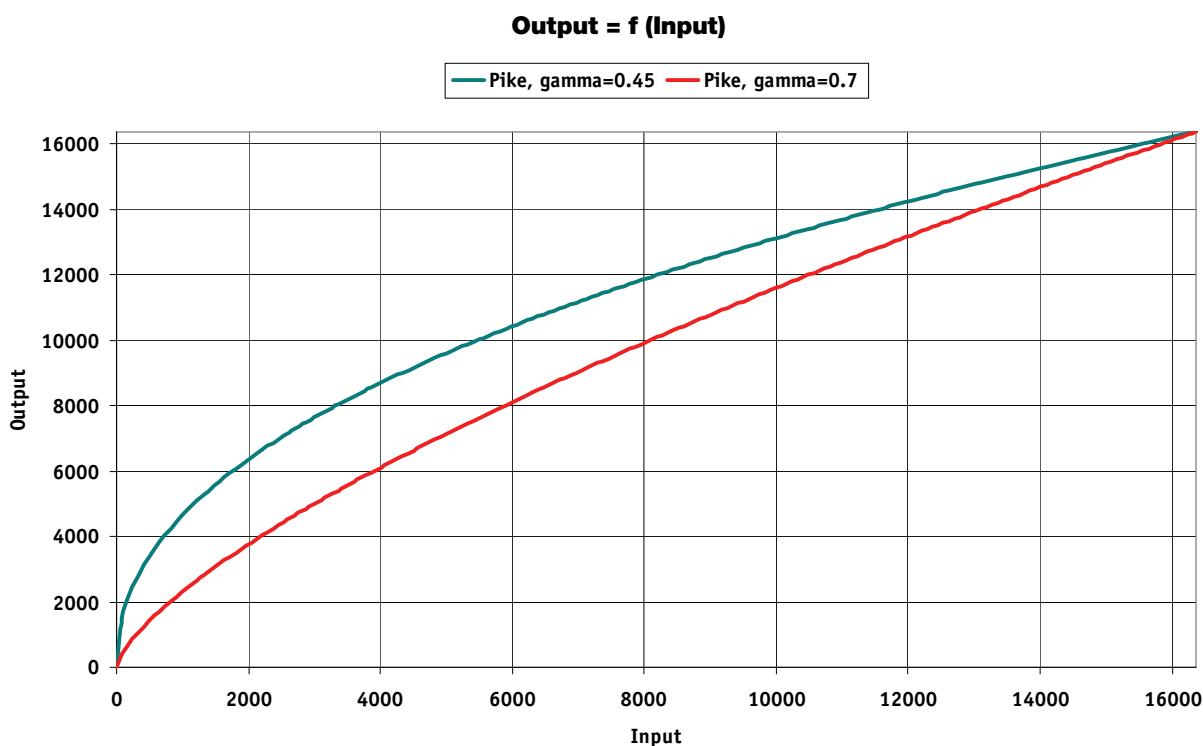


Figure 84: LUTs with gamma=0.45, gamma=0.7

**Note**



- The input value is the **14-bit** value from the digitizer.
- The two gamma LUTs use LUT 14 and 15.
- Gamma 1 ( $\text{gamma}=0.7$ ) switches on LUT 14, gamma 2 ( $\text{gamma}=0.45$ ) switches on LUT 15. After overriding LUT 14 and 15 with a user defined content, gamma functionality is no longer available until the next full initialization of the camera.
- LUT content is volatile if you do not use the user profiles to save the LUT.

## Loading an LUT into the camera

Loading the LUT is carried out through the data exchange buffer called GDATA\_BUFFER. As this buffer can hold a maximum of 2 kB, and a complete LUT at **16384 x 14 bit** is **28 kByte**, programming can not take place in a one block write step because the size of an LUT is larger than GDATA\_BUFFER. Therefore input must be handled in several steps. The flow diagram below shows the sequence required to load data into the camera.

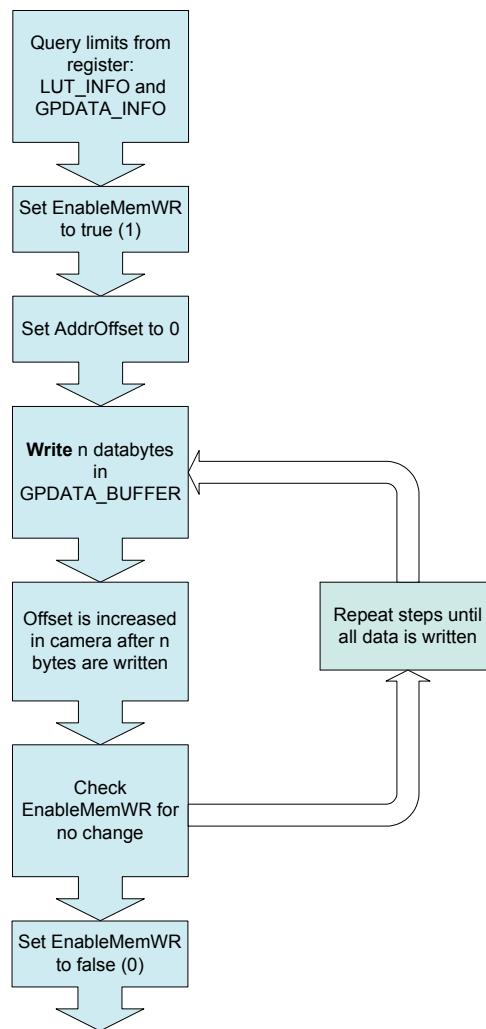


Figure 85: Loading an LUT

### Note



### Configuration

- To configure this feature in an advanced register: See [Table 152: Advanced register: LUT](#) on page 327.
- For information on GDATA\_BUFFER: See Chapter [GDATA\\_BUFFER](#) on page 364.

## Binning (only Pike b/w models)

### 2 x / 4 x / 8 x binning

**Definition** **Binning** is the process of combining neighboring pixels while being read out from the CCD chip.

**Note**



- Only **Pike b/w cameras** have this feature.
- Binning does not change offset, brightness or black-level.

Binning is used primarily for 3 reasons:

- a reduction in the number of pixels and thus the amount of data while retaining the original image area angle
- an increase in the frame rate (vertical binning only)
- a brighter image, also resulting in an improvement in the signal-to-noise ratio of the image

**Signal-to-noise ratio (SNR)** and **signal-to-noise separation** specify the quality of a signal with regard to its reproduction of intensities. The value signifies how high the ratio of noise is in regard to the maximum achievable signal intensity.

The higher this value, the better the signal quality. The unit of measurement used is generally known as the decibel (dB), a logarithmic power level. 6 dB is the signal level at approximately a factor of 2.

However, the advantages of increasing signal quality are accompanied by a reduction in resolution.

**Only Format\_7** **Binning** is possible only in video Format\_7. The type of binning used depends on the video mode.

**Note**

Changing binning modes involves the generation of new shading reference images due to a change in the image size.



**Types** In general, we distinguish between the following types of binning (H=horizontal, V=vertical):

- 2 x H-binning
- 2 x V-binning
- 4 x H-binning
- 4 x V-binning
- 8 x H-binning
- 8 x V-binning

and the full binning modes:

- 2 x full binning (a combination of 2 x H-binning and 2 x V-binning)
- 4 x full binning (a combination of 4 x H-binning and 4 x V-binning)
- 8 x full binning (a combination of 8 x H-binning and 8 x V-binning)

## Vertical binning

**Vertical binning** increases the light sensitivity of the camera by a factor of two (4 or 8) by adding together the values of two (4 or 8) adjoining vertical pixels output as a single pixel. This is done directly in the horizontal shift register of the sensor.

**Format\_7 Mode\_2** By default and without further remapping use **Format\_7 Mode\_2** for 2 x vertical binning.

This reduces vertical resolution, depending on the model.

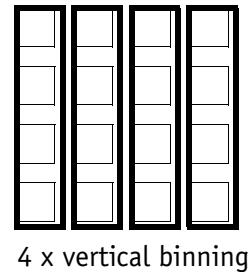
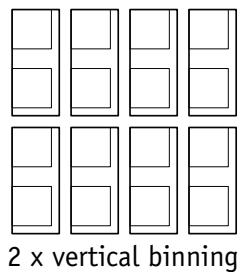


Figure 86: 2 x vertical binning and 4 x vertical binning

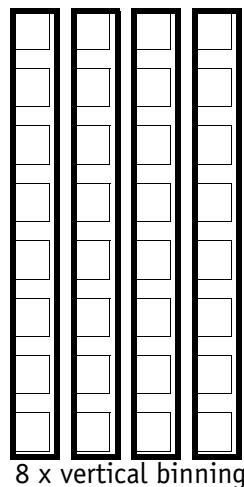


Figure 87: 8 x vertical binning

**Note**  **Vertical resolution** is reduced, but **signal-to noise ratio** (SNR) is increased by about 3, 6 or 9 dB (2 x, 4 x or 8 x binning).

**Note**  If **vertical binning** is activated the image may appear to be over-exposed and may require correction.

**Note**  The image appears **vertically** compressed in this mode and no longer exhibits a true aspect ratio.

## Horizontal binning

In horizontal binning adjacent horizontal pixels in a line are combined digitally in the FPGA of the camera without accumulating the black level:

**2 x horizontal binning:** 2 pixel signals from 2 horizontal neighboring pixels are combined.

**4 x horizontal binning:** 4 pixel signals from 4 horizontal neighboring pixels are combined.

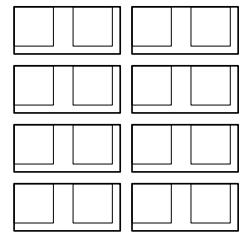
**8 x horizontal binning:** 8 pixel signals from 8 horizontal neighboring pixels are combined.

**Light sensitivity** This means that in horizontal binning the **light sensitivity** of the camera is also increased by a factor of two (**6 dB**), 4 (**12 dB**) or 8 (**18 dB**). Signal-to-noise separation improves by approx. 3, 6 or 9 dB.

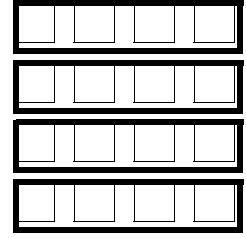
**Horizontal resolution**

Horizontal resolution is lowered, depending on the model.

**Format\_7 Mode\_1** By default and without further remapping use **Format\_7 Mode\_1** for 2 x horizontal binning.

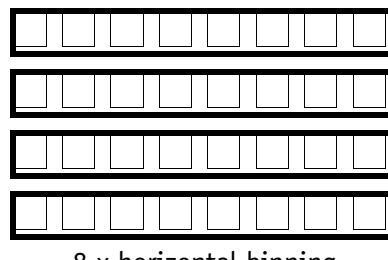


2 x horizontal binning



4 x horizontal binning

Figure 88: 2 x horizontal binning and 4 x horizontal binning



8 x horizontal binning

Figure 89: 8 x horizontal binning

**Note**



The image appears **horizontally** compressed in this mode and does no longer show true aspect ratio.

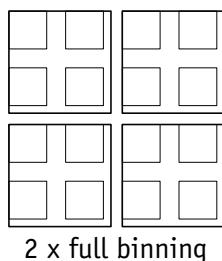
If **horizontal binning** is activated the image may appear to be over-exposed and must eventually be corrected.

## 2 x full binning/4 x full binning/8 x full binning

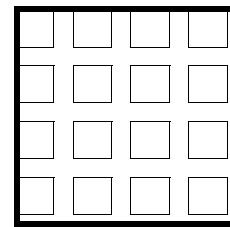
If horizontal and vertical binning are combined, every 4 (16 or 64) pixels are consolidated into a single pixel. At first two (4 or 8) vertical pixels are put together and then combined horizontally.

This increases light sensitivity by a total of a factor of 4 (16 or 64) and at the same time signal-to-noise separation is improved by about 6 (12 or 18) dB. Resolution is reduced, depending on the model.

By default and without further remapping use **Format\_7 Mode\_3** for 2 x full binning.

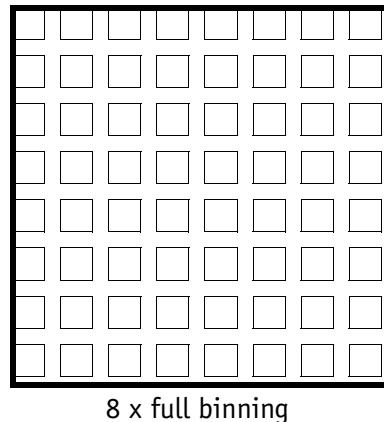


2 x full binning



4 x full binning

Figure 90: 2 x and 4 x full binning



8 x full binning

Figure 91: 8 x full binning

## Sub-sampling (PIKE b/w and color)

### What is sub-sampling?

**Definition** Sub-sampling is the process of skipping neighboring pixels (with the same color) while being read out from the CCD chip.

### Which PIKE models have sub-sampling?

All PIKE models, both color and b/w, have this feature.

### Description of sub-sampling

Sub-sampling is used primarily for the following reason:

- A reduction in the number of pixels and thus the amount of data while retaining the original image area angle and image brightness

Similar to binning mode the cameras support horizontal, vertical and h+v sub-sampling mode.

**Format\_7 Mode\_4** By default and without further remapping use **Format\_7 Mode\_4** for

- b/w cameras: 2 out of 4 horizontal sub-sampling
- color cameras: 2 out of 4 horizontal sub-sampling

The different sub-sampling patterns are shown below.

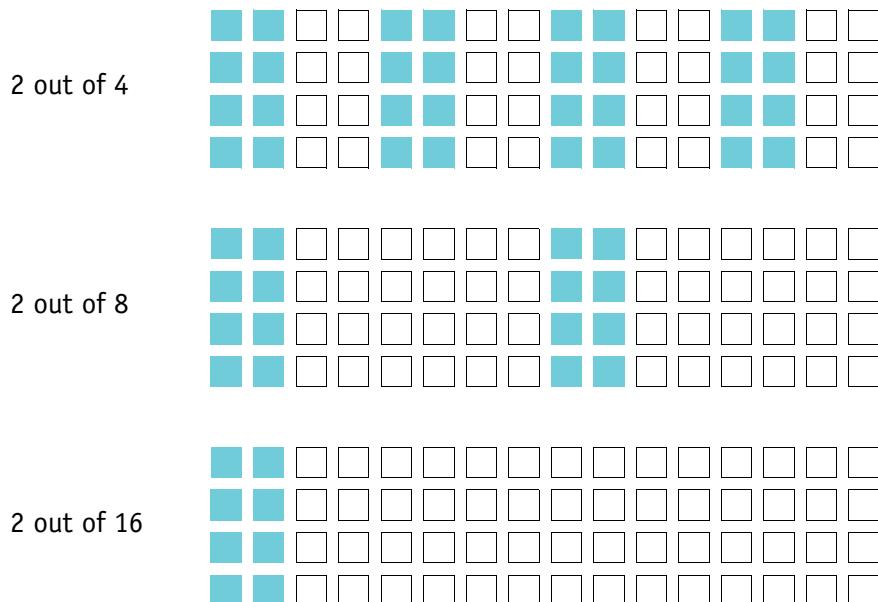


Figure 92: Horizontal sub-sampling (**b/w**)

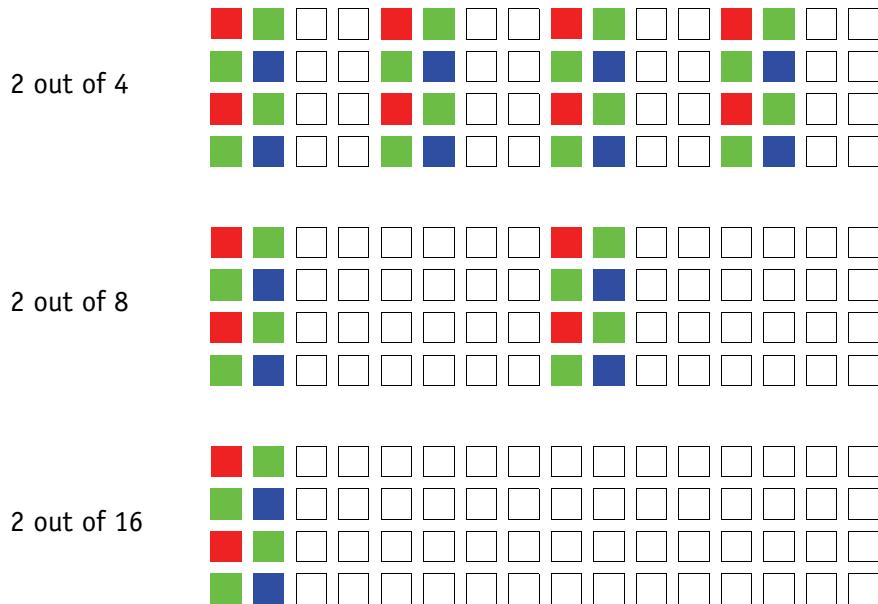


Figure 93: Horizontal sub-sampling (**color**)

Note

The image appears **horizontally compressed** in this mode and no longer exhibits a true aspect ratio.



**Format\_7 Mode\_5** By default and without further remapping use **Format\_7 Mode\_5** for

- **b/w** cameras: 2 out of 4 vertical sub-sampling
- **color** cameras: 2 out of 4 vertical sub-sampling

The different sub-sampling patterns are shown below.

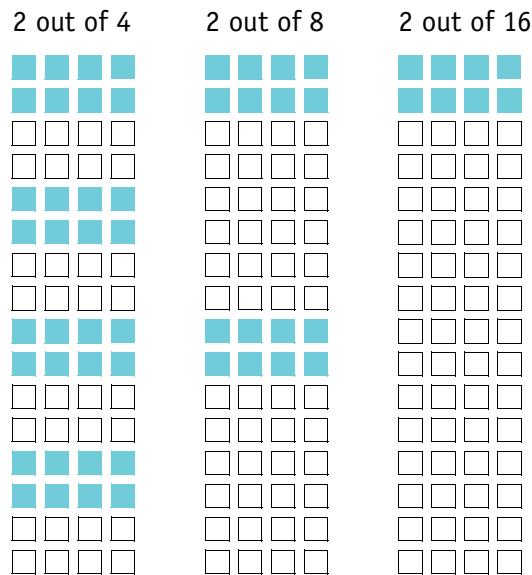


Figure 94: Vertical sub-sampling (**b/w**)

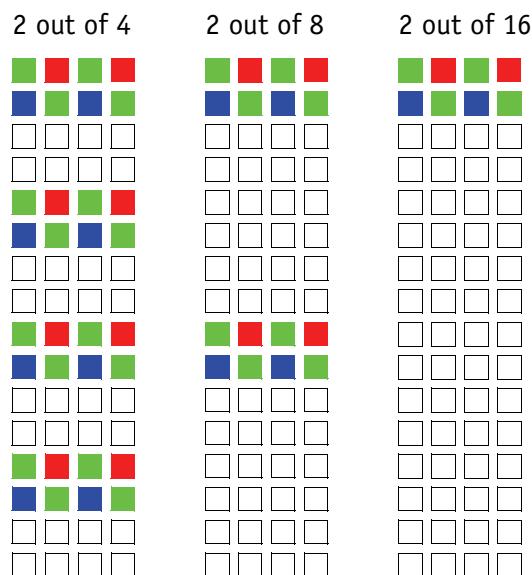


Figure 95: Vertical sub-sampling (**color**)

**Note**

The image appears vertically compressed in this mode and no longer exhibits a true aspect ratio.



**Format\_7 Mode\_6** By default and without further remapping use **Format\_7 Mode\_6** for 2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling

The different sub-sampling patterns are shown below.

2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling

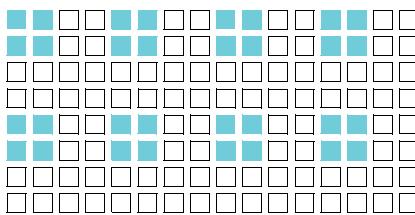


Figure 96: 2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling (b/w)

2 out of 8 H+V sub-sampling

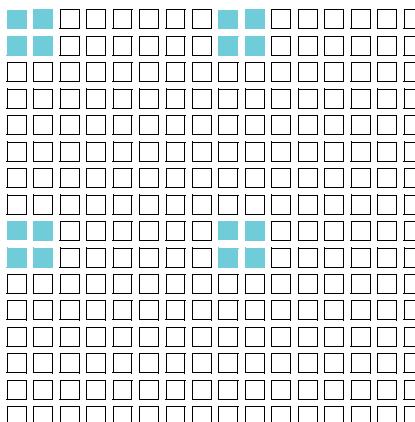


Figure 97: 2 out of 8 H+V sub-sampling (b/w)

2 out of 16 H+V sub-sampling

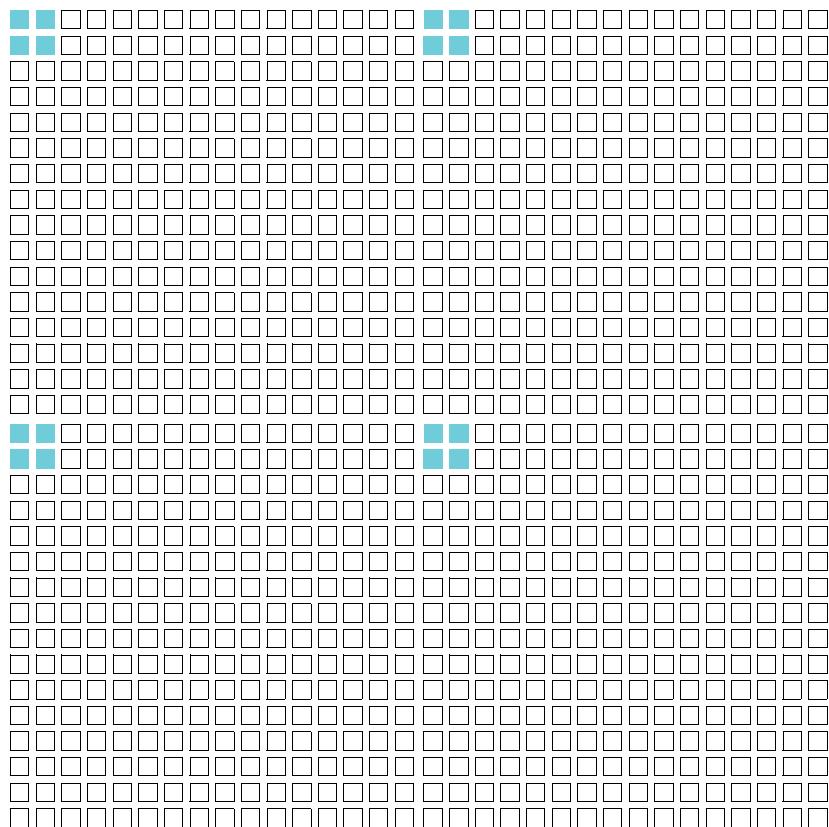


Figure 98: 2 out of 16 H+V sub-sampling (**b/w**)

2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling

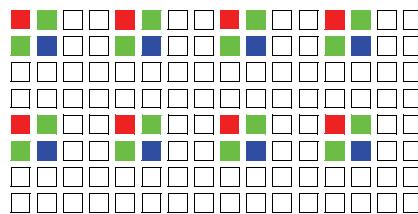


Figure 99: 2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling (**color**)

2 out of 8 H+V sub-sampling

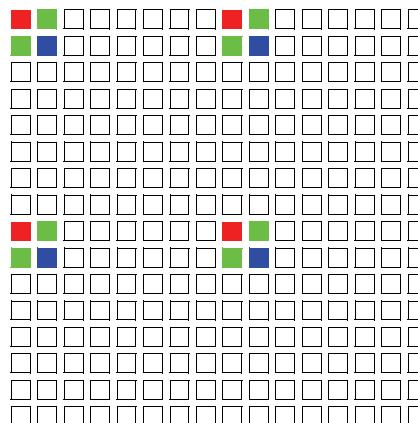


Figure 100: 2 out of 8 H+V sub-sampling (**color**)

2 out of 16 H+V sub-sampling

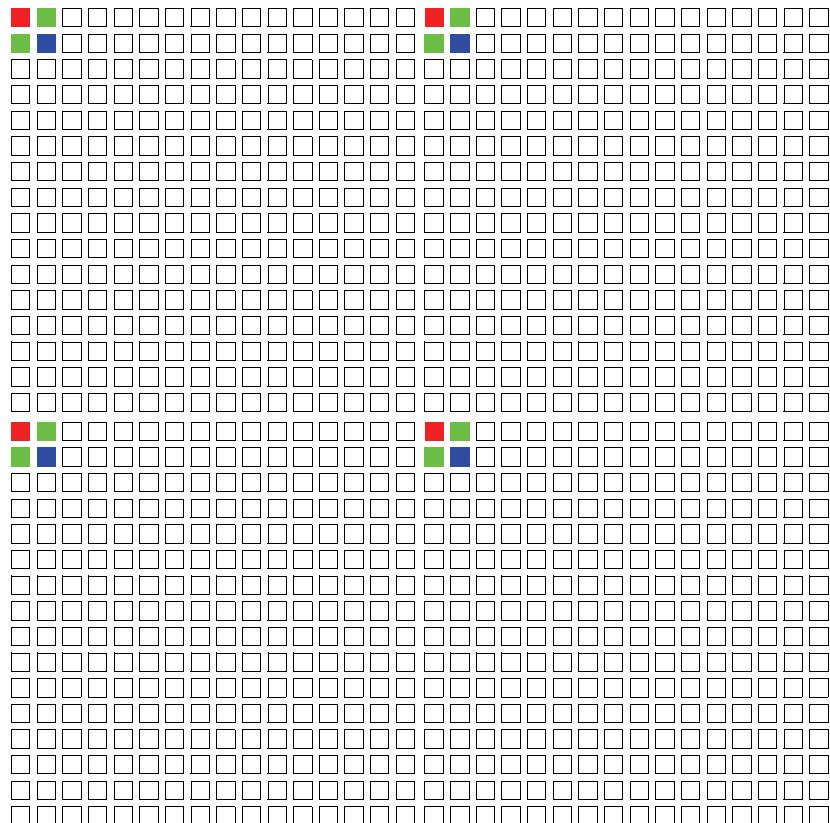


Figure 101: 2 out of 16 H+V sub-sampling (color)

**Note**

Changing sub-sampling modes involves the generation of new shading reference images due to a change in the image size.



## Binning and sub-sampling access

The binning and sub-sampling modes described in the last two chapters are only available as pure binning or pure sub-sampling modes. A combination of both is not possible.

As you can see there is a vast amount of possible combinations. But the number of available Format\_7 modes is limited and lower than the possible combinations.

Thus access to the binning and sub-sampling modes is implemented in the following way:

- **Format\_7 Mode\_0** is fixed and can not be changed
- A maximum of 7 individual AVT modes can be mapped to **Format\_7 Mode\_1 to Mode\_7**  
(see [Figure 102: Mapping of possible Format\\_7 modes to F7M1...F7M7 on page 172](#))
- Mappings can be stored via register (see Chapter [Format\\_7 mode mapping](#) on page 351) and are uploaded automatically into the camera on camera reset.
- The **default settings** (per factory) in the Format\_7 modes are listed in the following table

Format_7	PIKE monochrome cameras Format_7	PIKE color cameras Format_7
Mode_0	full resolution, no binning, no sub-sampling	full resolution, no sub-sampling
Mode_1	2 x <b>horizontal</b> binning	---
Mode_2	2 x <b>vertical</b> binning	---
Mode_3	2 x <b>full</b> binning	---
Mode_4	2 out of 4 <b>horizontal</b> sub-sampling	2 out of 4 <b>horizontal</b> sub-sampling
Mode_5	2 out of 4 <b>vertical</b> sub-sampling	2 out of 4 <b>vertical</b> sub-sampling
Mode_6	2 out of 4 <b>full</b> sub-sampling	2 out of 4 <b>full</b> sub-sampling

Table 45: Default Format\_7 binning and sub-sampling modes (per factory)

Note



- A **combination** of binning and sub-sampling modes is **not possible**.  
Use either pure binning or pure sub-sampling modes.
- The Format\_ID numbers 0...31 in the binning / sub-sampling list do **not** correspond to any of the Format\_7 modes.

F7 modes according to IIDC 1394		Format_ID (see p351)	AVT modes	
F7M0 (no change)		0	0 x horizontal	
F7M1		1	2 x horizontal	0 x vertical
F7M2		2	4 x horizontal	
F7M3		3	8 x horizontal	
F7M4		4	0 x horizontal	2 x vertical
F7M5		5	2 x horizontal	
F7M6		6	4 x horizontal	
F7M7		7	8 x horizontal	
mapping of each of 32 modes to F7M1..F7M7 possible		8	0 x horizontal	4 x vertical
		9	2 x horizontal	
		10	4 x horizontal	
		11	8 x horizontal	
		12	0 x horizontal	8 x vertical
		13	2 x horizontal	
		14	4 x horizontal	
		15	8 x horizontal	
		16	---	2 out of 2 vertical
		17	2 out of 4 horizontal	
		18	2 out of 8 horizontal	
		19	2 out of 16 horizontal	
		20	2 out of 2 horizontal	2 out of 4 vertical
		21	2 out of 4 horizontal	
		22	2 out of 8 horizontal	
		23	2 out of 16 horizontal	
		24	2 out of 2 horizontal	2 out of 8 vertical
		25	2 out of 4 horizontal	
		26	2 out of 8 horizontal	
		27	2 out of 16 horizontal	
		28	2 out of 2 horizontal	2 out of 16 vertical
		29	2 out of 4 horizontal	
		30	2 out of 8 horizontal	
		31	2 out of 16 horizontal	

Figure 102: Mapping of possible Format\_7 modes to F7M1...F7M7

**Note****Configuration**

To configure this feature in an advanced register: See [Table 175: Advanced register: Format\\_7 mode mapping](#) on page 351.

## Quick parameter change timing modes

### Why new timing modes?

Former timing of the PIKE cameras showed the same behavior as MARLIN cameras:

- Frame rate or transfer rate is always constant (precondition: shutter < transfer time)
- The delay from shutter update until the change takes place: up to 3 frames. [Figure 103: Former standard timing](#) on page 173 demonstrates this behavior. It shows that the camera receives a shutter update command while the sensor is currently integrating (Sync is low) with shutter setting 400. The camera continues to integrate and this image is output with the next FVal. The shutter change command becomes effective with the next falling edge of sync and finally the image taken with shutter 200 is output with a considerable delay.
- Parameters that are sent to the camera faster than the max. frame rate per second are stored in a FIFO and are activated in consecutive images.

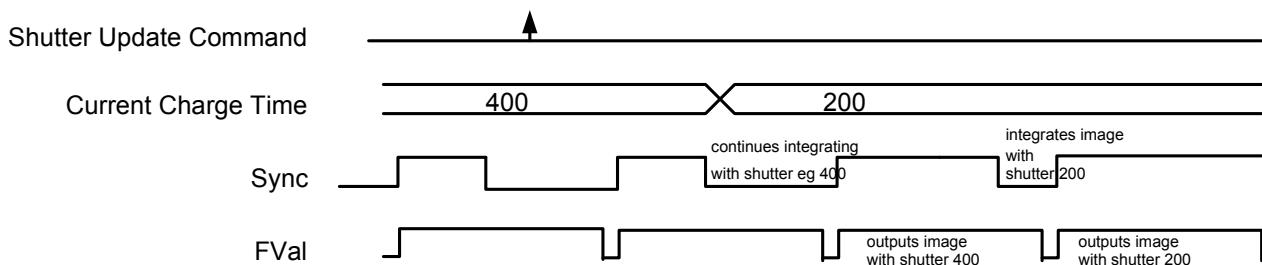


Figure 103: Former standard timing

Principally a PIKE camera is not able to recognize how many parameter the user will change. Due to the fact that communication between host and camera is asynchronous, it may happen that one part of parameter changes is done in image n+1 and the other part is done in image n+2.

To optimize the transfer of parameter changes there is a new timing mode called **Quick Format Change Mode**, which effectively resets the current shutter.

Therefore you can choose between the following update timing modes:

- **Standard Parameter Update Timing** (slightly modified from previous PIKE cameras)
- New: **Quick Format Change Mode**

In the following you find a short description of both timing modes:

### **Standard Parameter Update Timing**

The **Standard Parameter Update Timing** keeps the frame rate constant and does not create any gaps between two image transfers via bus (precondition: exposure (shutter) time must be smaller than transfer time).

- Frame rate / transfer rate is always constant (if shutter time < transfer time)
- Delay from shutter update until change takes place is always 2 frames (delay from update command reception by FPGA and not by microcontroller)
- Parameters sent to the camera faster than max. frame rate are no longer stored in a FIFO. The last sent parameter will be activated for the next image. All others will be dropped. This ensures that the last image is shot with the last shutter setting.

### **New: Quick Format Change Mode (QFCM)**

The **Quick Format Change Mode** creates gaps between two images. Current exposure is interrupted and the new exposure is started immediately with new parameters if during exposure (integration/shutter) a new shutter command is received.

- Frame rate / transfer rate can be *interrupted*. This is shown in the diagram below whenever FVal goes low after a reception of a new shutter command while Sync was low.
- Shutter will be interrupted, if the update command is received while camera integrates
- Delay from shutter update until change takes place is always 1 frame (the delay is calculated from update command reception by FPGA and not by microcontroller)

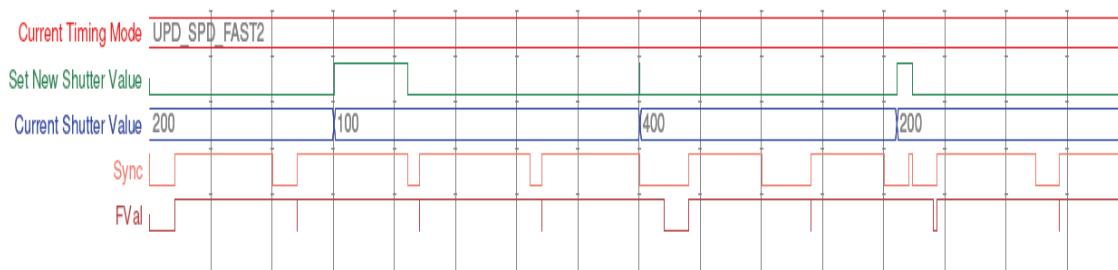


Figure 104: Quick Format Change Mode

## How to transfer parameters to the camera

The following 3 variants of transferring the parameters are available with the firmware 3.x:

Transfer mode	Advantage ☺	Disadvantage ☹
<b>Encapsulated Update (begin/end)</b>	☺ easy to use (standard quad writes in camera register is possible)	☹ one write access per register access
<b>Parameter-List Update</b>	☺ only one write access for all parameters ☺ fastest host→camera transfer (from 5 parameters on faster than encapsulated mode) ☺ handling of parameter list easy	☹ not so easy to use (block writes) ☹ max. 64 entries for parameter list
<b>Standard Update (I IDC)</b>	☺ compliant with IIDC V1.31	☹ non deterministic change of parameters

Table 46: Comparison of 3 transfer modes

In the following you find a short description of each variant:

### Encapsulated Update (begin/end)

The **Encapsulated Update (begin/end)** has the following characteristics:

- Host will set a parameter update begin flag in the camera (UpdActive Field in Register 0xF1000570, see [Table 170: Advanced register: Update timing modes](#) on page 346)
- Host will send several parameters to the camera and then signalize end by resetting the flag
- All parameters will become active for the same next image
- Dependent on timing mode, the camera
  - (standard Update): uses the previous parameters until the update flag (UpdActive Field in Register 0xF1000570) is reset
  - (**Quick Format Change Mode**): Camera stops and waits until the update flag (UpdActive Field in Register 0xF1000570) is reset.

In the **Encapsulated Update (begin/end)** the exact sequence is:

1. Parameter update begin (advanced feature register)
2. Standard IIDC register update (1..N register) (standard feature register)
3. Parameter update end (advanced feature register)

Camera timing behavior is like this:

Fast Parameter Update Timing	Quick Format Change Mode
After the parameter update stop command all changed parameters are valid for the available next image. Frame rate is constant.	After the parameter update start command a current transfer is interrupted. A started exposure will be interrupted until the next parameter update stop command. Exposure of the next image with new parameters is started.  There may be a gap between two succeeding images but images are always transmitted completely.

Table 47: **Encapsulated Update (begin/end)**: comparison of standard timing and fast timing 2

If after end of time-out (10 seconds after **Quick Format Change Mode**) no **parameter update end** is sent, all changes will become valid.

A new write event of **parameter update begin** starts time-out again.

### Parameter-List Update

In the **Parameter-List Update** mode a complete list with IIDC addresses and values of up to 64 parameters is sent to the camera.

- Host sends a list with parameters to the camera (advanced feature space)
- Microcontroller processes that list
- All parameters will become active for the same image
- Dependent on timing mode, the camera will:
  - **Standard Format Change Mode**: use the previous parameters until the new parameter set is copied to the FPGA
  - **Quick Format Change Mode (QFCM)**: waits until all parameters have been copied to the FPGA and may interrupt an already started integration for a new integration with the new settings

Example of parameter list:

Address	Value
0xF0F0081C	0x80000100
0xF0F00820	0x800000ac
0xF0F00818	0x82000001
...	...

Table 48: Example of parameter list

The exact sequence is:

Block-write (this needs to be a functionality of the underlying software stack (e.g. AVT FirePackage). It may not be available for third party IIDC software stacks.) of list to advanced feature address

Camera timing behavior is like this:

Fast Parameter Update Timing	Quick Format Change Mode (QFCM)
After block write command is processed in the camera all changed parameters are valid for the available next image. Frame rate is constant.	<p>After transfer of the parameter list via block write a current transfer will be finished. A started exposure will be interrupted until the microcontroller has processed the list and copied it into the FPGA. Exposure of the next image with new parameters is started.</p> <p>There may be a gap between two images.</p>

Table 49: **Parameter-List Update:** comparison of standard timing and **QFCM**

### Standard Update (I IDC)

In the **Standard Update (I IDC)** mode single parameter are sent to the camera.

- **Standard Update (I IDC)** shows same behavior as MARLIN
- Parameter will be sent from host to camera and will be activated as soon as possible without interruption of the transfer
- If the host updates more than one parameter (without block write) the parameters may become active in different images
- **Standard Update (I IDC)** can be combined with the new parameter update timing modes

Camera timing behavior is like this:

Fast Parameter Update Timing	Quick Format Change Mode (QFCM)
After sending a new parameter value, the changed parameter value is valid for the available next image. Frame rate is constant.	<p>After sending a new parameter value, the changed parameter value is valid for the available next image.</p> <p>A running exposure will be interrupted and the image is dropped.</p> <p>There may be a gap between two consecutive image transfers.</p>

Table 50: **Standard Update (I IDC):** comparison of **Standard Format Change Mode** and **QFCM**

## Packed 12-Bit Mode

All Pike cameras have the so-called **Packed 12-Bit Mode**. This means: two 12-bit pixel values are packed into 3 bytes instead of 4 bytes.

B/w cameras	Color cameras
<b>Packed 12-Bit MONO</b> camera mode SmartView: MON012	<b>Packed 12-Bit RAW</b> camera mode SmartView: RAW12
Mono and raw mode have the same implementation.	

Table 51: **Packed 12-Bit Mode**

**Note**

For data block packet format see [Table 36: Packed 12-Bit Mode \(mono and raw\) Y12 format](#) on page 128.



For data structure see [Table 37: Data structure of Packed 12-Bit Mode \(mono and raw\)](#) on page 129.

The color codings are implemented via Vendor Unique Color\_Coding according to IIDC V1.31: COLOR\_CODING\_INQ @ 024h...033h, IDs=128-255)

See [Table 141: Format\\_7 control and status register](#) on page 312.

Mode	Color_Coding	ID
<b>Packed 12-Bit MONO</b>	ECCID_MON012	ID=132
<b>Packed 12-Bit RAW</b>	ECCID_RAW12	ID=136

Table 52: **Packed 12-Bit Mode:** color coding

## High SNR mode (High Signal Noise Ratio)

Note	Configuration
	To configure this feature in an advanced register: See <a href="#">Table 167: Advanced register: High Signal Noise Ratio (HSNR)</a> on page 343.

In this mode the camera grabs and averages a set number of images and outputs one image with the same bit depth and the same brightness. This means that the camera will output an 8-bit averaged image when an 8-bit image format is selected.

Because of the fact that normally uncorrelated (photon-, amplifier-) noise dominates over correlated noise (fixed pattern noise), adding two images will double (6 dB) the gray levels but only increase the noise levels by  $\sqrt{2}$  (3 dB).

This enhances both the dynamic range as well as the signal-to-noise ratio. Consequently adding 256 8-bit images will lead to a potential signal-to-noise enhancement of 24 dB or a resulting bit depth of 16 bit.

Note	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The averaged image is output at a lower frame rate roughly equivalent to <math>\text{fps\_old}/N</math>, where N is the number of images averaged. In fact, due to camera internal conditions, and according to which format and mode settings are in use, it can vary slightly to be closer sometimes to <math>1/((N/\text{fps\_old}) + T_{\text{shutter}})</math>. It's impractical to express in a formula or tables, across all camera models and modes. But these notes should be sufficient to help each user determine that the camera behaves as described.</li><li>The camera must be in idle before turning this feature on.</li><li>The potential SNR enhancement may be lower when using more than 8-bit original bit depth.</li><li>Select 16-bit image format in order to take advantage of the full potential SNR and DNR (<b>DyNamic Range</b>) enhancements.</li></ul>

## Frame memory and deferred image transport

An image is normally captured and transported in consecutive steps. The image is taken, read out from the sensor, digitized and sent over the 1394 bus.

### Deferred image transport

As all Pike cameras are equipped with built-in image memory, this order of events can be paused or delayed by using the **deferred image transport** feature.

Pike cameras are equipped with 64 MB of RAM (Pike F-1100/1600: 256 MB). The table below shows how many frames can be stored by each model. The memory operates according to the FIFO (first in, first out) principle. This makes addressing for individual images unnecessary.

Model	Memory size
PIKE F-032B/C	
PIKE F-032B/C fiber	105 frames
PIKE F-100B/C	
PIKE F-100B/C fiber	32 frames
PIKE F-145B/C	
PIKE F-145B/C fiber	22 frames
PIKE F-145B/C-15fps	
PIKE F-145B/C fiber-15fps	22 frames
PIKE F-210B/C	
PIKE F-210B/C fiber	15 frames
PIKE F-421B/C	
PIKE F-421B/C fiber	6 frames
PIKE F-505B/C	
PIKE F-505B/C fiber	5 frames
PIKE F-1100B/C	
PIKE F-1100B/C fiber	11 frames
PIKE F-1600B/C	
PIKE F-1600B/C fiber	7 frames

Table 53: FIFO memory size

**Deferred image transport** is especially useful for multi-camera applications:

Assuming several cameras acquire images concurrently. These are stored in the built-in image memory of every camera. Until this memory is full, the limiting factor of available bus bandwidth, DMA- or ISO-channel is overcome.

Image transfer is controlled from the host computer by addressing individual cameras one after the other and reading out the desired number of images.

#### Note



#### Configuration

To configure this feature in an advanced register: See [Table 155: Advanced register: Deferred image transport](#) on page 333.

## HoldImg mode

By setting the **HoldImg** flag, transport of the image over the 1394 bus is stopped completely. All captured images are stored in the internal **ImageFiFo**. The camera reports the maximum possible number of images in the **FiFoSize** variable.

#### Note



- Pay attention to the maximum number of images that can be stored in **FiFo**. If you capture more images than the number in **FiFoSize**, the oldest images are overwritten.
- The extra **SendImage** flag is set to **true** to import the images from the camera. The camera sends the number of images set in the **NumOfImages** parameter.
- If **NumOfImages** is **0**, all images stored in FIFO will be sent.
- If **NumOfImages** is not **0**, the corresponding number of images will be sent.
- If the **HoldImg** field is set to **false**, all images in **ImageFIFO** will be deleted. No images will be sent.
- The last image in the FiFo will be corrupted, when simultaneously used as input buffer while being read out. In this case read out one image less than max. buffer size.
- **NumOfImages** is incremented after an image was read out of the sensor and therefore stored into the onboard image FIFO.
- **NumOfImages** is decremented after the last isochronous packet of an image was handed over to the IEEE1394 chipset of the camera.

The following screenshot shows the sequence of commands needed to work with deferred mode.

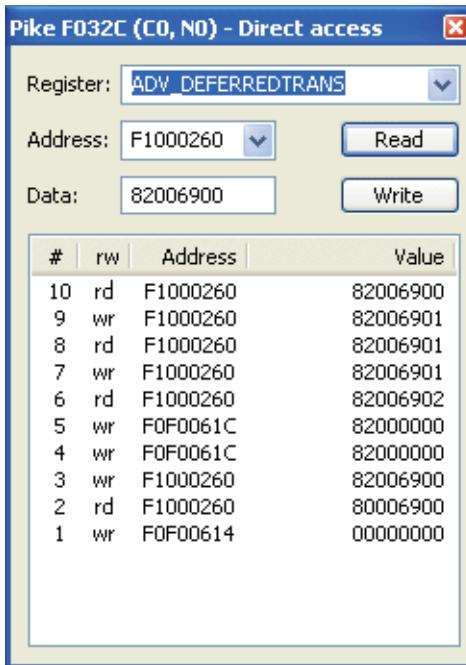


Figure 105: Example: Controlling deferred mode (SmartView - Direct Access; PIKE F-032C)

For a description of the commands see the following table:

#	rw	Address	Value	Description
10	rd	F1000260	82006900h	Check how many images are left in FiFo
9	wr	F1000260	86006901h	Read out the second image of FiFo
8	rd	F1000260	82006901h	Check how many images are left in FiFo
7	wr	F1000260	86006901h	Read out the first image of FiFo
6	rd	F1000260	82006902h	Check that two images are in FiFo
5	wr	F0F0061C	82000000h	Do second one-shot
4	wr	F0F0061C	82000000h	Do first one-shot
3	wr	F1000260	82006900h	Switch deferred mode on
2	rd	F1000260	80006900h	Check pres. of deferred mode and FiFo size (69h → 105 frames)
1	wr	F0F00614	00000000h	Stop continuous mode of camera

Table 54: Example: Controlling deferred mode (SmartView - Direct Access; PIKE F-032C)

## FastCapture mode

**Note** This mode can be activated only in Format\_7.



By setting **FastCapture** to **false**, the maximum frame rate both for image acquisition and read out is associated with the packet size set in the **BYTE\_PER\_PACKET** register. The lower this value is, the lower the attainable frame rate is.

By setting **FastCapture** to **true**, all images are recorded at the highest possible frame rate, i.e. the setting above does not affect the frame rate for the image intake but only the read out. The speed of the image transport over the 1394 bus can be defined via the **BytesPerPacket** register. This mode is ideal for applications where a burst of images need to be recorded at the highest sensor speed but the output can be at a lower frame frequency to save bandwidth.

Similar to the HoldImg mode, captured images will be stored in the internal image FIFO, if the transport over the 1394 bus is slower than images are captured.

## Color interpolation (BAYER demosaicing)

The color sensors capture the color information via so-called primary color (R-G-B) filters placed over the individual pixels in a **BAYER mosaic** layout. An effective BAYER → RGB color interpolation already takes place in all Pike color version cameras.

In color interpolation a red, green or blue value is determined for each pixel. An AVT proprietary BAYER demosaicing algorithm is used for this interpolation (max. 3x3), optimized for both sharpness of contours as well as reduction of false edge coloring.

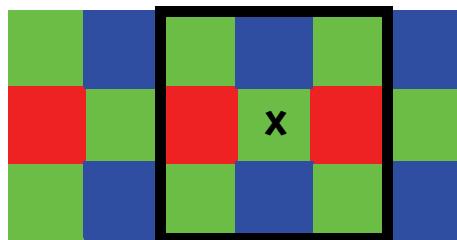


Figure 106: BAYER demosaicing (example of 3x3 matrix)

Color processing can be bypassed by using so-called RAW image transfer.

RAW mode is primarily used to

- save bandwidths on the IEEE 1394 bus
- achieve higher frame rates
- use different BAYER demosaicing algorithms on the PC (for PIKE F-145 and PIKE F-505 the first pixel of the sensor is RED, for all other Pike the first pixel is GREEN followed by RED).

**Note**

If the PC does not perform BAYER to RGB post-processing, the b/w image will be superimposed with a checkerboard pattern.



## Sharpness

The Pike color models are equipped with a two step sharpness control, applying a discreet horizontal high pass in the Y channel as shown in the next three line profiles.

Sharpness 0, 1 and 2 is calculated with the following scheme:

### Sharpness value

0	0	1	0
1	-0.25	+1.5	-0.25
2	-0.5	2	-0.5

Table 55: Sharpness scheme

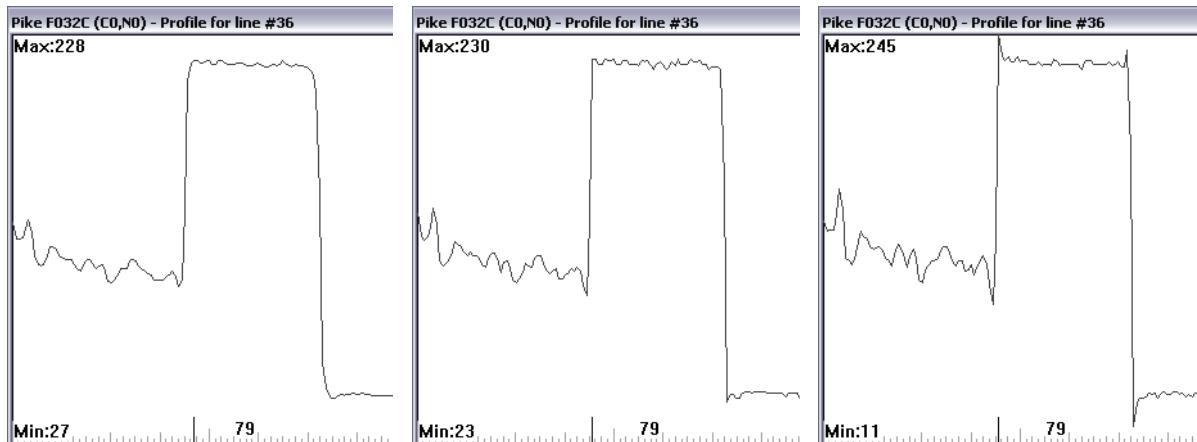


Figure 107: Sharpness: left: 0, middle: 1, right: 2

### Note



**Sharpness** does not show any effect on Pike color models in the Raw8 and Raw16 format, because color processing is put off in all Raw formats.

**Note**



**Configuration**

To configure this feature in feature control register: See [Table 139: Feature control register](#) on page 308.

## Hue and saturation

Pike CCD color models are equipped with **hue** and **saturation** registers.

The **hue register** at offset 810h allows the color of objects to be changed without altering the white balance, by +/- 40 steps (+/- 10°) from the nominal perception. Use this setting to manipulate the color appearance after having carried out the white balance.

The **saturation register** at offset 814h allows the intensity of the colors to be changed between 0 and 200% in steps of 1/256.

This means a setting of zero changes the image to black and white and a setting of 511 doubles the color intensity compared to the nominal one at 256.

**Note**



**Configuration**

To configure this feature in feature control register: See [Table 139: Feature control register](#) on page 308.

**Note**



**Hue and saturation** do not show any effect on Pike color models in the Raw8 and Raw16 format, because color processing is switched off in all Raw formats.

## Color correction

### Why color correction?

The spectral response of a CCD is different of those of an output device or the human eye. This is the reason for the fact that perfect color reproduction is not possible. In each PIKE camera there is a factory setting for the color correction coefficients, see Chapter [GretagMacbeth ColorChecker](#) on page 187.

Color correction is needed to eliminate the overlap in the color channels. This overlap is caused by the fact that:

- Blue light: is seen by the red and green pixels on the CCD
- Red light: is seen by the blue and green pixels on the CCD
- Green light: is seen by the red and blue pixels on the CCD

The color correction matrix subtracts out this overlap.

### Color correction in AVT cameras

In AVT cameras the color correction is realized as an additional step in the process from the sensor data to color output.

Color correction is used to harmonize colors for the human eye. With other AVT (color) cameras so far, you had the opportunity to use it or to switch it off.

Pike cameras introduce for the first time the so-called color correction matrix. This means: you are now able to manipulate the color-correction coefficients yourself.

### Color correction: formula

Before converting to the YUV format, color correction on all color models is carried out after BAYER demosaicing via a matrix as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{red}^* &= \text{Crr} \times \text{red} + \text{Cgr} \times \text{green} + \text{Cbr} \times \text{blue} \\ \text{green}^* &= \text{Crg} \times \text{red} + \text{Cgg} \times \text{green} + \text{Cbg} \times \text{blue} \\ \text{blue}^* &= \text{Crb} \times \text{red} + \text{Cgb} \times \text{green} + \text{Cbb} \times \text{blue}\end{aligned}$$

Formula 4: Color correction

### GretagMacbeth ColorChecker

Sensor-specific coefficients  $C_{xy}$  are scientifically generated to ensure that GretagMacbeth™ ColorChecker®-colors are displayed with highest color fidelity and color balance.

These coefficients are stored in user set 0 and can not be overwritten (factory setting).

## Changing color correction coefficients

You can change the color-correction coefficients according to your own needs. Changes are stored in the user settings.

### Note



- A number of 1000 equals a color correction coefficient of 1.
- To obtain an identity matrix set values of 1000 for the diagonal elements and 0 for all others. As a result you get colors like in the RAW modes.
- The sums of all rows should be equal to each other. If not, you get tinted images.
- Color correction values range -1000 ... +2000 and are signed 32 bit.
- In order for white balance to work properly ensure that the row sum equals 1000.
- Each row should sum up to 1000. If not, images are less or more colorful.
- The maximum row sum is limited to 2000.

### Note



### Configuration

To configure the color-correction coefficients in an advanced register: See [Table 161: Advanced register: Color correction](#) on page 339.

To change the color-correction coefficients in **SmartView**, go to **Adv3** tab.

## Switch color correction on/off

Color correction can also be switched off in YUV mode:

### Note



### Configuration

To configure this feature in an advanced register: See [Table 161: Advanced register: Color correction](#) on page 339.

### Note



Color correction is deactivated in RAW mode.

## Color conversion (RGB → YUV)

The conversion from RGB to YUV is made using the following formulae:

$$Y = 0.3 \times R + 0.59 \times G + 0.11 \times B$$

$$U = -0.169 \times R - 0.33 \times G + 0.498 \times B + 128 (@ 8 \text{ bit})$$

$$V = 0.498 \times R - 0.420 \times G - 0.082 \times B + 128 (@ 8 \text{ bit})$$

Formula 5: RGB to YUV conversion

**Note**



- As mentioned above: Color processing can be bypassed by using so-called RAW image transfer.
- RGB → YUV conversion can be bypassed by using RGB8 format and mode. This is advantageous for edge color definition but needs more bandwidth (300% instead of 200% relative to b/w or RAW consumption) for the transmission, so that the maximal frame frequency will drop.

## Bulk Trigger

See Chapter [Trigger modi](#) on page 195 and the following pages.

## Level Trigger

See Trigger Mode 1 in Chapter [Trigger modi](#) on page 195.

## Serial interface

All Pike cameras are equipped with the SIO (serial input/output) feature as described in IIDC V1.31. This means that the Pike's serial interface can be used as a general RS232 interface.

Data written to a specific address in the IEEE 1394 address range will be sent through the serial interface. Incoming data of the serial interface is put in a camera buffer and can be polled via simple read commands from this buffer. Controlling registers enable the settings of baud rates and the check of buffer sizes and serial interface errors.

**Note**

- Hardware handshaking is not supported.
- Typical PC hardware does not usually support 230400 bps or more.



Base address for the function is: F0F02100h.

To configure this feature in access control register (CSR):

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
000h	SERIAL_MODE_REG	Baud_Rate	[0..7]	Baud rate setting WR: Set baud rate RD: Read baud rate 0: 300 bps 1: 600 bps 2: 1200 bps 3: 2400 bps 4: 4800 bps 5: 9600 bps 6: 19200 bps 7: 38400 bps 8: 57600 bps 9: 115200 bps 10: 230400 bps Other values reserved
		Char_Length	[8..15]	Character length setting WR: Set data length (7 or 8 bit) RD: Get data length 7: 7 bits 8: 8 bits Other values reserved
		Parity	[16..17]	Parity setting WR: Set parity RD: Get parity setting 0: None 1: Odd 2: Even
		Stop_Bit	[18..19]	Stop bits WR: Set stop bit RD: Get stop bit setting 0: 1 1: 1.5 2: 2
		---	[20..23]	Reserved
		Buffer_Size_Inq	[24..31]	Buffer Size (RD only) This field indicates the maximum size of receive/transmit data buffer. If this value=1, Buffer_Status_Control and SIO_Data_Register Char 1-3 should be ignored.

Table 56: Serial input/output control and status register (SIO CSR)

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0004h	SERIAL_CONTROL_REG	RE	[0]	Receive enable RD: Current status WR: 0: Disable 1: Enable
		TE	[1]	Transmit enable RD: Current status WR: 0: disable 1: Enable
		---	[2..7]	Reserved
	SERIAL_STATUS_REG	TDRD	[8]	Transmit data buffer ready Read only 0: not ready 1: ready
		---	[9]	Reserved
		RDRD	[10]	Receive data buffer ready Read only 0: not ready 1: ready
		---	[11]	Reserved
		ORER	[12]	Receive data buffer overrun error Read: current status WR: 0: no error (to clear status) 1: Ignored
		FER	[13]	Receive data framing error Read: current status WR: 0: no error (to clear status) 1: Ignored
		PER	[14]	Receive data parity error Read: current status WR: 0: no error (to clear status) 1: Ignored
		---	[15..31]	Reserved

Table 56: Serial input/output control and status register (SIO CSR)

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
008h	RECEIVE_BUFFER_STATUS_CTRL	RBUF_ST	[0..7]	SIO receive buffer status RD: Number of bytes pending in receive buffer WR: Ignored
		RBUF_CNT	[8..15]	SIO receive buffer control RD: Number of bytes to be read from the receive FiFo WR: Number of bytes left for readout from the receive FiFo
		---	[16..31]	Reserved
00Ch	TRANSMIT_BUFFER_STATUS_CTRL	TBUF_ST	[0..7]	SIO output buffer status RD: Space left in TX buffer WR: Ignored
		TBUF_CNT	[8..15]	SIO output buffer control RD: Number of bytes written to transmit FiFo WR: Number of bytes to transmit
		---	[16..31]	Reserved
010h .. 0FFh		---		Reserved
100h	SIO_DATA_REGISTER	CHAR_0	[0..7]	Character_0 RD: Read character from receive buffer WR: Write character to transmit buffer
	SIO_DATA_REGISTER	CHAR_1	[8..15]	Character_1 RD: Read character from receive buffer+1 WR: Write character to transmit buffer+1
	SIO_DATA_REGISTER	CHAR_2	[16..23]	Character_2 RD: Read character from receive buffer+2 WR: Write character to transmit buffer+2
	SIO_DATA_REGISTER	CHAR_3	[24..31]	Character_3 RD: Read character from receive buffer+3 WR: Write character to transmit buffer+3
104h .. 1FFH	SIO_DATA_REGISTER_ALIAS		[0..31]	Alias SIO_Data_Register area for block transfer

Table 56: Serial input/output control and status register (SIO CSR)

**To read data:**

1. Query RDRD flag (buffer ready?) and write the number of bytes the host wants to read to RBUF\_CNT.
2. Read the number of bytes pending in the receive buffer RBUF\_ST (more data in the buffer than the host wanted to read?) and the number of bytes left for reading from the receive FiFo in RBUF\_CNT (host wanted to read more data than were in the buffer?).
3. Read received characters from SIO\_DATA\_REGISTER, beginning at char 0.
4. To input more characters, repeat from step 1.

**To write data:**

1. Query TDRD flag (buffer ready?) and write the number of bytes to send (copied from SIO register to transmit FiFo) to TBUF\_CNT.
2. Read the available data space left in TBUF\_ST (if the buffer can hold more bytes than are to be transmitted) and number of bytes written to transmit buffer in TBUF\_CNT (if more data is to be transmitted than fits in the buffer).
3. Write character to SIO\_DATA\_REGISTER, beginning at char 0.
4. To output more characters, repeat from step 1.

**Note**



- Contact your local dealer if you require further information or additional test programs or software.
- AVT recommends the use of Hyperterminal™ or other communication programs to test the functionality of this feature. Alternatively use SmartView to try out this feature.

# Controlling image capture

<b>Shutter modes</b>	The cameras support the SHUTTER_MODES specified in IIDC V1.31. For all models this shutter is a <b>global pipelined shutter</b> ; meaning that all pixels are exposed to the light at the same moment and for the same time span.
<b>Pipelined</b>	Pipelined means that the shutter for a new image can already happen, while the preceding image is transmitted.
<b>Continuous mode</b>	In continuous modes the shutter is opened shortly before the vertical reset happens, thus acting in a frame-synchronous way.
<b>External trigger</b>	Combined with an external trigger, it becomes asynchronous in the sense that it occurs whenever the external trigger occurs. Individual images are recorded when an external trigger impulse is present. This ensures that even fast moving objects can be grabbed with no image lag and with minimal image blur.
<b>Camera I/O</b>	The external trigger is fed as a TTL signal through <b>Pin 4</b> of the camera I/O connector.

## Trigger modi

Pike cameras support IIDC conforming Trigger\_Mode\_0 and Trigger\_Mode\_1 and special Trigger\_Mode\_15 (bulk trigger).

Trigger Mode	also known as	Description
Trigger_Mode_0	Edge mode	Sets the shutter time according to the value set in the shutter (or extended shutter) register
Trigger_Mode_1	Level mode	Sets the shutter time according to the active low time of the pulse applied (or active high time in the case of an inverting input)
Trigger_Mode_15	Programmable mode	Is a <b>bulk trigger</b> , combining one external trigger event with continuous or one-shot or multi-shot internal trigger

Table 57: Trigger modi

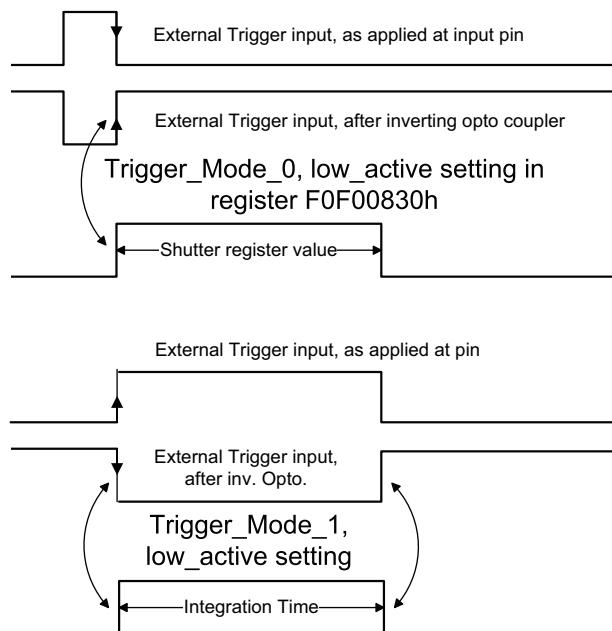


Figure 108: Trigger\_Mode\_0 and 1

## Bulk Trigger (Trigger\_Mode\_15)

Trigger\_Mode\_15 is an extension to the IIDC trigger modes. One external trigger event can be used to trigger a multitude of internal image intakes.

This is especially useful for:

- Grabbing exactly one image based on the first external trigger.
- Filling the camera's internal image buffer with one external trigger without overriding images.
- Grabbing an unlimited amount of images after one external trigger (surveillance)

The Figure below illustrates this mode.

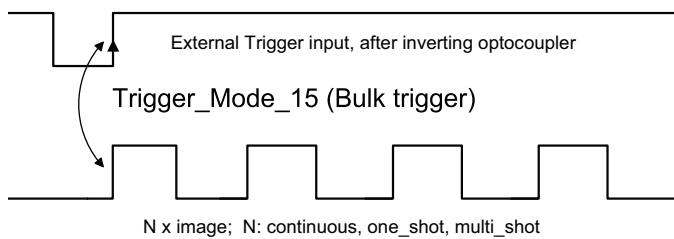


Figure 109: Trigger\_Mode\_15 (bulk trigger)

The functionality is controlled via bit [6] and bitgroup [12-15] of the following register:

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF0F00830	TRIGGER_MODE	Presence_Inq	[0]	Presence of this feature: 0: N/A 1: Available
		Abs_Control	[1]	Absolute value control 0: Control with value in the <b>Value</b> field 1: Control with value in the <b>Absolute</b> value CSR If this bit = 1 the value in the <b>Value</b> field has to be ignored
		---	[2..5]	Reserved
		ON_OFF	[6]	Write: ON or OFF this feature Read: read a status 0: OFF 1: ON In this bit = 0, other fields will be read only.
		Trigger_Polarity	[7]	Select trigger polarity (Except for software trigger)  If Polarity_Inq is 1: Write to change polarity of the trigger input. Read to get polarity of the trigger input.  If Polarity_Inq is 0: Read only. 0: Low active input 1: High active input
		Trigger_Source	[8..10]	Select trigger source  Set trigger source ID from trigger source ID_Inq
		Trigger_Value	[11]	Trigger input raw signal value read only  0: Low 1: High
		Trigger_Mode	[12..15]	Trigger_Mode (Trigger_Mode_0..15)
		---	[16..19]	Reserved
		Parameter	[20..31]	Parameter for trigger function, if required (optional)

Table 58: Trigger\_Mode\_15 (Bulk Trigger)

The screenshots below illustrate the use of Trigger\_Mode\_15 on a register level:

- Line #1 switches continuous mode off, leaving viewer in listen mode.
- Line #2 prepares 830h register for external trigger and Mode\_15.

Left = continuous	Middle = one-shot	Right = multi-shot
<p>Line #3 switches camera back to <b>continuous</b> mode. Only one image is grabbed precisely with the first external trigger. To repeat rewrite line three.</p>	<p>Line #3 toggles <b>one-shot</b> bit [0] of the one-shot register 61C so that only one image is grabbed, based on the first external trigger. To repeat rewrite line three.</p>	<p>Line #3 toggles <b>multi-shot</b> bit [1] of the one-shot register 61C so that Ah images are grabbed, starting with the first external trigger. To repeat rewrite line three.</p>

Table 59: Description: using Trigger\_Mode\_15: continuous, one-shot, multi-shot

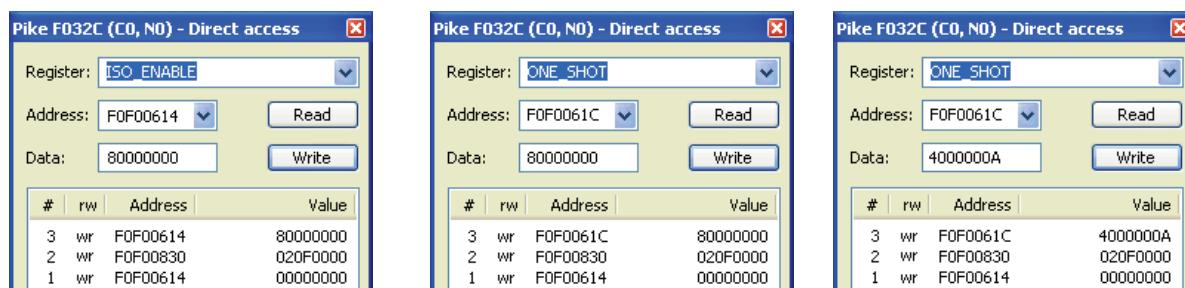


Figure 110: Using Trigger\_Mode\_15: continuous, one-shot, multi-shot

**Note** Shutter for the images is controlled by shutter register.



## Trigger delay

As already mentioned earlier the cameras feature various ways to delay image capture based on external trigger.

With IIDC V1.31 there is a standard CSR at Register F0F00534/834h to control a delay up to FFFh x time base value.

The following table explains the Inquiry register and the meaning of the various bits.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF0F00534	TRIGGER_DLY_INQUIRY	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		Abs_Control_Inq	[1]	Capability of control with absolute value
		---	[2]	Reserved
		One_Push_Inq	[3]	One Push auto mode (controlled automatically by the camera once)
		ReadOut_Inq	[4]	Capability of reading out the value of this feature
		On_Off_Inq	[5]	Capability of switching this feature ON and OFF
		Auto_Inq	[6]	Auto Mode (controlled automatically by the camera)
		Manual_Inq	[7]	Manual Mode (controlled by user)
		Min_Value	[8..19]	Minimum value for this feature
		Max_Value	[20..31]	Maximum value for this feature

Table 60: Trigger delay inquiry register

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF0F00834	TRIGGER_DELAY	Presence_Inq	[0]	Presence of this feature: 0: N/A 1: Available
		Abs_Control	[1]	Absolute value control 0: Control with value in the <b>Value</b> field 1: Control with value in the <b>Absolute</b> value CSR If this bit = 1, the value in the <b>Value</b> field has to be ignored
		-	[2..5]	Reserved
		ON_OFF	[6]	Write: ON or OFF this feature Read: read a status 0: OFF 1: ON In this bit = 0, other fields will be read only.
		-	[7..19]	Reserved
		Value	[20..31]	Value  If you write the value in OFF mode, this field will be ignored.  If <b>ReadOut</b> capability is not available, then the read value will have no meaning.

Table 61: CSR: Trigger delay

### Trigger delay advanced register

In addition, the cameras have an advanced register which allows even more precise image capture delay after receiving a hardware trigger.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000400	TRIGGER_DELAY	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	-
		ON_OFF	[6]	Trigger delay on/off
		---	[7..10]	-
		DelayTime	[11..31]	Delay time in $\mu$ s

Table 62: Advanced CSR: Trigger delay

The advanced register allows start of the integration to be delayed by max.  $2^{21}$  µs, which is max. 2.1 s after a trigger edge was detected.

**Note**


- Switching trigger delay to ON also switches external Trigger\_Mode\_0 to ON.
- This feature works with external Trigger\_Mode\_0 only.

## Debounce

Only for input ports:

There is an adjustable debounce time for trigger: separate for each input pin. The debounce time is a waiting period where no new trigger is allowed. This helps you to set exact one trigger.

The debounce feature is applied in cases of bad signals. The aim is to let the trigger run, when the signal is debounced.

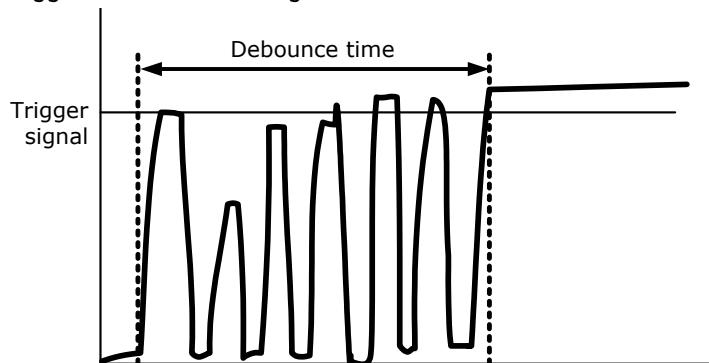


Figure 111: Example of debounce time for trigger

To set this feature in an advanced register: see Chapter [Debounce time](#) on page 203.

To set this feature in SmartView: **Trig/IO** tab, **Input pins** table, **Debounce** column.

**Low pass** Debounce acts like a low-pass filter with debounce time acting as resistance-capacitance element. That means: with increasing debounce time trigger will release later.

**Example** Debounce time set to 20 µs.

A switch debounces with 5 µs high pulse and 1 µs low pulse. During high pulse an internal counter adds one cycle, during low pulse the counter subtracts one cycle. Therefore high pulses at input pin have to be  $\geq 20$  µs.

Internal counter sees:  $5\text{ }\mu\text{s} - 1\text{ }\mu\text{s} = 4\text{ }\mu\text{s}$

Number of periods during debounce time:  $20\text{ }\mu\text{s} / 4\text{ }\mu\text{s} = 5$   
That means  $5\text{ periods} \times 6\text{ }\mu\text{s} = 30\text{ }\mu\text{s}$

The trigger starts after 30 µs while the debounce time was set to 20 µs.

**Note** The pulse width (total time of high and low pulses) must be greater than the debounce time.



## Debounce time

This register controls the debounce feature of the cameras input pins. The debounce time can be set for each available input separately.

Increment is 500 ns

Debounce time is set in Time x 500 ns

Minimum debounce time is 1.5 µs  $\Rightarrow$  3 x 500 ns

Maximum debounce time is ~16 ms  $\Rightarrow$   $(2^{15}-1) \times 500$  ns

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000840	IO_INP_DEBOUNCE_1	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[2..7]	Reserved
		Time	[8..31]	Debounce time in steps of 500 ns (24 bit) see examples above
0xF1000844		MinValue	[0..31]	Minimum debounce time
0xF1000848		MaxValue	[0..31]	Maximum debounce time
0xF100084C		---	[0..31]	Reserved
0xF1000850	IO_INP_DEBOUNCE_2			same as IO_INP_DEBOUNCE_1
0xF1000860	IO_INP_DEBOUNCE_3			same as IO_INP_DEBOUNCE_1
0xF1000870	IO_INP_DEBOUNCE_4			same as IO_INP_DEBOUNCE_1
0xF1000880				Reserved
0xF1000890				Reserved
0xF10008A0				Reserved
0xF10008B0				Reserved

Table 63: Advanced register: **Debounce time for input ports**

**Note**

- The camera corrects invalid values automatically.
- This feature is not stored in the user settings.



## Exposure time (shutter) and offset

The exposure (shutter) time for continuous mode and Trigger\_Mode\_0 is based on the following formula:

$$\text{Shutter register value} \times \text{time base} + \text{offset}$$

The register value is the value set in the corresponding IIDC 1.31 register (SHUTTER [81Ch]). This number is in the range between 1 and 4095.

The shutter register value is multiplied by the time base register value (see [Table 149: Time base ID](#) on page 324). The default value here is set to 20  $\mu\text{s}$ .

A camera-specific offset is also added to this value. It is different for the camera models:

### Exposure time offset

Camera model	Exposure time offset
Pike F-032	17 $\mu\text{s}$
Pike F-100	42 $\mu\text{s}$
Pike F-145	38 $\mu\text{s}$
Pike F-145-15fps	70 $\mu\text{s}$
Pike F-210	42 $\mu\text{s}$
Pike F-421	69 $\mu\text{s}$
Pike F-505	26 $\mu\text{s}$
Pike F-1100	128 $\mu\text{s}$
Pike F-1600	635 $\mu\text{s}$

Table 64: Camera-specific exposure time offset

### Minimum exposure time

Camera model	Minimum exposure time	Effective min. exp. time = Min. exp. time + offset
Pike F-032	1 $\mu\text{s}$	1 $\mu\text{s}$ + 17 $\mu\text{s}$ = <b>18 <math>\mu\text{s}</math></b>
Pike F-100	1 $\mu\text{s}$	1 $\mu\text{s}$ + 42 $\mu\text{s}$ = <b>43 <math>\mu\text{s}</math></b>
Pike F-145	1 $\mu\text{s}$	1 $\mu\text{s}$ + 38 $\mu\text{s}$ = <b>39 <math>\mu\text{s}</math></b>
Pike F-145-15fps	1 $\mu\text{s}$	1 $\mu\text{s}$ + 70 $\mu\text{s}$ = <b>71 <math>\mu\text{s}</math></b>
Pike F-210	1 $\mu\text{s}$	1 $\mu\text{s}$ + 42 $\mu\text{s}$ = <b>43 <math>\mu\text{s}</math></b>
Pike F-421	1 $\mu\text{s}$	1 $\mu\text{s}$ + 69 $\mu\text{s}$ = <b>70 <math>\mu\text{s}</math></b>

Table 65: Camera-specific minimum exposure time

Camera model	Minimum exposure time	Effective min. exp. time = Min. exp. time + offset
Pike F-505	1 µs	1 µs + 26 µs = <b>27 µs</b>
Pike F-1100	1 µs	1 µs + 128 µs = <b>129 µs</b>
Pike F-1600	1 µs	1 µs + 635 µs = <b>636 µs</b>

Table 65: Camera-specific minimum exposure time

**Example: Pike F-032**

Camera	Register value	Time base (default)
Pike F-032	100	20 µs

Table 66: Register value and time base for **Pike F-032**

register value x time base = exposure time

100 x 20 µs + 17 µs = 2017 µs exposure time

The minimum adjustable exposure time set by register is 1 µs. → The real minimum exposure time of **Pike F-032** is then:

1 µs + 17 µs = 18 µs

**Extended shutter**

The exposure time for long-term integration of up to 67 seconds can be extended via the advanced register: EXTENDED\_SHUTTER

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF100020C	EXTD_SHUTTER	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1.. 5]	
		ExpTime	[6..31]	Exposure time in µs

Table 67: Advanced register: **Extended shutter**

The longest exposure time, 3FFFFFFh, corresponds to 67.11 sec.

The lowest possible value of **ExpTime** is camera-specific (see [Table 65: Camera-specific minimum exposure time](#) on page 204).

**Note**



- Exposure times entered via the 81Ch register are mirrored in the extended register, but not vice versa.
- Longer integration times not only increase sensitivity, but may also increase some unwanted effects such as noise and pixel-to-pixel non-uniformity. Depending on the application, these effects may limit the longest usable integration time.
- Changes in this register have immediate effect, even when the camera is transmitting.
- Extended shutter becomes inactive after writing to a format mode/frame rate register.

## One-shot

The camera can record an image by setting the **one-shot bit** in the 61Ch register. This bit is automatically cleared after the image is captured. If the camera is placed in ISO\_Enable mode (see Chapter [ISO\\_Enable / free-run](#) on page 210), this flag is ignored.

If **one-shot mode** is combined with the external trigger, the **one-shot** command is used to arm it. The following screenshot shows the sequence of commands needed to put the camera into this mode. It enables the camera to grab exactly one image with an external trigger edge.

If there is no trigger impulse after the camera has been armed, **one-shot** can be cancelled by clearing the bit.

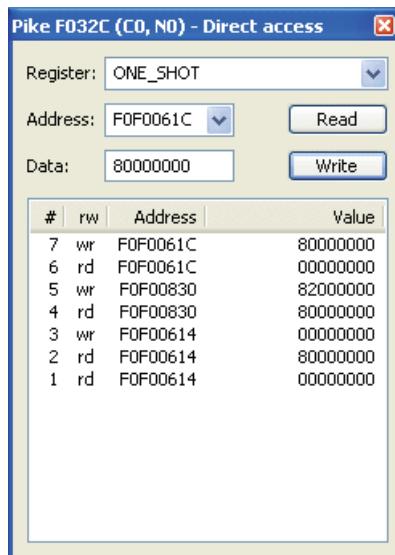


Figure 112: One-shot control (SmartView)

#	Read = rd	Address	Value	Description
Write = wr				
7	wr	F0F0061C	80000000	Do one-shot.
6	rd	F0F0061C	00000000	Read out one-shot register.
5	wr	F0F00830	82000000	Switch on external trigger mode 0.
4	rd	F0F00830	80000000	Check trigger status.
3	wr	F0F00614	00000000	Stop free-run.
2	rd	F0F00614	80000000	Check Iso_Enable mode (→free-run).
1	rd	F0F00614	00000000	This line is produced by SmartView.

Table 68: One-shot control: descriptions

## One-shot command on the bus to start of exposure

The following sections describe the time response of the camera using a single frame (one-shot) command. As set out in the IIDC specification, this is a software command that causes the camera to record and transmit a single frame.

The following values apply only when the camera is idle and ready for use. Full resolution must also be set.

Feature	Value
One-shot → microcontroller sync	$\leq 150 \mu\text{s}$ (processing time in the microcontroller)
$\mu\text{C-Sync}/\text{ExSync} \rightarrow$ integration start	8 $\mu\text{s}$

Table 69: Values for one-shot

Microcontroller sync is an internal signal. It is generated by the microcontroller to initiate a trigger. This can either be a direct trigger or a release for ExSync if the camera is externally triggered.

## End of exposure to first packet on the bus

After the exposure, the CCD sensor is read out; some data is written into the FRAME\_BUFFER before being transmitted to the bus.

The time from the end of exposure to the start of transport on the bus is:

$710 \mu\text{s} \pm 62.5 \mu\text{s}$

This time '*jitters*' with the cycle time of the bus ( $125 \mu\text{s}$ ).

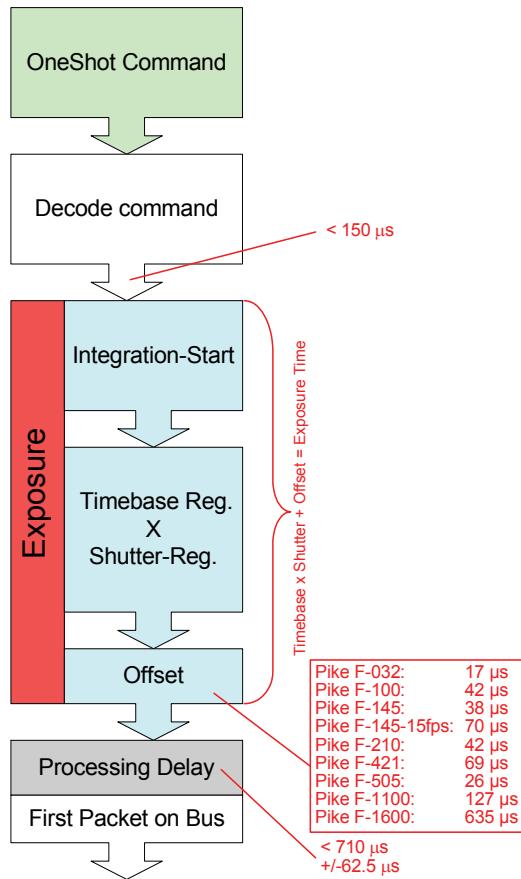


Figure 113: Data flow and timing after end of exposure

## Multi-shot

Setting **multi-shot** and entering a quantity of images in **Count\_Number** in the 61Ch register enables the camera to record a specified number of images.

The number is indicated in bits 16 to 31. If the camera is put into **ISO\_Enable** mode (see Chapter [ISO\\_Enable / free-run](#) on page 210), this flag is ignored and deleted automatically once all the images have been recorded.

If **multi-shot** mode is activated and the images have not yet all been captured, it can be cancelled by resetting the flag. The same result can be achieved by setting the number of images to **0**.

**Multi-shot** can also be combined with the external trigger in order to grab a certain number of images based on an external trigger. This is especially helpful in combination with the so called **Deferred\_Mode** to limit the number of grabbed images to the FIFO size.

## ISO\_Enable / free-run

Setting the MSB (bit 0) in the 614h register (ISO\_ENA) puts the camera into **ISO\_Enable mode** or **Continuous\_Shot (free-run)**. The camera captures an infinite series of images. This operation can be quit by deleting the **0** bit.

## Asynchronous broadcast

The camera accepts asynchronous broadcasts. This involves asynchronous write requests that use node number 63 as the target node with no acknowledge.

This makes it possible for all cameras on a bus to be triggered by software simultaneously - e.g. by broadcasting a **one-shot**. All cameras receive the **one-shot** command in the same IEEE 1394 bus cycle. This creates uncertainty for all cameras in the range of 125 µs.

Inter-camera latency is described in Chapter [Jitter at start of exposure](#) on page 211.

The following screenshot shows an example of broadcast commands sent with the Firedemo example of FirePackage:

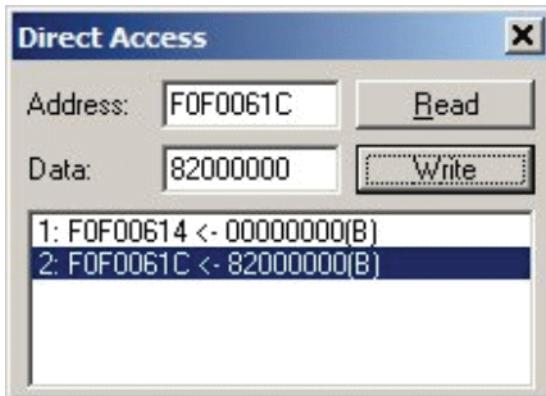


Figure 114: Broadcast one-shot

- Line 1 shows the broadcast command, which stops all cameras connected to the same IEEE 1394 bus. It is generated by holding the **<shift>** key down while clicking on **<Write>**.
- Line 2 generates a **broadcast one\_shot** in the same way, which forces all connected cameras to simultaneously grab one image.

## Jitter at start of exposure

The following chapter discusses the latency time which exists for all Pike CCD models when either a hardware or software trigger is generated, until the actual image exposure starts.

Owing to the well-known fact that an **Interline Transfer CCD** sensor has both a light sensitive area and a separate storage area, it is common to interleave image exposure of a new frame and output that of the previous one. It makes continuous image flow possible, even with an external trigger.

The uncertain time delay before the start of exposure depends on the state of the sensor. A distinction is made as follows:

FVal is active → the sensor is reading out, the camera is busy

In this case the camera must not change horizontal timing so that the trigger event is synchronized with the current horizontal clock. This introduces a max. uncertainty which is equivalent to the line time. The line time depends on the sensor used and therefore can vary from model to model.

FVal is inactive → the sensor is ready, the camera is idle

In this case the camera can resynchronize the horizontal clock to the new trigger event, leaving only a very short uncertainty time of the master clock period.

Model	Exposure start jitter (while FVal)	Exposure start jitter (while camera idle)
Pike F-032	$\pm 4.9 \mu s$	$\pm 375 \text{ ns}$
Pike F-100	$\pm 8.2 \mu s$	$\pm 1.65 \mu s$
Pike F-145	$\pm 16 \mu s$	$\pm 2.9 \mu s$
Pike F-145-15fps	$\pm 30 \mu s$	$\pm 5.4 \mu s$
Pike F-210	$\pm 14.25 \mu s$	$\pm 1.8 \mu s$
Pike F-421	$\pm 15 \mu s$	$\pm 1.65 \mu s$
Pike F-505	$\pm 17 \mu s$	$\pm 5.7 \mu s$
Pike F-1100	single tap: $\pm 141 \mu s$ dual tap: $\pm 74.5 \mu s$	$\pm 7.64 \mu s$ (single+dual tap)
Pike F-1600	single tap: $\pm 177 \mu s$ dual tap: $\pm 95.7 \mu s$	$\pm 13.6 \mu s$ (single+dual tap)

Table 70: Jitter at exposure start (no binning, no sub-sampling)

Note

- Jitter at the beginning of an exposure has no effect on the length of exposure, i.e. it is always constant.



## Sequence mode

Generally all AVT Pike cameras enable certain image settings to be modified on the fly, e.g. gain and shutter can be changed by the host computer by writing into the gain and shutter register even while the camera is running. An uncertainty of up to 3 images remains because normally the host does not know (especially with external trigger) when the next image will arrive.

**Sequence mode** is a different concept where the camera holds a set of different image parameters for a sequence of images. The parameter set is stored volatile in the camera for each image to be recorded. This sequence of parameter sets is simply called a sequence. The advantage is that the camera can easily synchronize this parameter set with the images so that no uncertainty can occur. All AVT Pike cameras support 32 different sequence parameters.

Additionally to the sequence mode known from Marlin cameras, the Pike cameras have:

- Repeat counter per sequence item
- Incrementing list pointer on input status (on/off)
- Pointer reset (software command; on input pin)

**Examples** For a sequence of images, each image can be recorded with a different shutter or gain to obtain different brightness effects.

The image area (AOI) of a sequence of images can automatically be modified, thus creating a panning or sequential split screen effect.

The following registers can be modified to affect the individual steps of the sequence. Different configurations can be accessed via e.g a footswitch which is connected to an input.

Mode	this registers can be modified...
All modes	Cur_V_Mode, Cur_V_Format, ISO_Channel, ISO_Speed, Brightness, White_Balance (color cameras only), Shutter, Gain, LUT, TestImage, Image-Mirror, HSNR, Output-Ctrl, ColorCorrection matrix (color cameras only), ISO-Channel, Shading-Ctrl, Sequence-Stepping Mode, SIS_UserValue
Fixed modes only	Cur_V_Frm_Rate
Format_7 only	Image_Position (AOI-Top, AOI-Left), Image_Size (AOI-Width, AOI-Height), Color_Coding_ID*, Binning*, Sub-Sampling*, Byte_Per_Packet *hidden in video formats and video modes

Table 71: Registers to be modified within a sequence

**Note**

Sequence mode requires not only firmware 3.x but also special care if changing image size, Color\_Coding\_ID and frame rate related parameters. This is because these changes not only affect settings in the camera but also require corresponding settings in the receiving software in the PC.

**Caution**

Incorrect handling may lead to **image corruption or loss of subsequent images**.

**Please ask for detailed support when you want to use this feature.**

## How is sequence mode implemented?

There is a FIFO (first in first out) memory for each of the IIDC V1.31 registers listed above. The depth of each FIFO is fixed to 32(dez) complete sets. Functionality is controlled by the following advanced registers.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000220	SEQUENCE_CTRL	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..4]	Reserved
		AutoRewind	[5]	
		ON_OFF	[6]	Enable/disable this feature
		SetupMode	[7]	Sequence setup mode
		---	[8..15]	Reserved
		MaxLength	[16..23]	Maximum possible length of a sequence (read only)
		SeqLength	[24..31]	Length of the sequence (32 dez for all CCD models)
0xF1000224	SEQUENCE_PARAM	---	[0..4]	Reserved
		ApplyParameters	[5]	Apply settings to selected image of sequence; auto-reset
		---	[6..7]	Reserved
		SeqStepMode	[8..15]	Sequence stepping mode
		ImageRepeat	[16..23]	Image repeat counter
		ImageNo	[24..31]	Number of image within a sequence

Table 72: Advanced register: **Sequence mode**

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000228	SEQUENCE_STEP	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..4]	Reserved
		PerformStep	[5]	Sequence is stepped one item forward
		PerformReset	[6]	Reset the sequence to start position
		---	[7..23]	Reserved
		SqPosition	[24..31]	Get the current sequence position

Table 72: Advanced register: **Sequence mode**

Enabling this feature turns the camera into a special mode. This mode can be used to set up a bunch of parameter sets for up to **MaxLength** consecutive images.

**Note**

The sequence mode of the Pike 3.x series firmware behaves slightly different than the sequence mode of e.g. the Marlin series and implements some new controlling features. You may use a sequence with internal or external trigger and with the **Deferred Transport** feature.

**Setup mode (new for 3.x)**

The **SetupMode** flag allows you to set up a sequence while capturing images. Using this flag you get a visual feedback of the settings.

Set **SetupMode** flag when setting up the sequence and reset the flag before using the sequence.

**Sequence step mode (new for 3.x)**

The SeqMode field selects the signal source for stepping the sequence one parameter set further.

## SeqMode description

Sequence mode	Description
0x80	This mode is the <b>default sequence mode</b> and stepping the sequence is compatible to e.g. the Marlin series. With each image integration start the sequence is stepped one item further and the new parameter set becomes active for the next image.
0x82	Stepping of the sequence is controlled by a <b>rising edge</b> of an <b>external signal</b> . The new parameter set becomes active with the next integration start. When using this mode select the suitable input mode of the input lines.
0x84	Stepping of the sequence is controlled by a <b>high level</b> of an <b>external signal</b> . The new parameter set becomes active with the next integration start. When using this mode select the suitable input mode of the input lines.
Other mode	Choosing any other mode value, automatically defaults to mode 0x80.

Table 73: Sequence mode description

### Note



It is also possible, that a sequence consists of parameter sets with different sequence modes. This can be achieved by using the SeqMode and the ImageNo fields within the Sequence\_Param register.

## Sequence repeat counter (new for 3.x)

For each parameter set one can define an image repeat counter. Using the image repeat counter means that a parameter set can be used for n consecutive images before the next parameter set is applied.

Setting the **ImageRepeat** field to 0 has the same effect like setting this field to 1.

## Manual stepping & reset (new for 3.x)

With firmware 3.x a sequence can be stepped further with a software command. To use manual stepping use stepping mode 0x82 or 0x84, but do not setup any input pin for external sequence stepping.

Every time the **PerformStep** flag is set the sequence will be stepped one parameter set further. Manual stepping observes the repeat counter also.

For some application it could be useful to reset the sequence during runtime. Simply set the **PerformReset** flag to one: the sequence starts over with the very first parameter set.

The following flow diagram shows how to set up a sequence.

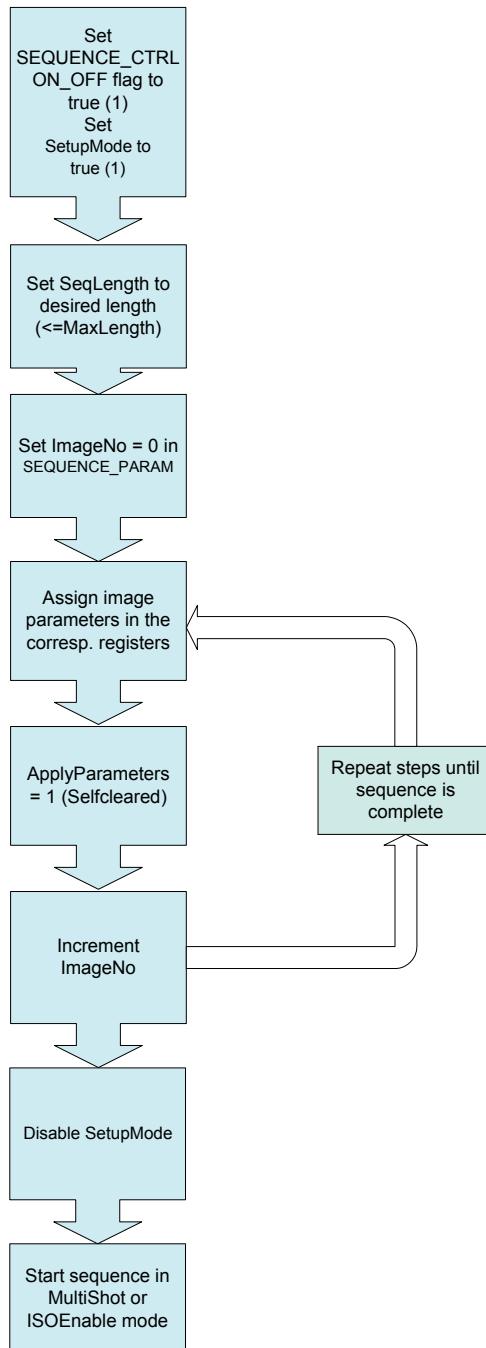


Figure 115: Sequence mode flow diagram

During sequencing, the camera obtains the required parameters, image by image, from the corresponding FIFOs (e.g. information for exposure time).

## Which new sequence mode features are available?

New features:

- Repeat one step of a sequence n times where n can be set by the variable **ImageRepeat** in SEQUENCE\_PARAM.
- Define one or two hardware inputs in Input mode field of IO\_INP\_CTRL as:
  - Sequence step input (if two are set as input, they are AND gated) or
  - Sequence reset input

**Note**

From now on:



sequence step is **I/O controlled sequence stepping mode**  
sequence reset is **I/O controlled sequence pointer reset**

### Setup mode

The **SetupMode** flag allows you to set up a sequence while capturing images. Using this flag you get a visual feedback of the settings. Set this flag when setting up the sequence and reset the flag before using the sequence.

### I/O controlled sequence stepping mode

The **I/O controlled sequence stepping mode** can be done level controlled or edge controlled:

Level controlled	Edge controlled
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• As long as the input is in high state the sequence pointer will be incremented from image to image.</li> <li>• Can be combined with <b>Quick Format Change Modes</b>. See Chapter <a href="#">Standard Parameter Update Timing</a> on page 174 and Chapter <a href="#">New: Quick Format Change Mode (QFCM)</a> on page 174.</li> <li>• Level change is asynchronous to image change.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A rising edge on the input will cause one pointer increment immediately.</li> <li>• Can be combined with <b>Quick Format Change Modes</b>. See Chapter <a href="#">Standard Parameter Update Timing</a> on page 174 and Chapter <a href="#">New: Quick Format Change Mode (QFCM)</a> on page 174.</li> </ul>

Table 74: Description of sequence stepping control

The **I/O controlled sequence stepping mode** can be set for every single sequence entry. Thus a sequence can be controlled in a very flexible manner.

### I/O controlled sequence pointer reset

**I/O controlled sequence pointer reset** is always edge controlled. A rising edge on the input pin resets the pointer to the first entry.

**I/O controlled sequence pointer reset** can be combined with **Quick Format Change Modes**. See Chapter [Standard Parameter Update Timing](#) on page 174 and Chapter [New: Quick Format Change Mode \(QFCM\)](#) on page 174.

### I/O controlled sequence stepping mode and I/O controlled sequence pointer reset via software command

Both sequence modes can be controlled via software command.

## Points to pay attention to when working with a sequence

### Note



- If more images are recorded than defined in **SeqLength**, the settings for the last image remain in effect.
- If **sequence** mode is cancelled, the camera can use the FIFO for other tasks. For this reason, a sequence must be loaded back into the camera after **sequence** mode has been cancelled.
- To repeat the sequence, stop the camera and send the **multi-shot** or **IsoEnable** command again. Each of these two commands resets the sequence.
- Using **SingleShot** mode in combination with a sequence does not make sense, because **SingleShot** mode restarts the sequence every time.
- The sequence may not be active when setting the AutoRewind flag. For this reason it is important to set the flag before the **multi-shot** or **IsoEnable** commands.
- If the sequence is used with the **deferred transport** feature, the number of images entered in **Seq\_Length** may not be exceeded.

The following screenshot shows an example of a sequence for eight different image settings. It uses the **AVT Firetool program** as graphical representation. Please note the changes in the shutter time; that creates descending image brightness, and the change in the image position; which creates a panning effect.

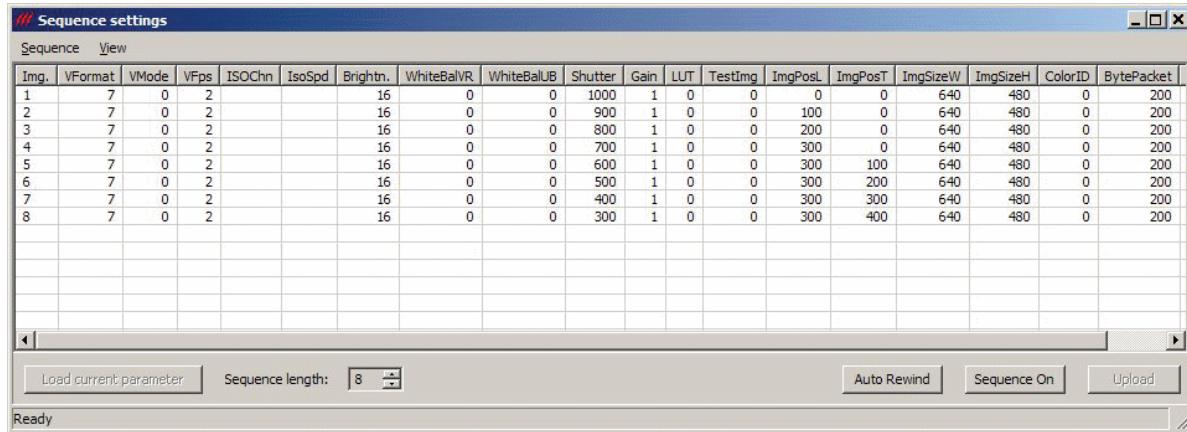


Figure 116: Example of sequence mode settings

Instead of **Firetool** you also can use **SmartView** (Version 1.7.0 or greater), but image and transfer formats have to be unchanged (height, width, ColorID).

To open the **Sequence editor** in SmartView:

1. Click **Extras → Sequence dialog**

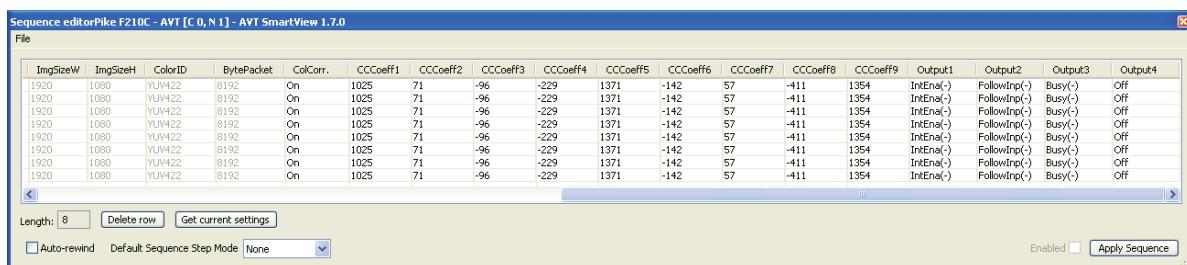
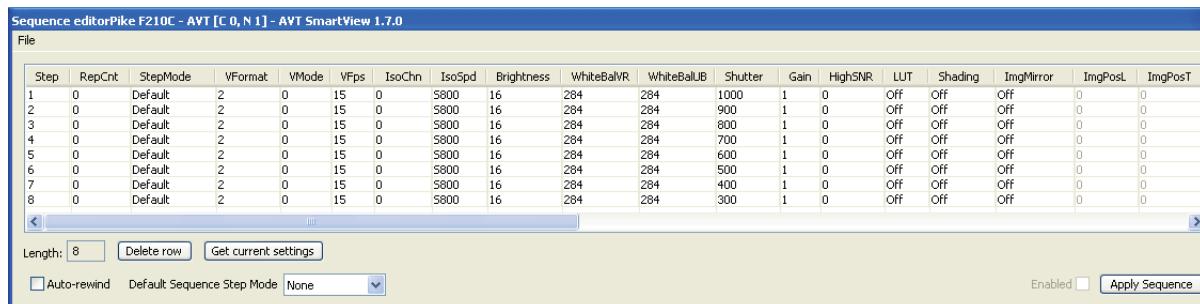


Figure 117: SmartView: Extras → Sequence dialog

## Changing the parameters within a sequence

To change the parameter set for one image, it is not necessary to modify the settings for the entire sequence. The image can simply be selected via the **ImageNo** field and it is then possible to change the corresponding IIDC V1.31 registers.

## Points to pay attention to when changing the parameters

### Note



- If the **ApplyParameters** flag is used when setting the parameters, all not-configured values are set to default values. As changing a sequence normally affects only the value of a specific register, and all other registers should not be changed, the **ApplyParameters** flag may not be used here.
- The values stored for individual images can no longer be read.
- If the camera is switched into **sequence mode**, the changes to the IIDC V1.31 registers for the image specified in **ImageNo** take immediate effect.
- Sequence mode requires firmware 3.x and special care if changing image size and frame rate related parameters. This is because these changes not only affect settings in the camera but also require corresponding settings in the receiving software in the PC (e.g. FirePackage).

### Caution



Incorrect handling may lead to **image corruption or loss of subsequent images**.

**Please ask for detailed support when you want to use this feature.**

# Secure image signature (SIS): definition and scenarios

## Note



For all customers who know SIS from Marlin cameras:

- Pike cameras have **additional SIS features**: AOI, exposure/gain, input/output state, index of sequence mode and serial number.
- In contrary to Marlin cameras, in the Pike SIS feature the **endianness cannot be changed**.

## SIS: Definition

**Secure image signature (SIS)** is the synonym for data, which is inserted into an image to improve or check image integrity.

With the new firmware 3.x, all Pike models can insert

- Time stamp (1394 bus cycle time at the beginning of integration)
- Trigger counter (external trigger seen only)
- Frame counter (frames read out of the sensor)
- AOI (x, y, width, height)
- Exposure (shutter) and gain
- Input and output state on exposure start
- Index of sequence mode
- Serial number
- User value

into a selectable line position within the image. Furthermore the trigger counter and the frame counter are available as advanced registers to be read out directly.

## SIS: Scenarios

The following scenarios benefit from this feature:

- Assuming camera runs in **continuous mode**, the check of monotonically changing bus cycle time is a simple test that no image was skipped or lost in the camera or subsequently in the image processing chain.
- In (synchronized) **multi camera applications**, the time stamp can be used to identify those images, shot at the same moment in time.
- The cross-check of the frame counter of the camera against the frame counter of the host system also identifies any **skipped or lost images** during transmission.
- The cross-check of the trigger counter against the frame counter in the camera can identify a **trigger overrun** in the camera.

- AOI can be inserted in the image if it was set as a variable e.g. in a sequence.
- Exposure/gain scenario parameters can be inserted in the image if set as a variable in e.g. sequence mode to identify the imaging conditions.
- Inserting input and output state on exposure start can be helpful when working with input and output signals.
- Index of sequence mode can be inserted if SIS is used together with sequence mode.
- Serial number inserted in the image helps to document/identify the camera in e.g. multi camera applications.

**Note**



- **FirePackage** offers additional and independent checks to be performed for the purpose of image integrity. Details can be found in the respective documentation.

**Note**



**More information:**

The handling of the SIS feature is fully described in the Chapter [Secure image signature \(SIS\)](#) on page 353.

## Smear reduction

### Smear reduction: definition

- Definition** Smear is an undesirable CCD sensor artefact creating a vertical bright line that extends above and below a bright spot in an image.
- Definition** Smear reduction is a function implemented in hardware in the camera itself to compensate for smear.

### Smear reduction: how it works

To reduce smear a reference line is used. This reference line is built from the mean value of the so-called **black lines** (two lines before image start). The reference line is subtracted from every line of the whole image.

But how will this reduce smearing?

The point is: black lines have no image information but are also affected from smearing. Thus the smearing effect itself is isolated and can be reduced in the whole image.

The two additional black lines and the calculated anti-smear values do not lower the transfer rates significantly due to hardware implementation.

### Smear reduction: switch on/off in register and SmartView

To switch on/off smear reduction in advanced registers, see Chapter [Smear reduction](#) on page 358.

In SmartView: **Edit settings → Adv3 tab (Smear reduction  Enable)**

# Video formats, modes and bandwidth

The different Pike models support different video formats, modes and frame rates.

These formats and modes are standardized in the IIDC (formerly DCAM) specification.

Resolutions smaller than the generic sensor resolution are generated from the center of the sensor and without binning.

**Note**



- The maximum frame rates can only be achieved with shutter settings lower than 1/framerate. This means that with default shutter time of 40 ms, a camera will not achieve frame rates higher than 25 frames/s. In order to achieve higher frame rates, please reduce the shutter time proportionally.
- **The following tables assume that bus speed is 800 Mbit/s.** With lower bus speeds (e.g. 400, 200 or 100 Mbit/s) not all frame rates may be achieved.
- For information on bit/pixel and byte/pixel for each color mode see [Table 121: ByteDepth](#) on page 277.

**Note**



The following Format\_7 tables show **default Format\_7 modes** without Format\_7 mode mapping.

- see [Figure 102: Mapping of possible Format\\_7 modes to F7M1...F7M7](#) on page 172
- see Chapter [Format\\_7 mode mapping](#) on page 351

**Note**



**H-binning** means horizontal binning.

**V-binning** means vertical binning.

**Full binning (H+V)** means horizontal + vertical binning

2 x binning means: 2 neighboring pixels are combined.

4 x binning means: 4 neighboring pixels are combined.

- **Binning average** means: signals from adjacent pixels are combined by averaging.
- **Binning increases signal-to-noise ratio (SNR)**, but decreases resolution.

## PIKE F-032B / PIKE F-032C

Format	Mode	Resolution	Color mode	240 fps	120 fps	60 fps	30 fps	15 fps	7.5 fps	3.75 fps	1.875 fps
0	0	160 x 120	YUV444								
	1	320 x 240	YUV422		x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	2	640 x 480	YUV411		x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	3	640 x 480	YUV422			x	x	x	x	x	x
	4	640 x 480	RGB8			x	x	x	x	x	x
	5	640 x 480	Mono8		xx	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx
	6	640 x 480	Mono16			x	x	x	x	x	x

Table 75: Video fixed formats PIKE F-032B / PIKE F-032C



Frame rates with shading are only achievable with 1394b (S800).

### Note

The following Format\_7 table shows **default Format\_7 modes** without Format\_7 mode mapping.



- see [Figure 102: Mapping of possible Format\\_7 modes to F7M1...F7M7](#) on page 172
- see [Chapter Format\\_7 mode mapping](#) on page 351

	<b>Format</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Resolution</b>	<b>Color mode</b>	<b>Maximal S800 frame rates for Format_7 modes</b>	
7	0	640 x 480	Mono8		208 fps	
			Mono12		139 fps	
	1	320 x 480	Mono16		105 fps	
			YUV411,Raw12		139 fps	
	2	640 x 240	YUV422,Raw16		105 fps	
			Mono8,Raw8		208 fps	
	3	320 x 240	RGB8		70 fps	
	4	320 x 480	Mono8	208 fps	2x H-binning	
			Mono12	208 fps	2x H-binning	
	5	640 x 240	Mono16	208 fps	2x H-binning	
			YUV411,Raw12	372 fps	2x V-binning	
	6	320 x 240	YUV422,Raw16	271 fps	2x V-binning	
			Mono8,Raw8	208 fps	2x V-binning	
	7	320 x 480	RGB8	372 fps	2x H+V binning	
				372 fps	2x H+V binning	
	8	640 x 240	Mono8	372 fps	2x H+V binning	
			Mono12	372 fps	2x H+V binning	
	9	320 x 240	Mono16	372 fps	2x H+V binning	
			YUV411,Raw12	208 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
	10	640 x 480	YUV422,Raw16	208 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
			Mono8,Raw8	208 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
	11	320 x 480	RGB8	139 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
	12	640 x 240	Mono8	372 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
			Mono12	372 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
	13	320 x 240	Mono16	372 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
			YUV411,Raw12	271 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
	14	640 x 480	YUV422,Raw16	208 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
			Mono8,Raw8	372 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
	15	320 x 480	RGB8	139 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
	16	640 x 240	Mono8	372 fps	2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling	
			Mono12	372 fps	2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling	
	17	320 x 240	Mono16	372 fps	2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling	
			YUV411,Raw12	372 fps	2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling	
	18	640 x 480	YUV422,Raw16	372 fps	2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling	
			Mono8,Raw8	372 fps	2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling	
	19	320 x 480	RGB8	271 fps	2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling	

Table 76: Video Format\_7 default modes PIKE F-032B / PIKE F-032C

## PIKE F-100B / PIKE F-100C

Format	Mode	Resolution	Color mode	240 fps	120 fps	60 fps	30 fps	15 fps	7.5 fps	3.75 fps	1.875 fps
0	0	160 x 120	YUV444								
	1	320 x 240	YUV422		x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	2	640 x 480	YUV411			x	x	x	x	x	x
	3	640 x 480	YUV422			x	x	x	x	x	x
	4	640 x 480	RGB8			x	x	x	x	x	x
	5	640 x 480	Mono8			x x	x x	x x	x x	x x	x x
	6	640 x 480	Mono16			x	x	x	x	x	x
1	0	800 x 600	YUV422			x	x	x	x	x	x
	1	800 x 600	RGB8				x	x	x		
	2	800 x 600	Mono8			x x	x x	x x	x x		
	3	1024 x 768	YUV422								
	4	1024 x 768	RGB8								
	5	1024 x 768	Mono8								
	6	800 x 600	Mono16			x	x	x	x	x	x
	7	1024 x 768	Mono16								

Table 77: Video fixed formats Pike F-100B / F-100C

**Note**

The following Format\_7 tables show **default Format\_7 modes** without Format\_7 mode mapping.



- see [Figure 102: Mapping of possible Format\\_7 modes to F7M1...F7M7](#) on page 172
- see [Chapter Format\\_7 mode mapping](#) on page 351

	<b>Format Mode</b>	<b>Resolution</b>	<b>Color mode</b>	<b>Maximal S800 frame rates for Format_7 modes</b>	
7	0	1000 x 1000	Mono8	60 fps	
			Mono12	43 fps	
	1000 x 1000		Mono16	33 fps	
			YUV411	43 fps	
			YUV422,Raw16	33 fps	
			Mono8,Raw8	60 fps	
			RGB8	22 fps	
	1	500 x 1000	Mono8	60 fps	2x H-binning
			Mono12	60 fps	2x H-binning
			Mono16	60 fps	2x H-binning
	2	1000 x 500	Mono8	99 fps	2x V-binning
			Mono12	86 fps	2x V-binning
			Mono16	65 fps	2x V-binning
	3	500 x 500	Mono8	99 fps	2x H+V binning
			Mono12	99 fps	2x H+V binning
			Mono16	99 fps	2x H+V binning
	4	500 x 1000	Mono8	60 fps	2x H-sub-sampling
			Mono12	60 fps	2x H-sub-sampling
		500 x 1000	Mono16	60 fps	2x H-sub-sampling
			YUV411	60 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
			YUV422,Raw16	60 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
	5	1000 x 500	Mono8,Raw8	60 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
			RGB8	43 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
		1000 x 500	Mono8	99 fps	2x V-sub-sampling
			Mono12	86 fps	2x V-sub-sampling
			Mono16	65 fps	2x V-sub-sampling
	6	500 x 500	YUV411	86 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
			YUV422,Raw16	65 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
		500 x 500	Mono8,Raw8	99 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
			RGB8	43 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
			Mono8	99 fps	2x H+V-sub-sampling
			Mono12	99 fps	2x H+V-sub-sampling
			Mono16	99 fps	2x H+V-sub-sampling
		500 x 500	YUV411	99 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
			YUV422,Raw16	99 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
		500 x 500	Mono8,Raw8	99 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
			RGB8	86 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling

Table 78: Video Format\_7 default modes Pike F-100B / F-100C

## PIKE F-145B / PIKE F-145C (-15 fps\*\*)

\*\*Pike F-145-15fps cameras have frame rates up to 15 fps only (except color cameras Format\_0 Mode\_1: up to 30 fps).

Format	Mode	Resolution	Color mode	240 fps	120 fps	60 fps	30 fps	15 fps	7.5 fps	3.75 fps	1.875 fps
0	0	160 x 120	YUV444								
	1	320 x 240	YUV422			x	x	x	x	x	x
	2	640 x 480	YUV411				x	x	x	x	x
	3	640 x 480	YUV422				x	x	x	x	x
	4	640 x 480	RGB8				x	x	x	x	x
	5	640 x 480	Mono8				xx	xx	xx	xx	xx
	6	640 x 480	Mono16				x	x	x	x	x
1	0	800 x 600	YUV422				x	x	x	x	
	1	800 x 600	RGB8				x	x	x		
	2	800 x 600	Mono8				xx	xx	xx		
	3	1024 x 768	YUV422				x	x	x	x	x
	4	1024 x 768	RGB8					x	x	x	x
	5	1024 x 768	Mono8				xx	xx	xx	xx	xx
	6	800 x 600	Mono16				x	x	x	x	
	7	1024 x 768	Mono16				x	x	x	x	x
2	0	1280 x 960	YUV422					x	x	x	x
	1	1280 x 960	RGB8					x	x	x	x
	2	1280 x 960	Mono 8				xx	xx	xx	xx	xx
	3	1600 x 1200	YUV422								
	4	1600 x 1200	RGB8								
	5	1600 x 1200	Mono8								
	6	1280 x 960	Mono16					x	x	x	x
	7	1600 x 1200	Mono16								

Table 79: Video fixed formats Pike F-145B / F-145C



Frame rates with shading are only achievable with 1394b (S800).

**Note**

The following Format\_7 tables show **default Format\_7 modes** without Format\_7 mode mapping.



- see [Figure 102: Mapping of possible Format\\_7 modes to F7M1...F7M7](#) on page 172
- see [Chapter Format\\_7 mode mapping](#) on page 351

	<b>Format Mode</b>	<b>Resolution</b>	<b>Color mode</b>	<b>Maximal S800 frame rates for Format_7 modes</b>	
7	0	1388 x 1038	Mono8 Mono12 Mono16 <b>YUV411</b> YUV422,Raw16 Mono8,Raw8 Raw12 RGB8	30 (16*) fps 30 (16*) fps 23 (16*) fps <b>30 (16*) fps</b> 23 (16*) fps 30 (16*) fps 30 (16*) fps 15 (15*) fps	
	1	692 x 1038	Mono8 Mono12 Mono16	30 (16*) fps 30 (16*) fps 30 (16*) fps	2x H-binning 2x H-binning 2x H-binning
	2	1388 x 518	Mono8 Mono12 Mono16	51 (27*) fps 51 (27*) fps 45 (27*) fps	2x V-binning 2x V-binning 2x V-binning
	3	692 x 518	Mono8 Mono12 Mono16	51 (27*) fps 51 (27*) fps 51 (27*) fps	2x H+V binning 2x H+V binning 2x H+V binning
	4	692 x 1038	Mono8 Mono12 Mono16 <b>YUV411</b> YUV422,Raw16 Mono8,Raw8 Raw12 RGB8	30 (16*) fps 30 (16*) fps 30 (16*) fps <b>30 (16*) fps</b> 30 (16*) fps 30 (16*) fps 37 (16*) fps 30 (16*) fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling 2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling 2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling <b>2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling</b> 2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling 2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling 2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling 2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
	5#	1388 x 518	Mono8 Mono12 Mono16 <b>YUV411</b> YUV422,Raw16 Mono8,Raw8 Raw12 RGB8	30 (16*) fps 30 (16*) fps 23 (16*) fps <b>30 (16*) fps</b> 23 (16*) fps 30 (16*) fps 37 (20*) fps 15 (15*) fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling 2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling 2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling <b>2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling</b> 2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling 2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling 2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling 2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
	6#	692 x 518	Mono8 Mono12 Mono16 <b>YUV411</b> YUV422,Raw16 Mono8,Raw8 Raw12 RGB8	30 (16*) fps 30 (16*) fps 30 (16*) fps <b>30 (16*) fps</b> 30 (16*) fps 30 (16*) fps 37 (20*) fps 30 (16*) fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling 2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling 2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling <b>2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling</b> 2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling 2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling 2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling 2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling

Table 80: Video Format\_7 default modes Pike F-145B / F-145C

#: Vertical sub-sampling is done via concealing certain lines, so the frame rate is not frame rate = f (AOI height)  
but  
frame rate = f (2 x AOI height)

\*\* applying to -15fps variant only

## PIKE F-210B / PIKE F-210C

Format	Mode	Resolution	Color mode	240 fps	120 fps	60 fps	30 fps	15 fps	7.5 fps	3.75 fps	1.875 fps
0	0	160 x 120	YUV444								
	1	320 x 240	YUV422		x	x	x	x	x	x	x
	2	640 x 480	YUV411			x	x	x	x	x	x
	3	640 x 480	YUV422			x	x	x	x	x	x
	4	640 x 480	RGB8			x	x	x	x	x	x
	5	640 x 480	Mono 8			xx	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx
	6	640 x 480	Mono 16			x	x	x	x	x	x
1	0	800 x 600	YUV422			x	x	x	x	x	x
	1	800 x 600	RGB8			x	x	x	x	x	x
	2	800 x 600	Mono8			xx	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx
	3	1024 x 768	YUV422			x	x	x	x	x	x
	4	1024 x 768	RGB8				x	x	x	x	x
	5	1024 x 768	Mono 8			xx	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx
	6	800 x 600	Mono16			x	x	x	x	x	x
	7	1024 x 768	Mono16			x	x	x	x	x	x
2	0	1280 x 960	YUV422				x	x	x	x	x
	1	1280 x 960	RGB8				x	x	x	x	x
	2	1280 x 960	Mono 8			xx	xx	xx	xx	xx	xx
	3	1600 x 1200	YUV422								
	4	1600 x 1200	RGB8								
	5	1600 x 1200	Mono8								
	6	1280 x 960	Mono16				x	x	x	x	x
	7	1600 x 1200	Mono16								

Table 81: Video fixed formats Pike F-210B / F-210C

 Frame rates with shading are only achievable with 1394b (S800).

**Note**

The following Format\_7 tables show **default Format\_7 modes** without Format\_7 mode mapping.



- see [Figure 102: Mapping of possible Format\\_7 modes to F7M1...F7M7](#) on page 172
- see [Chapter Format\\_7 mode mapping](#) on page 351

	<b>Format</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Resolution</b>	<b>Color mode</b>	<b>Maximal S800 frame rates for Format_7 modes</b>		
7	0	1920 x 1080	1920 x 1080	Mono8	31 fps		
				Mono12	21 fps		
	1	960 x 1080		Mono16	16 fps		
				YUV411	21 fps		
				YUV422,Raw16	16 fps		
				Mono8,Raw8	31 fps		
				RGB8	11 fps		
				Mono8	32 fps	2x H-binning	
				Mono12	32 fps	2x H-binning	
				Mono16	31 fps	2x H-binning	
	2	1920 x 540		Mono8	52 fps	2x V-binning	
				Mono12	42 fps	2x V-binning	
				Mono16	31 fps	2x V-binning	
	3	960 x 540		Mono8	52 fps	2x H+V binning	
				Mono12	52 fps	2x H+V binning	
				Mono16	52 fps	2x H+V binning	
	4	960 x 1080		Mono8	32 fps	2x H-sub-sampling	
				Mono12	32 fps	2x H-sub-sampling	
				Mono16	31 fps	2x H-sub-sampling	
				YUV411	32 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
				YUV422,Raw16	31 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
				Mono8,Raw8	32 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
				RGB8	21 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
				Mono8	31 fps	2x V-sub-sampling	
	5 <sup>#</sup>	1920 x 540		Mono12	21 fps	2x V-sub-sampling	
				Mono16	16 fps	2x V-sub-sampling	
				YUV411	21 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
				YUV422,Raw16	16 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
				Mono8,Raw8	31 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
				RGB8	11 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
				Mono8	32 fps	2x H+V sub-sampling	
				Mono12	32 fps	2x H+V sub-sampling	
	6 <sup>#</sup>	960 x 540		Mono16	31 fps	2x H+V sub-sampling	
				YUV411	32 fps	2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling	
				YUV422,Raw16	31 fps	2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling	
				Mono8,Raw8	32 fps	2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling	
				RGB8	21 fps	2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling	

Table 82: Video Format\_7 default modes Pike F-210B / F-210C

#: Vertical sub-sampling is done via concealing certain lines, so the frame rate is not

$$\text{frame rate} = f \text{ (AOI height)}$$

but

$$\text{frame rate} = f (2 \times \text{AOI height})$$

## PIKE F-421B / PIKE F-421C

Format	Mode	Resolution	Color Mode	240 fps	120 fps	60 fps	30 fps	15 fps	7.5 fps	3.75 fps	1.875 fps
0	0	160 x 120	YUV444								
	1	320 x 240	YUV422				X	X	X	X	X
	2	640 x 480	YUV411				X	X	X	X	X
	3	640 x 480	YUV422				X	X	X	X	X
	4	640 x 480	RGB8				X	X	X	X	X
	5	640 x 480	Mono8				XX	XX	XX	XX	XX
	6	640 x 480	Mono16				X	X	X	X	X
1	0	800 x 600	YUV422				X	X	X	X	
	1	800 x 600	RGB8				X	X	X		
	2	800 x 600	Mono8				XX	XX	XX		
	3	1024 x 768	YUV422				X	X	X	X	X
	4	1024 x 768	RGB8				X	X	X	X	X
	5	1024 x 768	Mono8				XX	XX	XX	XX	XX
	6	800 x 600	Mono16				X	X	X	X	
	7	1024 x 768	Mono16				X	X	X	X	X
2	0	1280 x 960	YUV422					X	X	X	X
	1	1280 x 960	RGB8					X	X	X	X
	2	1280 x 960	Mono8					XX	XX	XX	XX
	3	1600 x 1200	YUV422					X	X	X	X
	4	1600 x 1200	RGB8					X	X	X	X
	5	1600 x 1200	Mono8					XX	XX	XX	XX
	6	1280 x 960	Mono16					X	X	X	X
	7	1600 x 1200	Mono16					X	X	X	X

Table 83: Video fixed formats Pike F-421B / F-421C



Frame rates with shading are only achievable with 1394b (S800).

### Note

The following Format\_7 tables show **default Format\_7 modes** without Format\_7 mode mapping.



- see [Figure 102: Mapping of possible Format\\_7 modes to F7M1...F7M7](#) on page 172
- see [Chapter Format\\_7 mode mapping](#) on page 351

	<b>Format Mode</b>	<b>Resolution</b>	<b>Color Mode</b>	<b>Maximal S800 frame rates for Format_7 modes</b>	
7	0	2048 x 2048	Mono8	16 fps	
			Mono12	10 fps	
	2048 x 2048		Mono16	8 fps	
			YUV411	10 fps	
			YUV422,Raw16	8 fps	
			Mono8,Raw8	16 fps	
			RGB8	5 fps	
	1	1024 x 2048	Mono8	16 fps	2x H-binning
			Mono12	16 fps	2x H-binning
			Mono16	16 fps	2x H-binning
	2	2048 x 1024	Mono8	29 fps	2x V-binning
			Mono12	21 fps	2x V-binning
			Mono16	16 fps	2x V-binning
	3	1024 x 1024	Mono8	29 fps	2x H+V binning
			Mono12	29 fps	2x H+V binning
			Mono16	29 fps	2x H+V binning
	4	1024 x 2048	Mono8	16 fps	2x H-sub-sampling
			Mono12	16 fps	2x H-sub-sampling
			Mono16	16 fps	2x H-sub-sampling
		1024 x 2048	YUV411	16 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
			YUV422,Raw16	16 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
			Mono8,Raw8	16 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
			RGB8	10 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
	5	2048 x 1024	Mono8	29 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
			Mono12	21 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
			Mono16	16 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
		2048 x 1024	YUV411	29 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
			YUV422,Raw16	21 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
			Mono8,Raw8	29 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
			RGB8	10 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
	6	1024 x 1024	Mono8	29 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
			Mono12	29 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
			Mono16	29 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
		1024 x 1024	YUV411	29 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
			YUV422,Raw16	29 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
			Mono8,Raw8	29 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
			RGB8	21 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling

Table 84: Video Format\_7 default modes Pike F-421B / F-421C

## PIKE F-505B / PIKE F-505C

Format	Mode	Resolution	Color mode	240 fps	120 fps	60 fps	30 fps	15 fps	7.5 fps	3.75 fps	1.875 fps
0	0	160 x 120	YUV444								
	1	320 x 240	YUV422				x	x	x	x	x
	2	640 x 480	YUV411				x	x	x	x	x
	3	640 x 480	YUV422				x	x	x	x	x
	4	640 x 480	RGB8				x	x	x	x	x
	5	640 x 480	Mono8				xx	xx	xx	xx	xx
	6	640 x 480	Mono16				x	x	x	x	x
1	0	800 x 600	YUV422					x	x	x	
	1	800 x 600	RGB8					x	x		
	2	800 x 600	Mono8					xx	xx		
	3	1024 x 768	YUV422					x	x	x	x
	4	1024 x 768	RGB8					x	x	x	x
	5	1024 x 768	Mono8					xx	xx	xx	xx
	6	800 x 600	Mono16					x	x	x	
	7	1024 x 768	Mono16					x	x	x	x
2	0	1280 x 960	YUV422					x	x	x	x
	1	1280 x 960	RGB8					x	x	x	x
	2	1280 x 960	Mono 8					xx	xx	xx	xx
	3	1600 x 1200	YUV422					x	x	x	x
	4	1600 x 1200	RGB8					x	x	x	x
	5	1600 x 1200	Mono8					xx	xx	xx	xx
	6	1280 x 960	Mono16					x	x	x	x
	7	1600 x 1200	Mono16					x	x	x	x

Table 85: Video fixed formats Pike F-505B / F-505C



Frame rates with shading are only achievable with 1394b (S800).

**Note**

The following Format\_7 tables show **default Format\_7 modes** without Format\_7 mode mapping.



- see [Figure 102: Mapping of possible Format\\_7 modes to F7M1...F7M7](#) on page 172
- see [Chapter Format\\_7 mode mapping](#) on page 351

	<b>Format</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Resolution</b>	<b>Color mode</b>	<b>Maximal S800 frame rates for Format_7 modes</b>	
7	0	2452 x 2054	2452 x 2054	Mono8	13 fps	
				Mono12	09 fps	
				Mono16	07 fps	
				YUV411	09 fps	
				YUV422,Raw16	07 fps	
				Mono8,Raw8	13 fps	
				RGB8	04 fps	
				Raw12	09 fps	
	1	1224 x 2054		Mono8	15 fps	2x H-binning
				Mono12	15 fps	2x H-binning
				Mono16	13 fps	2x H-binning
	2	2452 x 1026		Mono8	22 fps	2x V-binning
				Mono12	17 fps	2x V-binning
				Mono16	13 fps	2x V-binning
	3	1224 x 1026		Mono8	22 fps	2x H+V binning
				Mono12	22 fps	2x H+V binning
				Mono16	22 fps	2x H+V binning
	4	1224 x 2054	1224 x 2054	Mono8	15 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
				Mono12	15 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
				Mono16	13 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
				YUV411	15 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
				YUV422,Raw16	13 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
				Mono8,Raw8	15 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
				RGB8	09 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
				Raw12	15 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
	5	2452 x 1026	2452 x 1026	Mono8	22 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
				Mono12	17 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
				Mono16	13 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
				YUV411	17 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
				YUV422,Raw16	13 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
				Mono8,Raw8	22 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
				RGB8	09 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
				Raw12	17 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
	6	1224 x 1026	1224 x 1026	Mono8	22 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
				Mono12	22 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
				Mono16	22 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
				YUV411	22 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
				YUV422,Raw16	22 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
				Mono8,Raw8	22 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
				RGB8	17 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
				Raw12	22 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling

Table 86: Video Format\_7 default modes Pike F-505B / F-505C

## PIKE F-1100B / PIKE F-1100C

Format	Mode	Resolution	Color mode	240 fps	120 fps	60 fps	30 fps	15 fps	7.5 fps	3.75 fps	1.875 fps
0	0	160 x 120	YUV444								
	1	320 x 240	YUV422					x*	x	x	x
	2	640 x 480	YUV411					x*	x	x	x
	3	640 x 480	YUV422					x*	x	x	x
	4	640 x 480	RGB8					x*	x	x	x
	5	640 x 480	Mono8					x* x*	x x	x x	x x
	6	640 x 480	Mono16					x*	x	x	
1	0	800 x 600	YUV422						x	x	
	1	800 x 600	RGB8						x		
	2	800 x 600	Mono8						x x		
	3	1024 x 768	YUV422						x*	x	x
	4	1024 x 768	RGB8						x*	x	x
	5	1024 x 768	Mono8						x* x*	x x	x x
	6	800 x 600	Mono16						x	x	
	7	1024 x 768	Mono16						x*	x	x
2	0	1280 x 960	YUV422						x*	x	x
	1	1280 x 960	RGB8						x*	x	x
	2	1280 x 960	Mono 8						x* x*	x x	x x
	3	1600 x 1200	YUV422						x*	x	x
	4	1600 x 1200	RGB8						x*	x	x
	5	1600 x 1200	Mono8						x* x*	x x	x x
	6	1280 x 960	Mono16						x*	x	x
	7	1600 x 1200	Mono16						x*	x	x

Table 87: Video fixed formats Pike F-1100B / F-1100C

 x\* x\*

Frame rates with asterisk \* are only achievable in dual-tap mode.

**Note**

The following Format\_7 tables show **default Format\_7 modes** without Format\_7 mode mapping.



- see [Figure 102: Mapping of possible Format\\_7 modes to F7M1...F7M7](#) on page 172
- see [Chapter Format\\_7 mode mapping](#) on page 351

	<b>Format</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Resolution</b>	<b>Color mode</b>	<b>Maximal S800 frame rates for Format_7 modes</b>	
7	0	4008 x 2672	Mono8	4.9 fps		
			Mono12	4.9 fps		
			Mono16	4.1 fps		
			YUV411	4.9 fps		
			YUV422,Raw16	4.1 fps		
			Mono8,Raw8	4.9 fps		
			RGB8	2.7 fps		
			Raw12	4.9 fps		
	1	2004 x 2672	Mono8	4.9 fps	2x H-binning	
			Mono12	4.9 fps	2x H-binning	
			Mono16	4.9 fps	2x H-binning	
	2	4008 x 1336	Mono8	8.5 fps	2x V-binning	
			Mono12	8.5 fps	2x V-binning	
			Mono16	8.2 fps	2x V-binning	
	3	2004 x 1336	Mono8	8.5 fps	2x H+V binning	
			Mono12	8.5 fps	2x H+V binning	
			Mono16	8.5 fps	2x H+V binning	
	4	2004 x 2672	Mono8	3.5 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
			Mono12	3.5 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
			Mono16	3.5 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
			YUV411	3.5 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
			YUV422,Raw16	3.5 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
			Mono8,Raw8	3.5 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
			RGB8	3.5 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
			Raw12	3.5 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling	
	5	4008 x 1336	Mono8	3.5 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
			Mono12	3.5 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
			Mono16	3.5 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
			YUV411	3.5 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
			YUV422,Raw16	3.5 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
			Mono8,Raw8	3.5 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
			RGB8	2.7 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
			Raw12	3.5 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling	
	6	2004 x 1336	Mono8	6.3 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling	
			Mono12	6.3 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling	
			Mono16	6.3 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling	
			YUV411	6.3 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling	
			YUV422,Raw16	6.3 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling	
			Mono8,Raw8	6.3 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling	
			RGB8	6.3 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling	
			Raw12	6.3 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling	

Table 88: Video Format\_7 default modes Pike F-1100B / F-1100C [dual-tap, maxBPP=11000]

## PIKE F-1600B / PIKE F-1600C

Format	Mode	Resolution	Color mode	240 fps	120 fps	60 fps	30 fps	15 fps	7.5 fps	3.75 fps	1.875 fps
0	0	160 x 120	YUV444								
	1	320 x 240	YUV422								
	2	640 x 480	YUV411						X	X	X
	3	640 x 480	YUV422						X	X	X
	4	640 x 480	RGB8						X	X	X
	5	640 x 480	Mono8						X X	X X	X X
	6	640 x 480	Mono16						X	X	X
1	0	800 x 600	YUV422						X*	X	
	1	800 x 600	RGB8						X*		
	2	800 x 600	Mono8						X* X*		
	3	1024 x 768	YUV422						X*	X	X
	4	1024 x 768	RGB8						X*	X	X
	5	1024 x 768	Mono8						X* X*	X X	X X
	6	800 x 600	Mono16						X*	X	
	7	1024 x 768	Mono16						X*	X	X
2	0	1280 x 960	YUV422						X*	X	X
	1	1280 x 960	RGB8						X*	X	X
	2	1280 x 960	Mono 8						X* X*	X X	X X
	3	1600 x 1200	YUV422						X	X	
	4	1600 x 1200	RGB8						X	X	
	5	1600 x 1200	Mono8						X X	X X	
	6	1280 x 960	Mono16						X*	X	X
	7	1600 x 1200	Mono16						X	X	

Table 89: Video fixed formats Pike F-1600B / F-1600C



Frame rates with asterisk \* are only achievable in dual-tap mode.

**Note**

The following Format\_7 tables show **default Format\_7 modes** without Format\_7 mode mapping.



- see [Figure 102: Mapping of possible Format\\_7 modes to F7M1...F7M7](#) on page 172
- see [Chapter Format\\_7 mode mapping](#) on page 351

	<b>Format Mode</b>	<b>Resolution</b>	<b>Color mode</b>	<b>Maximal S800 frame rates for Format_7 modes</b>	
7	0	4872 x 3248  4872 x 3248	Mono8	3.1 fps	
			Mono12	3.1 fps	
			Mono16	2.7 fps	
			YUV411	3.1 fps	
			YUV422,Raw16	2.7 fps	
			Mono8,Raw8	3.1 fps	
			RGB8	1.8 fps	
			Raw12	3.1 fps	
	1	2436 x 3248	Mono8	3.1 fps	2x H-binning
			Mono12	3.1 fps	2x H-binning
			Mono16	3.1 fps	2x H-binning
	2	4872 x 1624	Mono8	5.5 fps	2x V-binning
			Mono12	5.5 fps	2x V-binning
			Mono16	5.5 fps	2x V-binning
	3	2436 x 1624	Mono8	5.3 fps	2x H+V binning
			Mono12	5.3 fps	2x H+V binning
			Mono16	5.3 fps	2x H+V binning
	4	2436 x 3248  2436 x 3248	Mono8	2.2 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
			Mono12	2.2 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
			Mono16	2.2 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
			YUV411	2.2 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
			YUV422,Raw16	2.2 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
			Mono8,Raw8	2.2 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
			RGB8	2.2 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
			Raw12	2.2 fps	2 out of 4 H-sub-sampling
	5	4872 x 1624  4872 x 1624	Mono8	4.0 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
			Mono12	4.0 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
			Mono16	4.0 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
			YUV411	4.0 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
			YUV422,Raw16	4.0 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
			Mono8,Raw8	4.0 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
			RGB8	3.7 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
			Raw12	4.0 fps	2 out of 4 V-sub-sampling
	6	2436 x 1624  2436 x 1624	Mono8	4.0 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
			Mono12	4.0 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
			Mono16	4.0 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
			YUV411	4.0 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
			YUV422,Raw16	4.0 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
			Mono8,Raw8	4.0 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
			RGB8	4.0 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling
			Raw12	4.0 fps	2 out of 4 H+V-sub-sampling

Table 90: Video Format\_7 default modes Pike F-1600B / F-1600C [dual-tap, maxBPP=11000]

## Area of interest (AOI)

The camera's image sensor has a defined resolution. This indicates the maximum number of lines and pixels per line that the recorded image may have.

However, often only a certain section of the entire image is of interest. The amount of data to be transferred can be decreased by limiting the image to a section when reading it out from the camera. At a lower vertical resolution the sensor can be read out faster and thus the frame rate is increased.

**Note** The setting of AOIs is supported only in video Format\_7.



While the size of the image read out for most other video formats and modes is fixed by the IIDC specification, thereby determining the highest possible frame rate, in Format\_7 mode the user can set the **upper left corner** and **width and height** of the section (area of interest = AOI) he is interested in to determine the size and thus the highest possible frame rate.

Setting the AOI is done in the IMAGE\_POSITION and IMAGE\_SIZE registers.

**Note** Pay attention to the increments entered in the UNIT\_SIZE\_INQ and UNIT\_POSITION\_INQ registers when configuring IMAGE\_POSITION and IMAGE\_SIZE.



AF\_AREA\_POSITION and AF\_AREA\_SIZE contain in the respective bits values for the column and line of the upper left corner and values for the width and height.

**Note** For more information see [Table 141: Format\\_7 control and status register](#) on page 312.



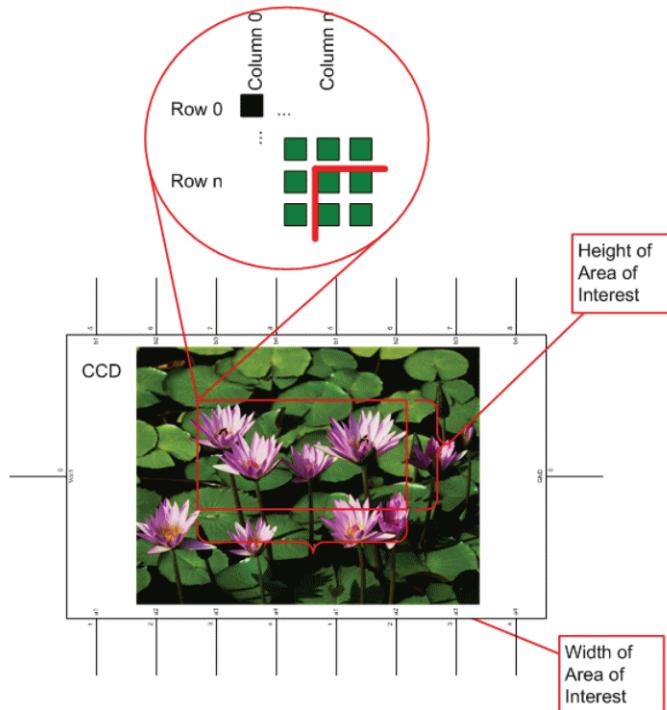


Figure 118: Area of interest (AOI)

**Note**

- The left position + width and the upper position + height may not exceed the maximum resolution of the sensor.
- The coordinates for width and height must be divisible by 4.

In addition to the AOI, some other parameters have an effect on the maximum frame rate:

- the time for reading the image from the sensor and transporting it into the FRAME\_BUFFER
- the time for transferring the image over the FireWire™ bus
- the length of the exposure time.

## Autofunction AOI

Use this feature to select the image area (work area) on which the following autofunctions work:

- Auto shutter
- Auto gain
- Auto white balance

In the following screenshot you can see an example of the autofunction AOI:

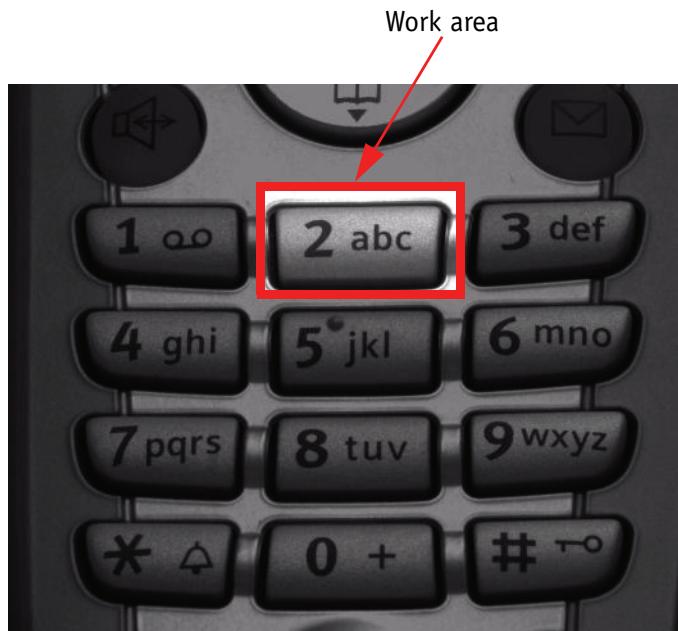


Figure 119: Example of autofunction AOI (*Show work area* is on)

**Note**



Autofunction AOI is independent from Format\_7 AOI settings.

If you switch off autofunction AOI, work area position and work area size follow the current active image size.

To switch off autofunctions, carry out following actions in the order shown:

1. Uncheck **Show AOI** check box (SmartView **Ctrl2** tab).
2. Uncheck **Enable** check box (SmartView **Ctrl2** tab).  
Switch off Auto modi (e.g. **Shutter** and/or **Gain**) (SmartView **Ctrl2** tab).

As a reference it uses a grid of up to 65534 sample points equally spread over the AOI.

**Note****Configuration**

To configure this feature in an advanced register see Chapter [Autofunction AOI](#) on page 338.

## Frame rates

An IEEE 1394 camera requires bandwidth to transport images.

The IEEE 1394b bus has very large bandwidth of at least 62.5 MByte/s for transferring (isochronously) image data. Per cycle up to 8192 bytes (or around 2000 quadlets = 4 bytes@ 800 Mbit/s) can thus be transmitted.

**Note**

 All bandwidth data is calculated with:

1 MByte = 1024 kByte



Depending on the video format settings and the configured frame rate, the camera requires a certain percentage of maximum available bandwidth. Clearly the bigger the image and the higher the frame rate, the more data is to be transmitted.

The following tables indicate the volume of data in various formats and modes to be sent within one cycle (125 µs) at 800 Mbit/s of bandwidth.

The tables are divided into three formats:

Format	Resolution	max. Video Format
Format_0	up to VGA	640 x 480
Format_1	up to XGA	1024 x 768
Format_2	up to UXGA	1600 x 1200

Table 91: Overview fixed formats

They enable you to calculate the required bandwidth and to ascertain the number of cameras that can be operated independently on a bus and in which mode.

Format Mode	Resolution	240 fps	120 fps	60 fps	30 fps	15 fps	7.5 fps	3.75 fps
0	0 160 x 120 YUV (4:4:4) 24 bit/pixel	4H 640p 480q	2H 320p 240q	1H 160p 120q	1/2H 80p 60q	1/4H 40p 30q	1/8H 20p 15q	
	1 320 x 240 YUV (4:2:2) 16 bit/pixel	8H 2560p 1280q	4H 1280p 640q	2H 640p 320q	1H 320p 160q	1/2H 160p 80q	1/4H 80p 40q	1/8H 40p 20q
	2 640 x 480 YUV (4:1:1) 12 bit/pixel		8H 5120p 1920q	4H 2560p 960q	2H 1280p 480q	1H 640p 240q	1/2H 320p 120q	1/4H 160p 60q
	3 640 x 480 YUV (4:2:2) 16 bit/pixel			4H 2560p 1280q	2H 1280p 640q	1H 640p 320q	1/2H 320p 160q	1/4H 160p 80q
	4 640 x 480 RGB 24 bit/pixel			4H 2560p 1280q	2H 1280p 960q	1H 640p 480q	1/2H 320p 240q	1/4H 160p 120q
	5 640 x 480 (Mono8) 8 bit/pixel		8H 5120p 1280q	4H 2560p 640q	2H 1280p 320q	1H 640p 160q	1/2H 320p 80q	1/4H 160 p40q
	6 640 x 480 Y (Mono16) 16 Bit/pixel			4H 2560p 1280q	2H 1280p 640q	1H 640p 320q	1/2H 320p 160q	1/4H 160p 80q
	7 Reserved							

Table 92: Format\_0

As an example, VGA Mono8 @ 60 fps requires four lines ( $640 \times 4 = 2560$  pixels/byte) to transmit every 125 µs: this is a consequence of the sensor's line time of about 30 µs, so that no data needs to be stored temporarily.

It takes 120 cycles ( $120 \times 125 \mu s = 15$  ms) to transmit one frame, which arrives every 16.6 ms from the camera. Again no data need to be stored temporarily.

Thus around 64% of the available bandwidth (at S400) is used. Thus one camera can be connected to the bus at S400.

The same camera, run at S800 would require only 32% of the available bandwidth, due to the doubled speed. Thus up to three cameras can be connected to the bus at S800.

Format	Mode	Resolution	240 fps	120 fps	60 fps	30 fps	15 fps	7.5 fps	3.75 fps	1.875 fps
1	0	800 x 600 YUV (4:2:2) 16 bit/pixel			5H 4000p 2000q	5/2H 2000p 1000q	5/4H 1000p 500q	5/8H 500p 250q	6/16H 250p 125q	
	1	800 x 600 RGB 24 bit/pixel				5/2H 2000p 1500q	5/4H 1000p 750q	5/8H 500p 375q		
	2	800 x 600 Y (Mono8) 8 bit/pixel		10H 8000p 2000q	5H 4000p 1000q	5/2H 2000p 500q	5/4H 1000p 250q	5/8H 500p 125q		
	3	1024 x 768 YUV (4:2:2) 16 bit/pixel				3H 3072p 1536q	3/2H 1536p 768q	3/4H 768p 384q	3/8H 384p 192q	3/16H 192p 96q
	4	1024 x 768 RGB 24 bit/pixel					3/2H 1536p 384q	3/4H 768p 576q	3/8H 384p 288q	3/16H 192p 144q
	5	1024 x 768 Y (Mono) 8 bit/pixel			6H 6144p 1536q	3H 3072p 768q	3/2H 1536p 384q	3/4H 768p 192q	3/8H 384p 96q	3/16H 192p 48q
	6	800 x 600 (Mono16) 16 bit/pixel			5H 4000p 2000q	5/2H 2000p 1000q	5/4H 1000p 500q	5/8H 500p 250q	5/16H 250p 125q	
	7	1024 x 768 Y (Mono16) 16 bit/pixel				3H 3072p 1536q	3/2H 1536p 768q	3/4H 768p 384q	3/8H 384p 192q	3/16H 192p 96q

Table 93: Format\_1

<b>Format</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Resolution</b>	<b>60 fps</b>	<b>30 fps</b>	<b>15 fps</b>	<b>7.5 fps</b>	<b>3.75 fps</b>	<b>1.875 fps</b>
2	0	1280 x 960 YUV (4:2:2) 16 bit/pixel			2H 2560p 1280q	1H 1280p 640q	1/2H 640p 320q	1/4H 320p 160q
	1	1280 x 960 RGB 24 bit/pixel			2H 2560p 1920q	1H 1280p 960q	1/2H 640p 480q	1/4H 320p 240q
	2	1280 x 960 Y (Mono8) 8 bit/pixel		4H 5120p 1280q	2H 2560p 640q	1H 1280p 320q	1/2H 640p 160q	1/4H 320p 80q
	3	1600 x 1200 YUV(4:2:2) 16 bit/pixel			5/2H 4000p 2000q	5/4H 2000p 1000q	5/8H 1000p 500q	5/16H 500p 250q
	4	1600 x 1200 RGB 24 bit/pixel				5/4H 2000p 1500q	5/8H 1000p 750q	5/16 500p 375q
	5	1600 x 1200 Y (Mono) 8 bit/pixel		5H 8000p 2000q	5/2H 4000p 1000q	5/4H 2000p 500q	5/8H 1000p 250q	5/16H 500p 125q
	6	1280 x 960 Y (Mono16) 16 bit/pixel			2H 2560p 1280q	1H 1280p 640q	1/2H 640p 320q	1/4H 320p 160q
	7	1600 x 1200Y(Mono16) 16 bit/pixel			5/2H 4000p 2000q	5/4H 2000p 1000q	5/8H 1000p 500q	5/16H 500p 250q

Table 94: Format\_2

As already mentioned, the recommended limit for transferring isochronous image data is 2000q (quadlets) per cycle or 8192 bytes (with 800 Mbit/s of bandwidth).

**Note**

- If the cameras are operated with an external trigger the maximum trigger frequency may not exceed the highest continuous frame rate, so preventing frames from being dropped or corrupted.
- IEEE 1394 adapter cards with PCI-Lynx™ chipsets (predecessor of OHCI) have a limit of 4000 bytes per cycle.

The frame rates in video modes 0 to 2 are specified and set fixed by IIDC V1.31.

## **Frame rates Format\_7**

In video Format\_7 frame rates are no longer fixed.

**Note**



- Different values apply for the different sensors.
- Frame rates may be further limited by longer shutter times and/or bandwidth limitation from the IEEE 1394 bus.

Details are described in the next chapters:

- Max. frame rate of CCD (theoretical formula)
- Diagram of frame rates as function of AOI by const. width: the curves describe RAW8, RAW12/YUV411, RAW16/YUV422, RGB8 and max. frame rate of CCD
- Table with max. frame rates as function of AOI by constant width

**Note**



CCD = theoretical max. frame rate (in fps) of CCD according to given formula

maxBPP= 8192 according to IIDC V1.31

maxBPP: for explanation and configuration see Chapter [Maximum ISO packet size](#) on page 344

## PIKE F-032: AOI frame rates

$$\text{max. frame rate of CCD} = \frac{1}{69.3\mu\text{s} + \text{AOI height} \times 9.81\mu\text{s} + (490 - \text{AOI height}) \times 0.81\mu\text{s}}$$

Formula 6: Pike F-032: theoretical max. frame rate of CCD

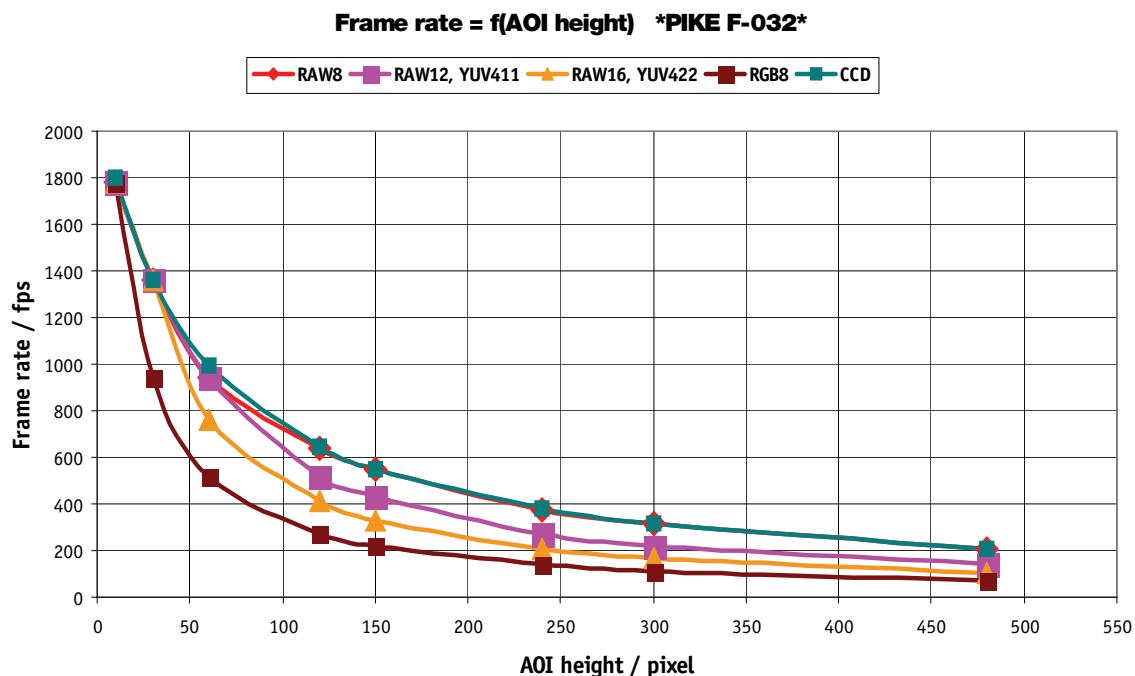


Figure 120: Frame rates Pike F-032 as function of AOI height [width=640]

AOI height	CCD	Raw8	Raw12	Raw16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
480	208.93	208	139	105	139	105	70
300	315.84	314	219	168	219	168	112
240	380.78	372	271	208	271	208	139
150	550.60	550	432	327	432	327	219
120	646.75	640	516	410	516	410	271
60	993.84	941	941	762	941	762	516
30	1358.33	1358	1358	1358	1358	1358	941
10	1797.91	1778	1778	1778	1778	1778	1778

Table 95: Frame rates (fps) of Pike F-032 as function of AOI height (pixel) [width=640]

## PIKE F-100: AOI frame rates

$$\text{max. frame rate of CCD} = \frac{1}{174\mu\text{s} + \text{AOI height} \times 16.40\mu\text{s} + (1008 - \text{AOI height}) \times 3.4\mu\text{s}}$$

Formula 7: Pike F-100: theoretical max. frame rate of CCD

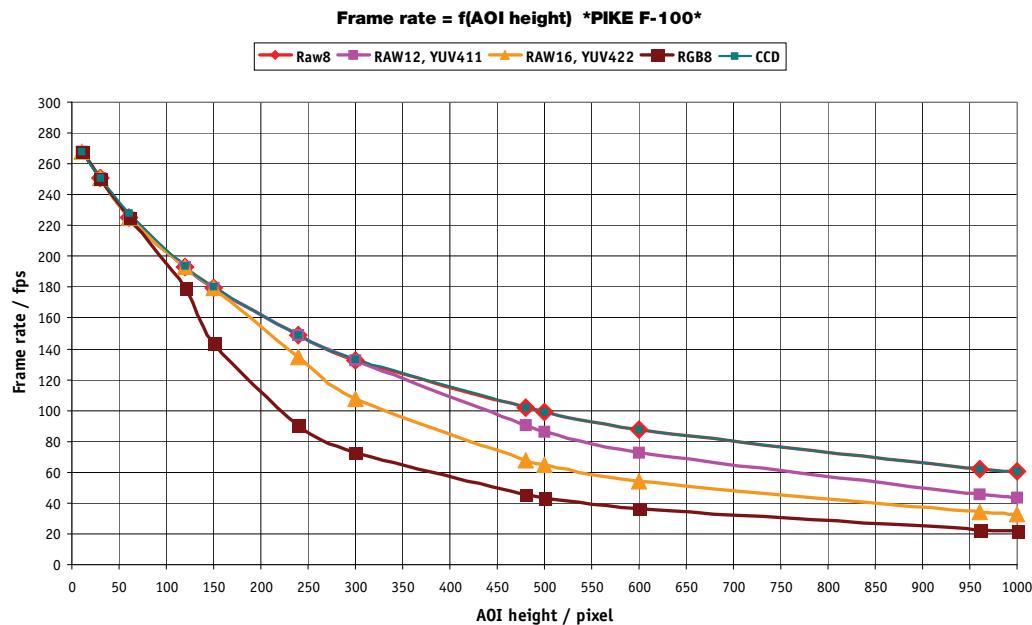


Figure 121: Frame rates Pike F-100 as function of AOI height [width=1000]

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
1000	60.24	60	43	33	43	33	22
960	62.18	62	45	34	45	34	23
600	87.71	87	72	54	72	54	36
500	99.00	99	86	65	86	65	43
480	101.61	101	90	68	90	68	45
300	133.31	132	132	107	132	107	72
240	148.78	148	148	134	148	134	90
150	180.14	180	180	180	180	180	144
120	193.75	193	193	193	193	193	180
60	228.25	225	225	225	225	225	225
30	250.55	250	250	250	250	250	250
10	268.01	268	268	268	268	268	268

Table 96: Frame rates (fps) of Pike F-100 as function of AOI height (pixel) [width=1000]

## PIKE F-145: AOI frame rates (no sub-sampling)

$$\text{max. frame rate of CCD} = \frac{1}{242\mu\text{s} + \text{AOI height} \times 31.80\mu\text{s} + (1051 - \text{AOI height}) \times 5.85\mu\text{s}}$$

Formula 8: Pike F-145: theoretical max. frame rate of CCD (**no sub-sampling**)

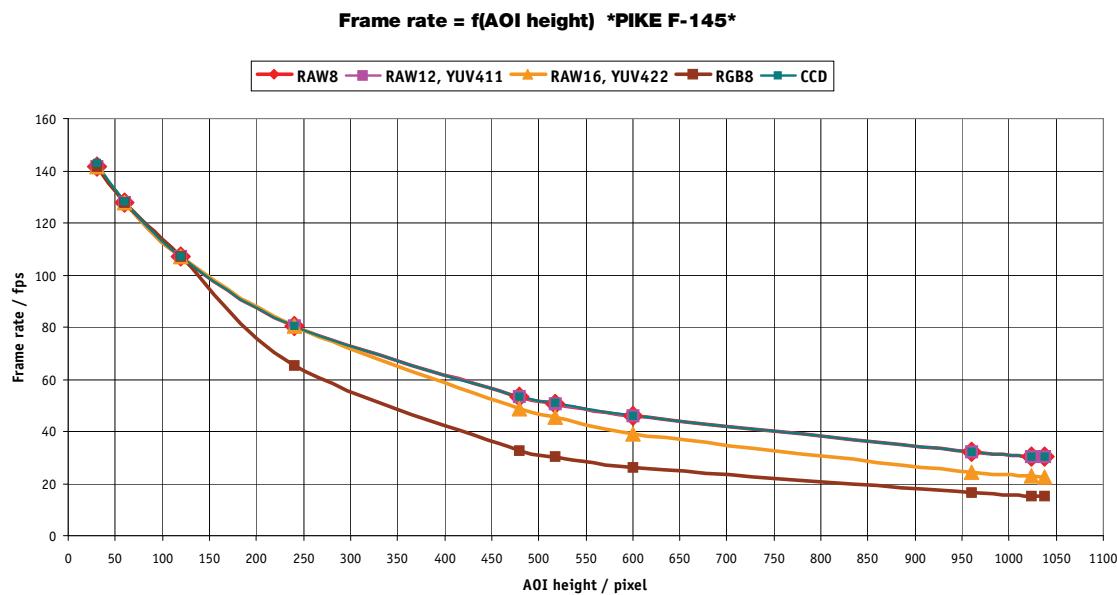


Figure 122: Frame rates Pike F-145 as function of AOI height [width=1388]

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
1038	30.01	30	30	23	30	23	15
1024	30.34	30	30	23	30	23	15
960	31.95	31	31	25	31	25	16
600	45.54	45	45	39	45	39	26
518	50.42	50	50	45	50	45	30
480	53.06	53	53	49	53	49	33
240	79.25	79	79	79	79	79	65
120	105.21	105	105	105	105	105	105
60	125.83	125	125	125	125	125	125
30	139.49	139	139	139	139	139	139

Table 97: Frame rates (fps) of Pike F-145 as function of AOI height (pixel) [width=1388]

## PIKE F-145: AOI frame rates (sub-sampling)

$$\text{max. frame rate of CCD} = \frac{1}{242\mu\text{s} + \text{AOI height} \times 1.5 \times 31.80\mu\text{s} + (1051 - \text{AOI height} \times 1.5) \times 5.85\mu\text{s}}$$

Formula 9: Pike F-145: theoretical max. frame rate of CCD (**sub-sampling**)

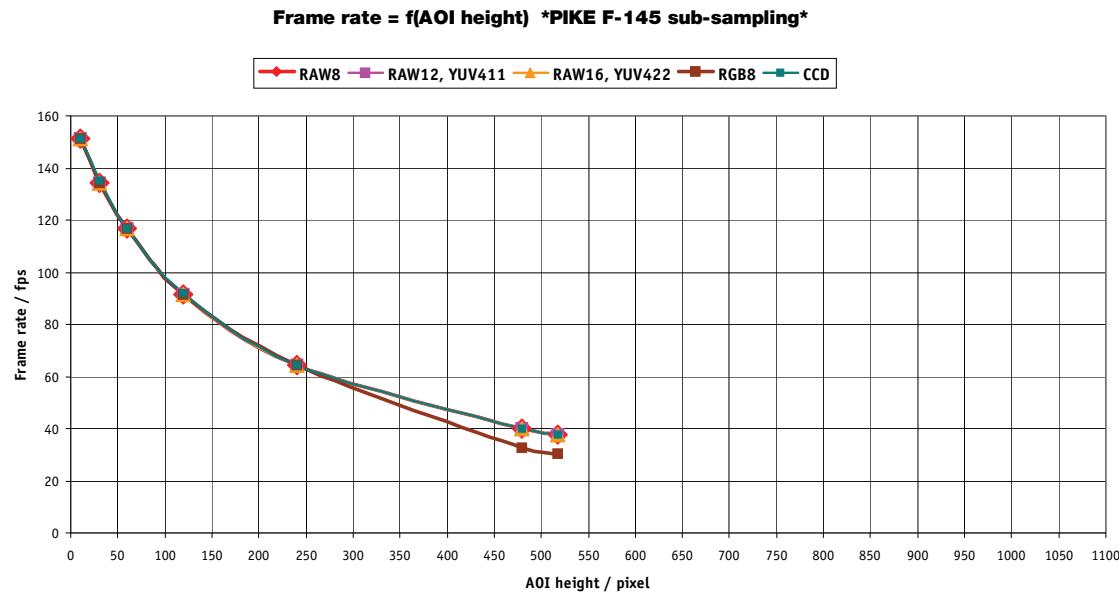


Figure 123: Frame rates Pike F-145 as function of AOI height [width=1388] (**sub-sampling**)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
518	37.66	37	37	37	37	37	30
480	39.88	39	39	39	39	39	33
240	63.56	63	63	63	63	63	63
120	90.40	90	90	90	90	90	90
60	114.60	114	114	114	114	114	114
30	132.31	132	132	132	132	132	132
10	147.50	147	147	147	147	147	147

Table 98: Frame rates (fps) Pike F-145 as function of AOI height (pixel) [width=1388] (**sub-sampl.**)

## PIKE F-145-15fps: AOI frame rates (no sub-sampl.)

$$\text{max. frame rate of CCD} = \frac{1}{450\mu\text{s} + \text{AOI height} \times 59.36\mu\text{s} + (1051 - \text{AOI height}) \times 10.92\mu\text{s}}$$

Formula 10: Pike F-145-15fps: theoretical max. frame rate of CCD (**no sub-sampling**)

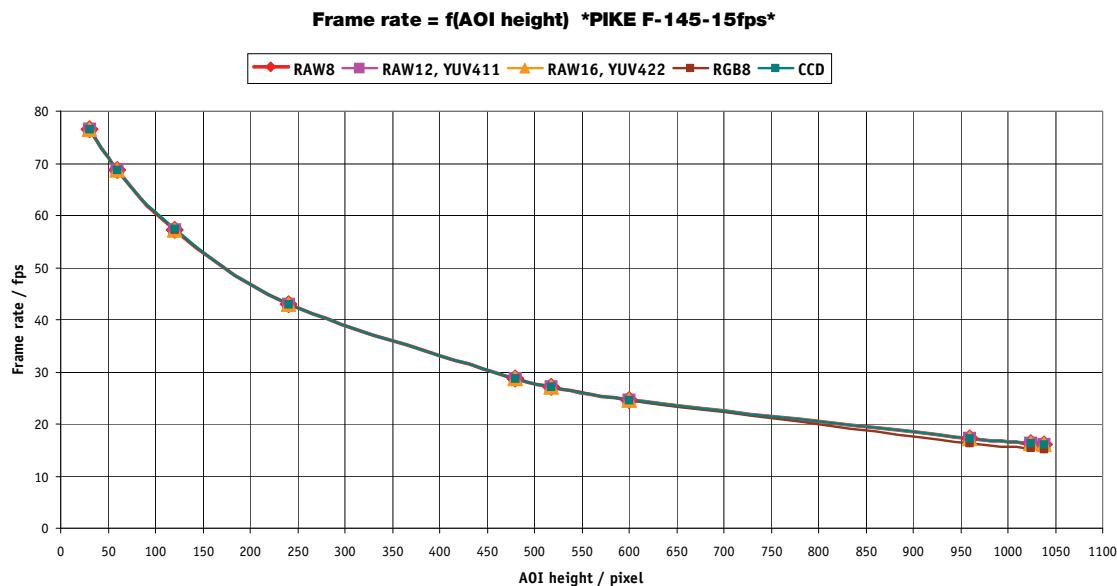


Figure 124: Frame rates Pike F-145-15fps as function of AOI height [width=1388]

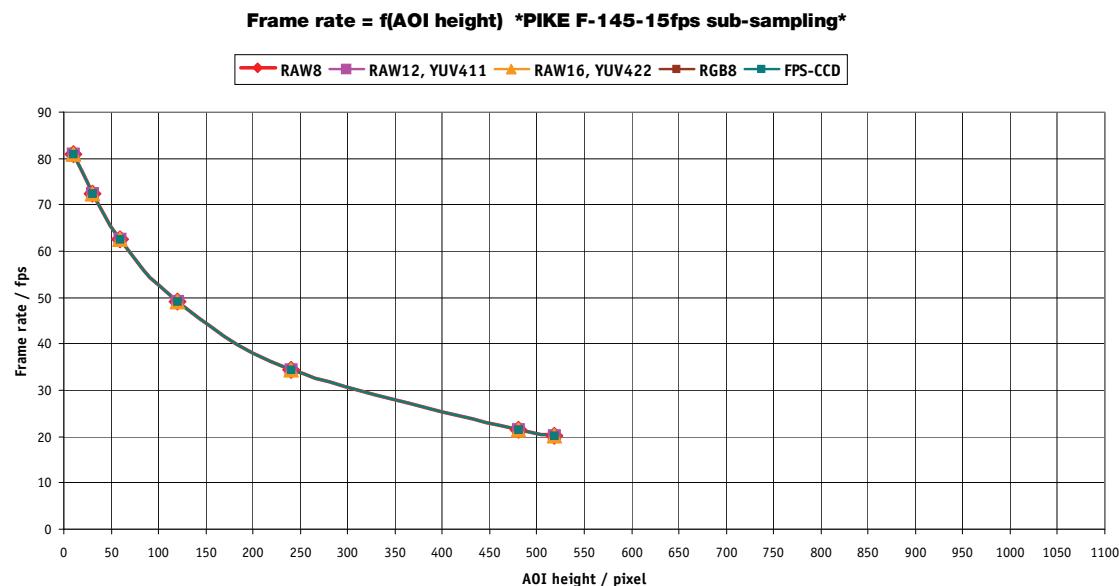
AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
1038	16.08	16	16	16	16	16	15
1024	16.25	16	16	16	16	16	15
960	17.11	17	17	17	17	17	16
600	24.40	24	24	24	24	24	24
518	27.01	27	27	27	27	27	27
480	28.43	28	28	28	28	28	28
240	42.46	42	42	42	42	42	42
120	56.37	56	56	56	56	56	56
60	67.42	67	67	67	67	67	67
30	74.74	74	74	74	74	74	74

Table 99: Frame rates (fps) of Pike F-145-15fps as function of AOI height (pixel) [width=1388]

## PIKE F-145-15fps: AOI frame rates (sub-sampl.)

$$\text{max. frame rate of CCD} = \frac{1}{450\mu\text{s} + \text{AOI height} \times 1.5 \times 59.36\mu\text{s} + (1051 - \text{AOI height} \times 1.5) \times 10.92\mu\text{s}}$$

Formula 11: Pike F-145-15fps: theoretical max. frame rate of CCD (sub-sampling)



Formula 12: Frame rates Pike F-145-15fps as function of AOI height [width=1388] (sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
518	20.18	20	20	20	20	20	20
480	21.37	21	21	21	21	21	21
240	34.05	34	34	34	34	34	34
120	48.44	48	48	48	48	48	48
60	61.40	61	61	61	61	61	61
30	70.89	70	70	70	70	70	70
10	79.03	79	79	79	79	79	79

Table 100: Frame rates of Pike F-145-15fps as function of AOI height [width=1388] (sub-sampl.)

## PIKE F-210: AOI frame rates (no sub-sampling)

$$\text{max. frame rate of CCD} = \frac{1}{107\mu\text{s} + \text{AOI height} \times 28.6\mu\text{s} + (1092 - \text{AOI height}) \times 6.75\mu\text{s}}$$

Formula 13: Pike F-210: theoretical max. frame rate of CCD (**no sub-sampling**)

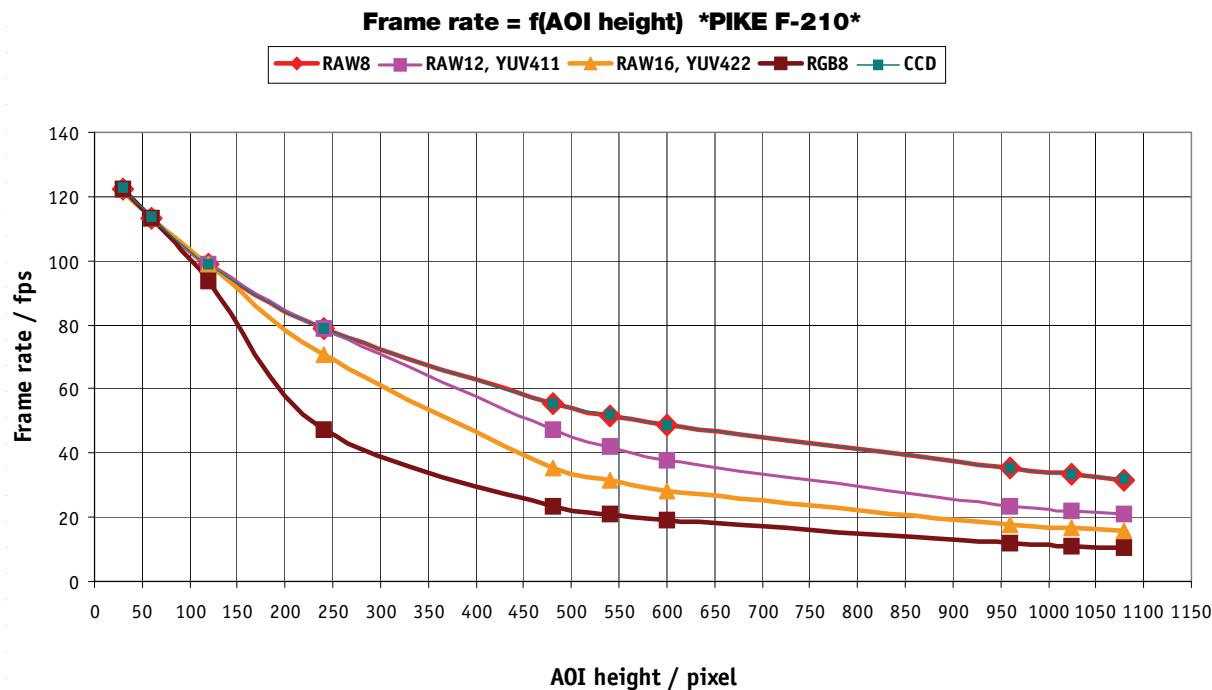


Table 101: Frame rates Pike F210 as function of AOI height [width=1000] (**no sub-sampling**)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
1080	32.18	31	21	16	21	16	11
1024	33.50	33	22	17	22	17	11
960	35.14	35	24	18	24	18	12
600	48.57	48	38	28	38	28	19
540	51.88	51	42	31	42	31	21
480	55.66	55	47	35	47	35	24
240	78.60	78	78	70	78	70	47
120	99.01	99	99	99	99	99	94
60	113.78	113	113	113	113	113	113
30	122.95	122	122	122	122	122	122

Table 102: Frame rates of Pike F-210 as function of AOI height [width=1000] (**no sub-sampling**)

## PIKE F-210: AOI frame rates (sub-sampling)

This camera does not support a speed increase with sub-sampling.

To calculate the achievable frame rates:

Multiply the current image height by the sub-sampling factor, e.g.

- x 2 for 2 out of 4
- x 4 for 2 out of 8
- x 8 for 2 out of 16

No sub-sampling	S u b - s a m p l i n g		
	2 out of 4	2 out of 8	2 out of 16
AOI height x 1	AOI height x 2	AOI height x 4	AOI height x 8
	At this mode, the camera is as fast as the camera with no sub-sampling and 2 x AOI height.	At this mode, the camera is as fast as the camera with no sub-sampling and 4 x AOI height.	At this mode, the camera is as fast as the camera with no sub-sampling and 8 x AOI height

Table 103: Frame rates for sub-sampling

## PIKE F-421: AOI frame rates

$$\text{max. frame rate of CCD} = \frac{1}{125.2\mu\text{s} + \text{AOI height} \times 30.10\mu\text{s} + (2072 - \text{AOI height}) \times 3.37\mu\text{s}}$$

Formula 14: Pike F-421: theoretical max. frame rate of CCD

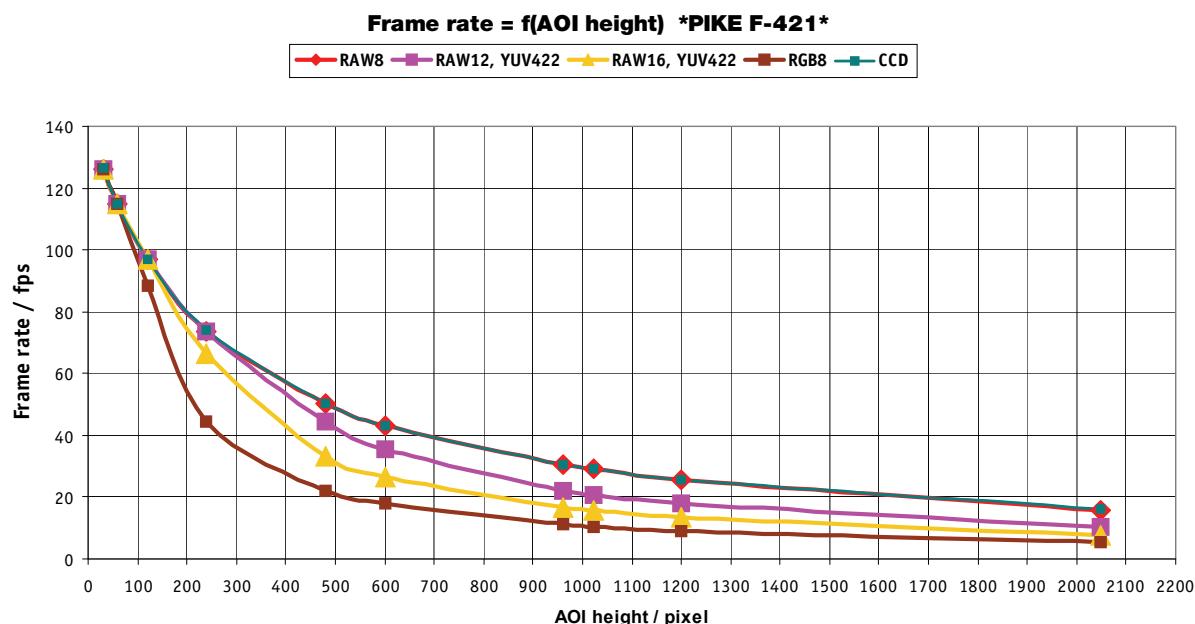


Table 104: Frame rates Pike F-421 as function of AOI height[width=2048]

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
2048	16.17	16	10	8	10	8	5
1200	25.52	25	18	13	18	13	9
1024	29.00	29	21	16	21	16	10
960	30.52	30	22	17	22	17	11
600	43.20	43	35	27	35	27	18
480	50.15	50	44	33	44	33	22
240	73.95	73	73	66	73	66	44
120	96.94	96	96	96	96	96	88
60	114.79	114	114	114	114	114	114
30	126.43	126	126	126	126	126	126

Table 105: Frame rates Pike F-421 as function of AOI height [width=2048]

## PIKE F-505: AOI frame rates

$$\text{max. frame rate of CCD} = \frac{1}{636\mu\text{s} + \text{AOI height} \times 33.10\mu\text{s} + (2069 - \text{AOI height}) \times 10.34\mu\text{s}}$$

Formula 15: Pike F-505: theoretical max. frame rate of CCD

### AOI frame rates with max. BPP = 8192

Frame rate = f(AOI height) \*PIKE F-505\* (max BPP = 8192)

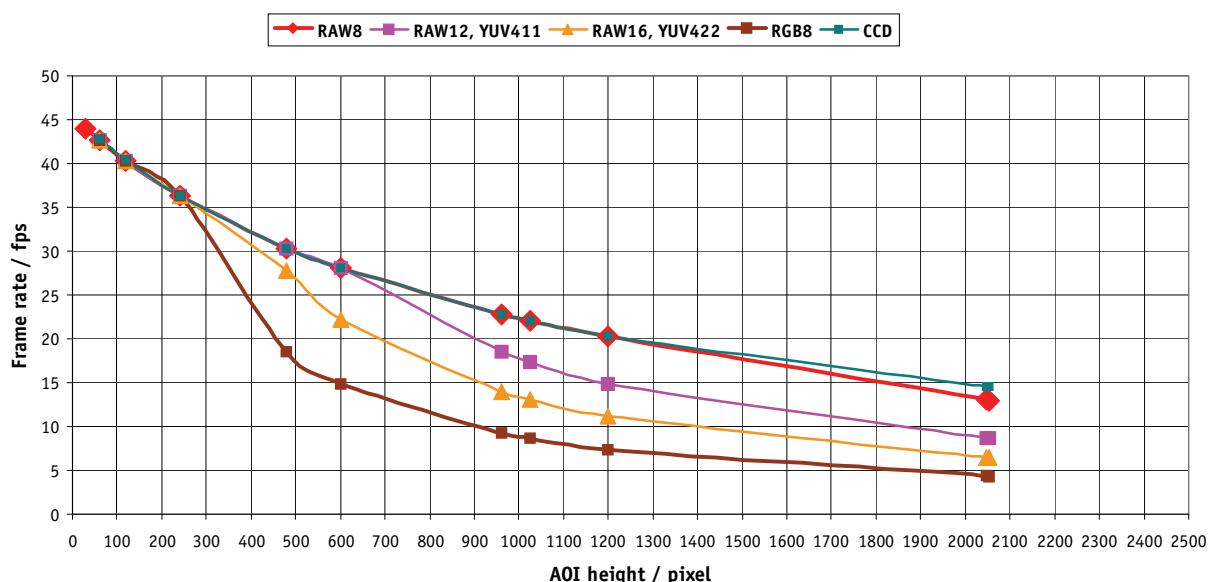


Figure 125: Frame rates Pike F-505 as function of AOI height [width=2452] (max BPP = 8192)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
2054	14.54	13	9	7	9	7	4
2048	14.57	13	9	7	9	7	4
1200	20.27	20	15	11	15	11	7
1024	22.06	22	17	13	17	13	9
960	22.79	22	18	14	18	14	9
600	28.02	28	28	22	28	22	15
480	30.35	30	30	28	30	28	18
240	36.37	36	36	36	36	36	36
120	40.39	40	40	40	40	40	40
60	42.74	42	42	42	42	42	42
30	44.03	44	44	44	44	44	44

Table 106: Frame rates Pike F-505 as function of AOI height (pixel) [width=2452] (maxBPP=8192)

### AOI frame rates with max. BPP = 11000

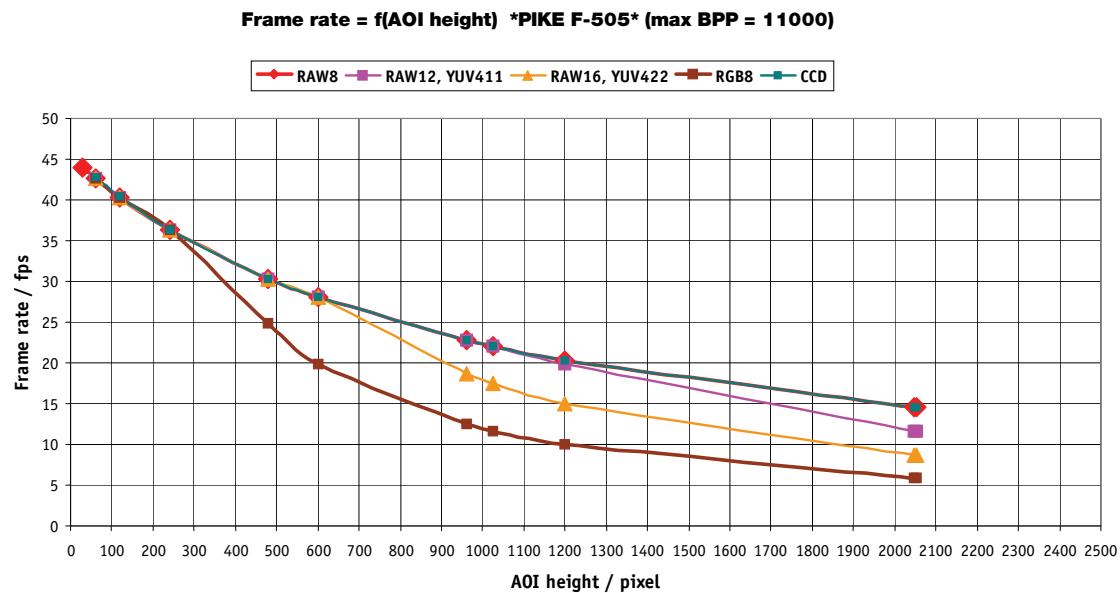


Figure 126: Frame rates **Pike F-505** as function of AOI height [width=2452] (max BPP = 11000)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
2054	14.54	14	12	9	12	9	6
2048	14.57	14	12	9	12	9	6
1200	20.27	20	20	15	20	15	10
1024	22.06	22	22	17	22	17	12
960	22.79	22	22	19	22	19	12
600	28.02	28	28	28	28	28	20
480	30.35	30	30	30	30	30	25
240	36.37	36	36	36	36	36	36
120	40.39	40	40	40	40	40	40
60	42.74	42	42	42	42	42	42
30	44.03	44	44	44	44	44	44

Table 107: Frame rates **Pike F-505** as function of AOI height [width=2452] (maxBPP=11000)

**Note**

CCD = theoretical max. frame rate (in fps) of CCD according to given formula



maxBPP: for explanation and configuration see Chapter [Maximum ISO packet size](#) on page 344

## PIKE F-1100: AOI frame rates

### Pike F-1100: frame rate formula single-tap

All frame rates are valid for AOI top = 0. For AOIs with different positions the values may differ very slightly (first position after decimal point).

$$\text{max. frame rate of CCD}_{\text{single-tap}} = \frac{1}{833.11\mu\text{s} + (\text{AOI height} \times 141.41\mu\text{s}) + (2721 - \text{AOI height}) \times 12\mu\text{s}}$$

Formula 16: Pike F-1100: theoretical max. frame rate CCD (maxBPP=8192, **single-tap**, no subsampl.)

### AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, **single-tap**, no sub-sampling

Frame rate = f(AOI height) \*PIKE F-1100\* (max BPP = 8192; single-tap; no sub-sampling)

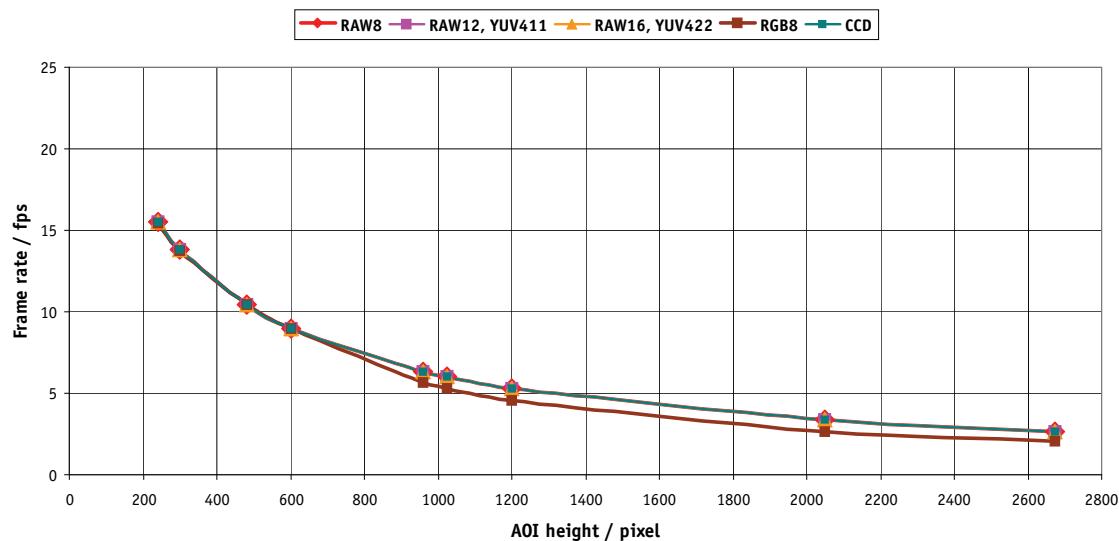


Figure 127: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (max BPP = 8192, single-tap, no sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
2672	2.636	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.0
2048	3.349	3.3	3.3	3.3	3.3	3.3	2.6
1200	5.297	5.2	5.2	5.2	5.2	5.2	4.5
1024	6.024	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	5.3
960	6.340	6.3	6.3	6.3	6.3	6.3	5.6
600	8.998	8.9	8.9	8.9	8.9	8.9	8.9
480	10.46	10.4	10.4	10.4	10.4	10.4	10.4
300	13.82	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.7	13.7	13.7
240	15.49	15.4	15.4	15.4	15.4	15.4	15.4

Table 108: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (max BPP = 8192, single-tap, no sub-sampling)

**AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, single-tap, sub-sampling**

Frame rate = f(AOI height) \*PIKE F-1100\* (max BPP = 8192; single-tap; sub-sampling)

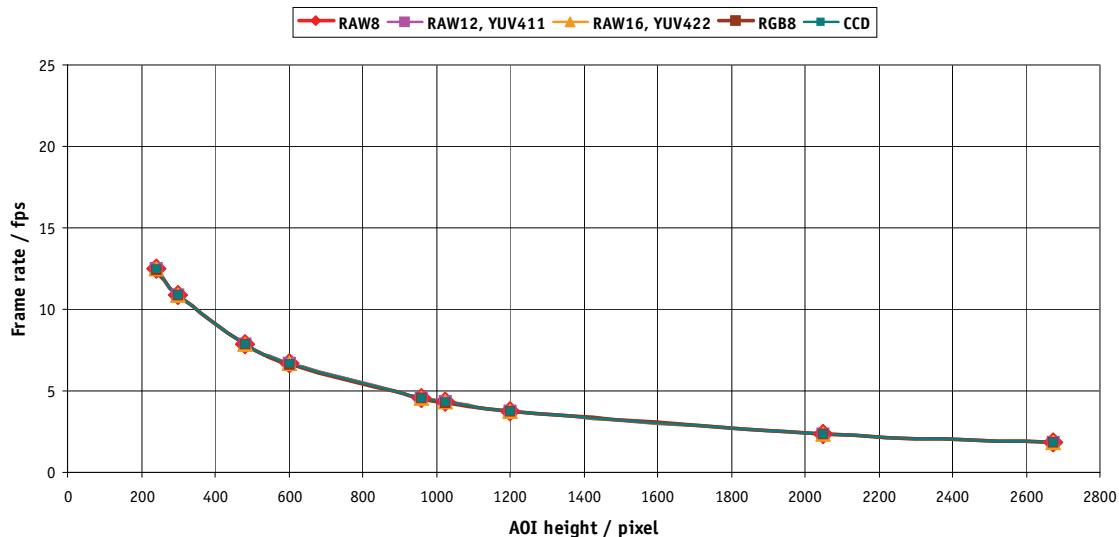


Figure 128: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (maxBPP=8192, single-tap, sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
2672	1.811	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8
2048	2.320	2.3	2.3	2.3	2.3	2.3	2.3
1200	3.753	3.7	3.7	3.7	3.7	3.7	3.7
1024	4.305	4.3	4.3	4.3	4.2	4.2	4.2
960	4.548	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5
600	6.668	6.6	6.6	6.6	6.6	6.6	6.6
480	7.895	7.8	7.8	7.8	7.8	7.8	7.8
300	10.90	10.9	10.9	10.9	10.8	10.8	10.8
240	12.48	12.4	12.4	12.4	12.4	12.4	12.4

Table 109: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (maxBPP=8192, single-tap, sub-sampling)

Note

CCD = theoretical max. frame rate (in fps) of CCD

maxBPP=8192 according to IIDC V1.31



### Pike F-1100: frame rate formula dual-tap

All frame rates are valid for AOI top = 0. For AOIs with different positions the values may differ very slightly (first position after decimal point).

$$\text{max. frame rate of CCD}_{\text{dual-tap}} = \frac{1}{518.13\mu\text{s} + (\text{AOI height} \times 74.85\mu\text{s}) + (2721 - \text{AOI height}) \times 12\mu\text{s}}$$

Formula 17: Pike F-1100: theoretical max. frame rate of CCD (maxBPP=8192, **dual-tap**, no subsampl.)

### AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, **dual-tap**, no sub-sampling

**Frame rate = f(AOI height) \*PIKE F-1100\* (max BPP = 8192; dual-tap; no sub-sampling)**

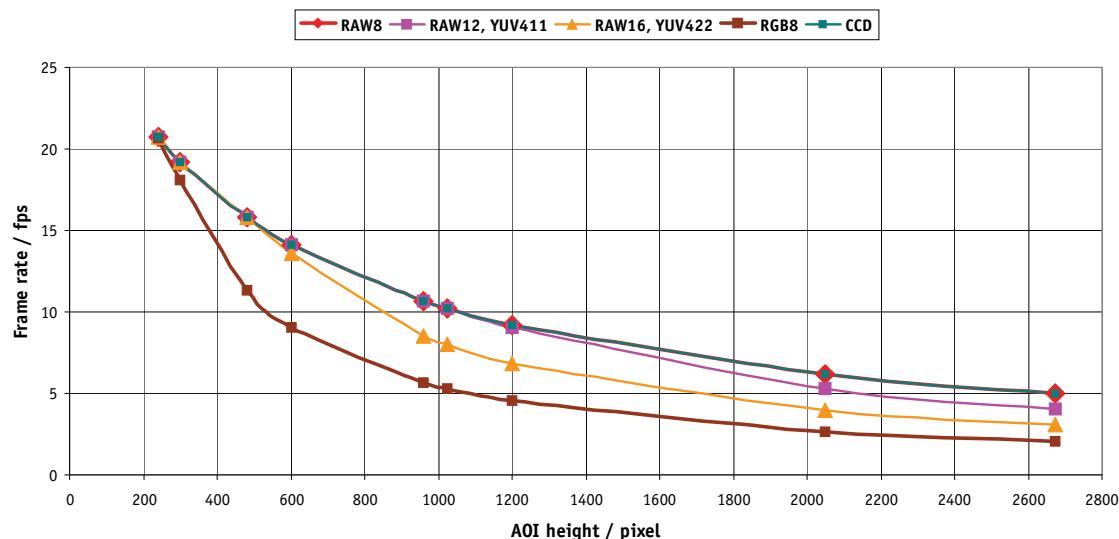


Figure 129: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (maxBPP=8192, dual-tap, no sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
2672	4.972	4.9	4.0	3.0	4.0	3.0	2.0
2048	6.177	6.1	5.3	3.9	5.3	3.9	2.6
1200	9.208	9.2	9.0	6.8	9.0	6.8	4.5
1024	10.25	10.2	10.2	7.9	10.2	7.9	5.3
960	10.69	10.6	10.6	8.5	10.6	7.9	5.6
600	14.10	14.0	14.0	13.5	14.0	13.5	9.0
480	15.78	15.7	15.7	15.7	15.7	15.7	11.3
300	19.22	19.2	19.2	19.2	19.1	19.1	18.1
240	20.72	20.6	20.6	20.6	20.6	20.6	20.6

Table 110: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (maxBPP=8192, dual-tap, no sub-sampling)

### AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, dual-tap, sub-sampling

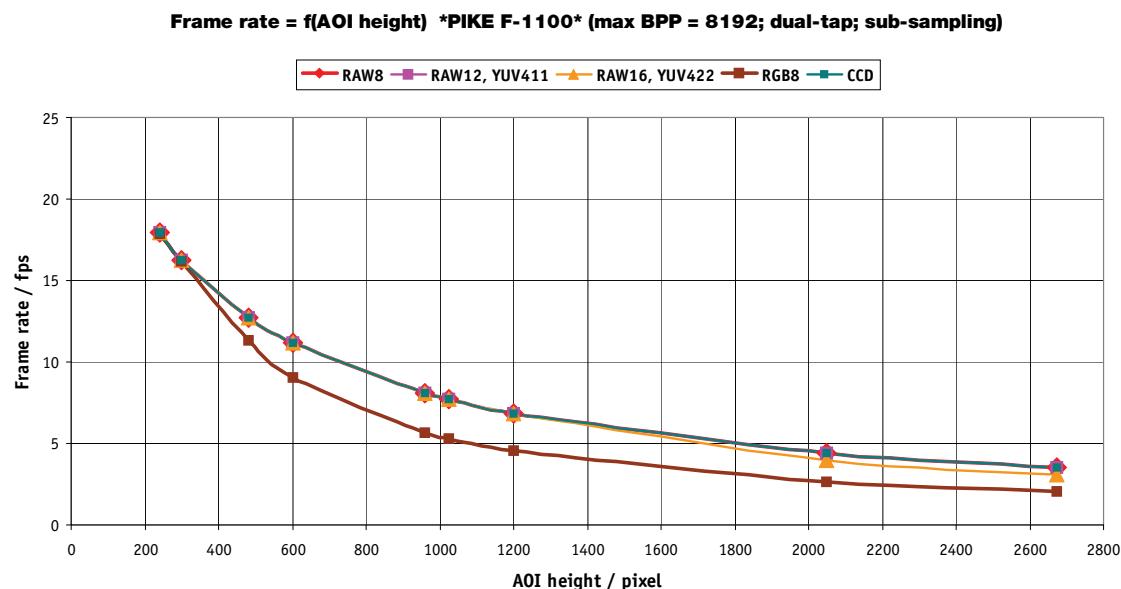


Figure 130: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (maxBPP=8192, dual-tap, sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
2672	3.507	3.5	3.5	3.0	3.5	3.0	2.0
2048	4.419	4.4	4.4	3.9	4.4	3.9	2.6
1200	6.835	6.8	6.8	6.8	6.8	6.8	4.5
1024	7.709	7.7	7.7	7.7	7.6	7.6	5.3
960	8.085	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.0	5.6
600	11.14	11.1	11.1	11.1	11.1	11.1	9.0
480	12.75	12.7	12.7	12.7	12.7	12.7	11.3
300	16.27	16.2	16.2	16.2	16.2	16.2	16.2
240	17.92	17.9	17.9	17.9	17.8	17.8	17.8

Table 111: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (maxBPP=8192, dual-tap, sub-sampling)

Note

CCD = theoretical max. frame rate (in fps) of CCD

maxBPP=8192 according to IIDC V1.31



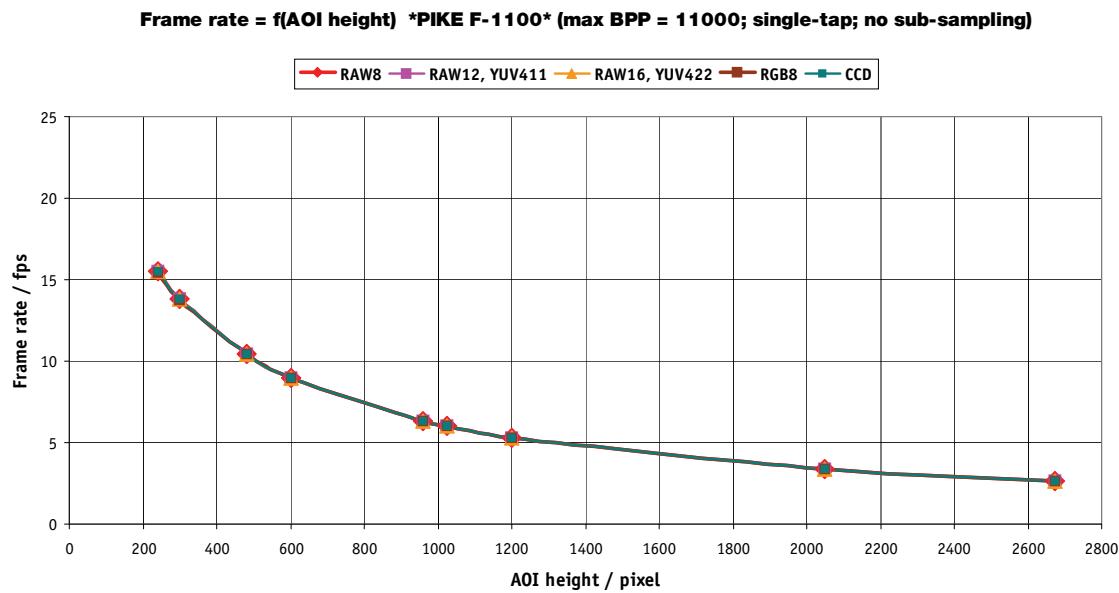
**AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, single-tap, no sub-sampl.**


Figure 131: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (maxBPP=11000, single-tap, no sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
2672	2.636	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.6
2048	3.349	3.3	3.3	3.3	3.3	3.3	3.3
1200	5.297	5.2	5.2	5.2	5.2	5.2	5.2
1024	6.024	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0
960	6.340	6.3	6.3	6.3	6.3	6.3	6.3
600	8.998	8.9	8.9	8.9	8.9	8.9	8.9
480	10.46	10.4	10.4	10.4	10.4	10.4	10.4
300	13.82	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.7	13.7	13.7
240	15.49	15.4	15.4	15.4	15.4	15.4	15.4

Figure 132: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (maxBPP=11000, single-tap, no sub-sampling)

**Note**

CCD = theoretical max. frame rate (in fps) of CCD

maxBPP: for explanation and configuration see Chapter  
[Maximum ISO packet size](#) on page 344

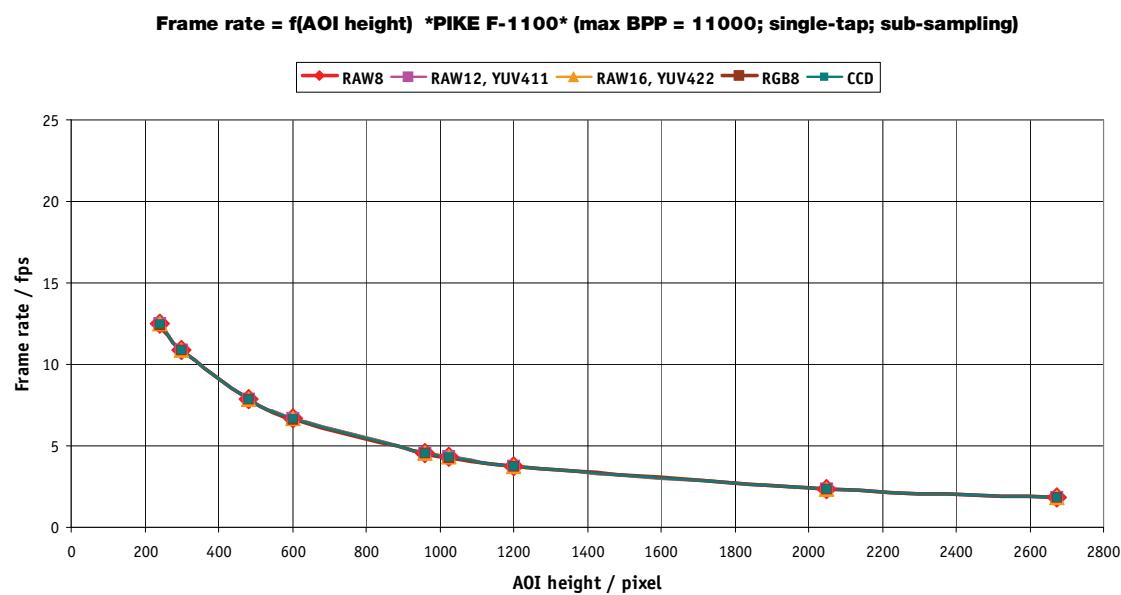
**AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, single-tap, sub-sampl.**


Figure 133: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (maxBPP=11000, single-tap, sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
2672	1.811	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8
2048	2.320	2.3	2.3	2.3	2.3	2.3	2.3
1200	3.753	3.7	3.7	3.7	3.7	3.7	3.7
1024	4.305	4.3	4.3	4.3	4.2	4.2	4.2
960	4.548	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5	4.5
600	6.687	6.6	6.6	6.6	6.6	6.6	6.6
480	7.895	7.8	7.8	7.8	7.8	7.8	7.8
300	10.90	10.9	10.9	10.9	10.8	10.8	10.8
240	12.48	12.4	12.4	12.4	12.4	12.4	12.4

Figure 134: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (maxBPP=11000, single-tap, sub-sampling)

Note


CCD = theoretical max. frame rate (in fps) of CCD

maxBPP: for explanation and configuration see Chapter [Maximum ISO packet size](#) on page 344

**AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, dual-tap, no sub-sampl.**

**Frame rate = f(AOI height) \*PIKE F-1100\* (max BPP = 11000; dual-tap; no sub-sampling)**

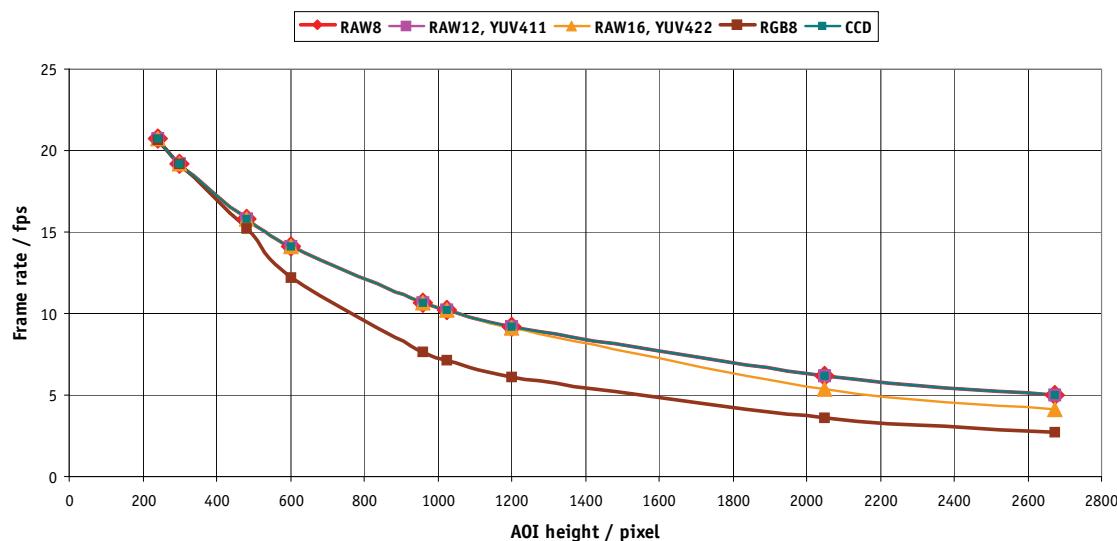


Figure 135: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (max BPP=11000, dual-tap, no sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
2672	4.972	4.9	4.9	4.1	4.9	4.1	2.7
2048	6.177	6.1	6.1	5.3	6.1	5.3	3.5
1200	9.208	9.2	9.2	9.1	9.1	9.1	6.0
1024	10.25	10.2	10.2	10.2	10.2	10.2	7.1
960	10.69	10.6	10.6	10.6	10.6	10.6	7.6
600	14.10	14.0	14.0	14.0	14.0	14.0	12.1
480	15.78	15.7	15.7	15.7	15.7	15.7	15.2
300	19.22	19.2	19.2	19.2	19.1	19.1	19.1
240	20.72	20.6	20.6	20.6	20.6	20.6	20.6

Table 112: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (maxBPP=11000, dual-tap, no sub-sampling)

Note

CCD = theoretical max. frame rate (in fps) of CCD

maxBPP: for explanation and configuration see Chapter [Maximum ISO packet size](#) on page 344



**AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, dual-tap, sub-sampl.**

Frame rate = f(AOI height) \*PIKE F-1100\* (max BPP = 11000; dual-tap; sub-sampling)

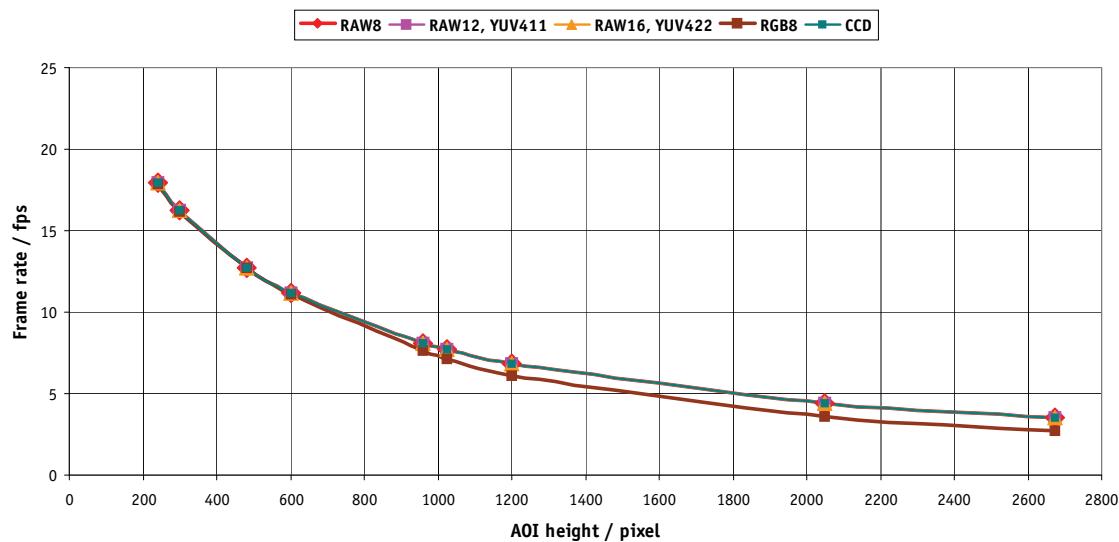


Figure 136: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (maxBPP=11000, dual-tap, sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
2672	3.507	3.5	3.5	3.5	3.5	3.5	2.7
2048	4.419	4.4	4.4	4.4	4.4	4.4	3.5
1200	6.835	6.8	6.8	6.8	6.8	6.8	6.0
1024	7.709	7.7	7.7	7.7	7.6	7.6	7.1
960	8.085	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.0	7.6
600	11.14	11.1	11.1	11.1	11.1	11.1	11.1
480	12.75	12.7	12.7	12.7	12.7	12.7	12.7
300	16.27	16.2	16.2	16.2	16.2	16.2	16.2
240	17.92	17.9	17.9	17.9	17.8	17.8	17.8

Figure 137: Pike F-1100 [width=4008] (maxBPP=11000, dual-tap, sub-sampling)

Note

CCD = theoretical max. frame rate (in fps) of CCD

maxBPP: for explanation and configuration see Chapter [Maximum ISO packet size](#) on page 344



## PIKE F-1600: AOI frame rates

### Pike F-1600: frame rate formula single-tap

All frame rates are valid for AOI top = 0. For AOIs with different positions the values may differ very slightly (first position after decimal point).

$$\text{max. frame rate of CCD}_{\text{single-tap}} = \frac{1}{1778.12\mu\text{s} + \text{AOI height} \times 177.05\mu\text{s} + (3324 - \text{AOI height}) \times 13.64\mu\text{s}}$$

Formula 18: Pike F-1600: theoretical max. frame rate CCD (maxBPP=8192, **single-tap**, no subsampl.)

### AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, single-tap, no sub-sampling

**Frame rate = f(AOI height) \*PIKE F-1600\* (maxBPP=8192; single-tap; no sub-sampling)**

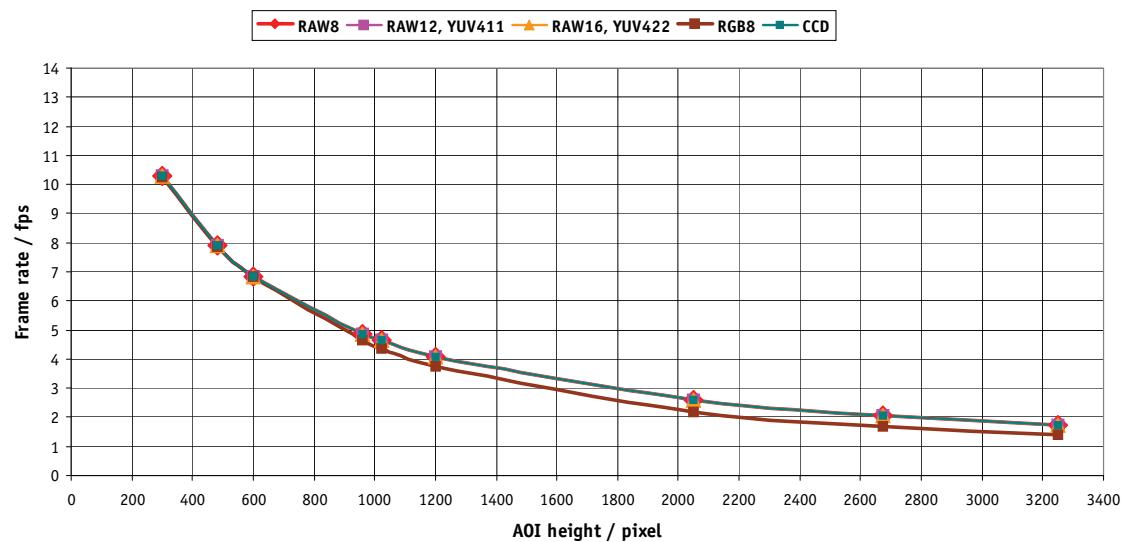


Figure 138: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (max BPP = 8192, single-tap, no sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
3248	1.727	1.7	1.7	1.7	1.7	1.7	1.3
2672	2.063	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	1.6
2048	2.612	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.1
1200	4.095	4.0	4.0	4.0	4.0	4.0	3.7
1024	4.641	4.6	4.6	4.6	4.6	4.6	4.3
960	4.878	4.8	4.8	4.8	4.8	4.8	4.6
600	6.842	6.8	6.8	6.8	6.8	6.8	6.8
480	7.902	7.9	7.9	7.9	7.9	7.9	7.8
300	10.29	10.2	10.2	10.2	10.2	10.2	10.2

Table 113: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (maxBPP=8192, single-tap, no sub-sampling)

**AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, single-tap, sub-sampling**

**Frame rate = f(AOI height) \*PIKE F-1600\* (maxBPP=8192; single-tap; sub-sampling)**

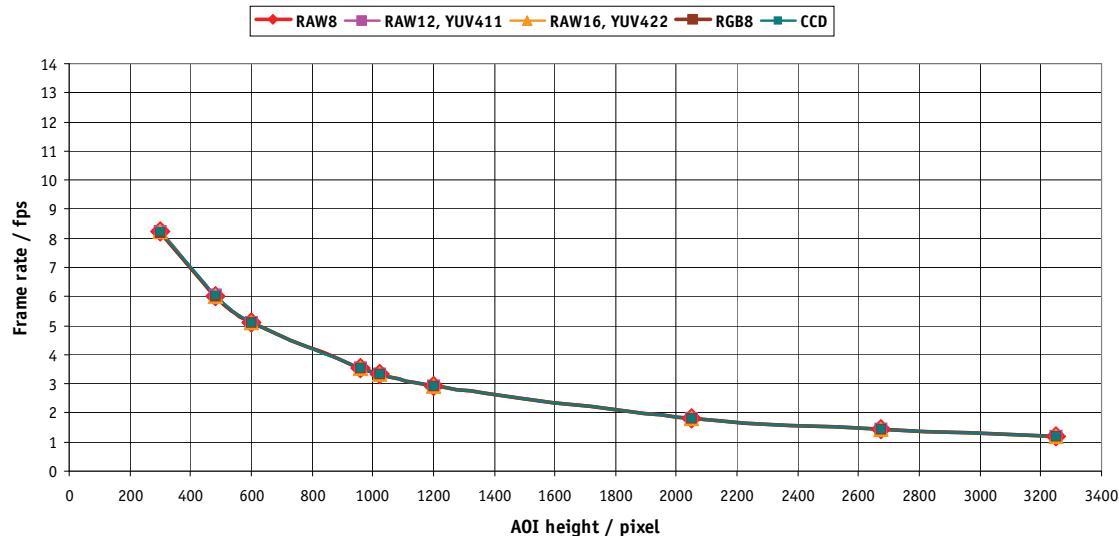


Figure 139: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (max BPP = 8192, single-tap, sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
3248	1.184	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1
2672	1.422	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4
2048	1.817	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8
1200	2.921	2.9	2.9	2.9	2.9	2.9	2.9
1024	3.343	3.3	3.3	3.3	3.3	3.3	3.3
960	3.528	3.5	3.5	3.5	3.5	3.5	3.5
600	5.123	5.1	5.1	5.1	5.1	5.1	5.1
480	6.033	6.03	6.03	6.03	6.01	6.01	6.01
300	8.221	8.22	8.22	8.22	8.18	8.18	8.18

Table 114: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (maxBPP=8192, single-tap, sub-sampling)

Note

CCD = theoretical max. frame rate (in fps) of CCD

maxBPP=8192 according to IIDC V1.31



### Pike F-1600: frame rate formula dual-tap

All frame rates are valid for AOI top = 0. For AOIs with different positions the values may differ very slightly (first position after decimal point).

$$\text{max. frame rate of CCD}_{\text{dual-tap}} = \frac{1}{1534\mu\text{s} + \text{AOI height} \times 95.67\mu\text{s} + (3324 - \text{AOI height}) \times 13.64\mu\text{s}}$$

Formula 19: Pike F-1600: theoretical max. frame rate of CCD (maxBPP=8192, dual-tap, no subsampl.)

### AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, dual-tap, no sub-sampling

Frame rate = f(AOI height) \*PIKE F-1600\* (maxBPP=8192; dual-tap; no sub-sampling)

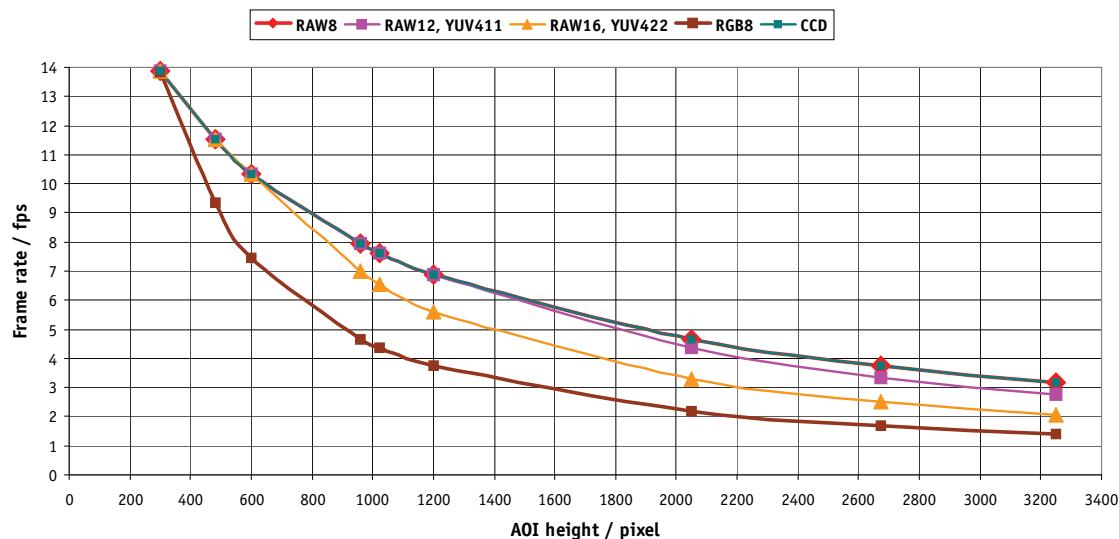


Figure 140: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (max BPP = 8192, dual-tap, no sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
3248	3.186	3.18	2.76	2.07	2.76	2.07	1.38
2672	3.751	3.75	3.35	2.51	3.35	2.51	1.67
2048	4.643	4.64	4.37	3.28	4.37	3.28	2.18
1200	6.858	6.85	6.85	5.60	6.85	5.60	3.73
1024	7.612	7.61	7.61	6.56	7.60	6.56	4.37
960	7.929	7.92	7.92	7.00	7.91	7.00	4.66
600	10.35	10.3	10.3	10.3	10.3	10.3	7.46
480	11.52	11.5	11.5	11.5	11.5	11.5	9.32
300	13.89	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8

Table 115: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (maxBPP=8192, dual-tap, no sub-sampling)

### AOI frame rates maxBPP=8192, dual-tap, sub-sampling

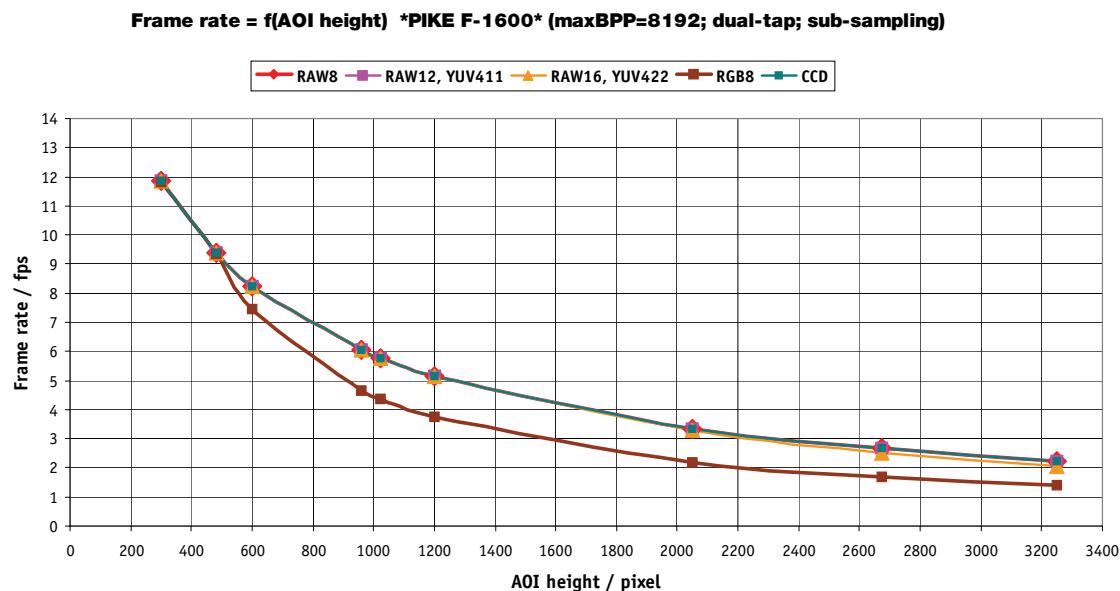


Figure 141: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (max BPP = 8192, dual-tap, sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
3248	2.237	2.23	2.23	2.07	2.23	2.07	1.38
2672	2.658	2.65	2.65	2.51	2.65	2.51	1.67
2048	3.340	3.34	3.34	3.28	3.33	3.28	2.18
1200	5.127	5.12	5.12	5.12	5.12	5.12	3.73
1024	5.768	5.76	5.76	5.76	5.76	5.76	4.37
960	6.042	6.04	6.04	6.04	6.03	6.03	4.66
600	8.251	8.25	8.25	8.25	8.23	8.23	7.46
480	9.396	9.39	9.39	9.39	9.37	9.37	9.32
300	11.86	11.8	11.8	11.8	11.8	11.8	11.8

Table 116: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (maxBPP=8192, dual-tap, sub-sampling)

**Note**

CCD = theoretical max. frame rate (in fps) of CCD

maxBPP=8192 according to IIDC V1.31



**AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, single-tap, no sub-sampl.**

**Frame rate = f(AOI height) \*PIKE F-1600\* (maxBPP=11000; single-tap; no sub-sampling)**

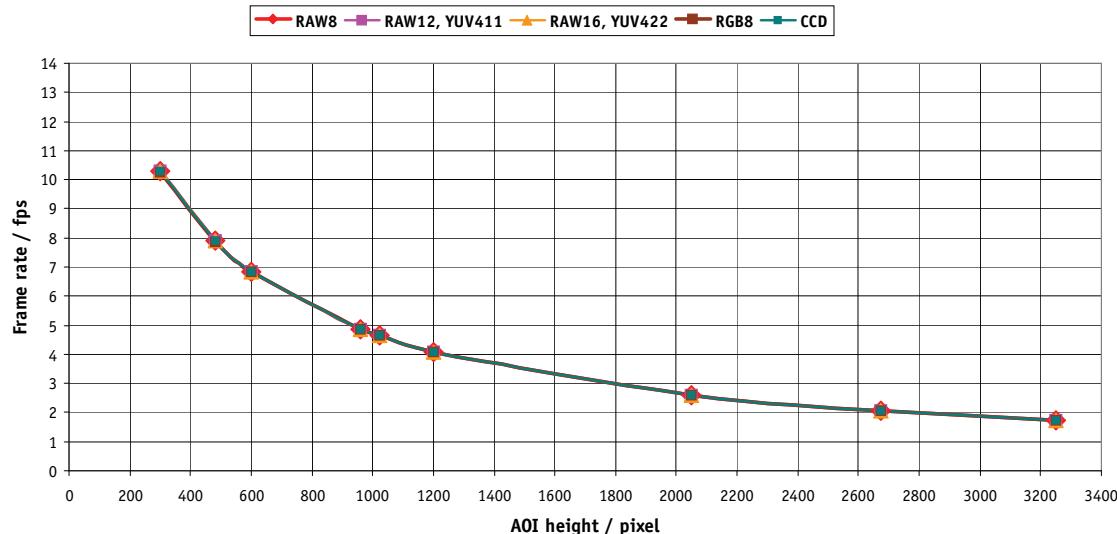


Figure 142: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (max BPP = 11000, single-tap, no sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
3248	1.727	1.72	1.72	1.72	1.72	1.72	1.72
2672	2.063	2.06	2.06	2.06	2.06	2.06	2.06
2048	2.612	2.61	2.61	2.61	2.61	2.61	2.61
1200	4.095	4.09	4.09	4.09	4.08	4.08	4.08
1024	4.641	4.64	4.64	4.64	4.63	4.63	4.63
960	4.878	4.87	4.87	4.87	4.87	4.87	4.87
600	6.842	6.84	6.84	6.84	6.82	6.82	6.82
480	7.902	7.90	7.90	7.90	7.88	7.88	7.88
300	10.29	10.2	10.2	10.2	10.2	10.2	10.2

Table 117: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (maxBPP=11000, single-tap, no sub-sampling)

Note


CCD = theoretical max. frame rate (in fps) of CCD

maxBPP: for explanation and configuration see Chapter [Maximum ISO packet size](#) on page 344

### AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, single-tap, sub-sampling

Frame rate = f(AOI height) \*PIKE F-1600\* (maxBPP=11000; single-tap; sub-sampling)

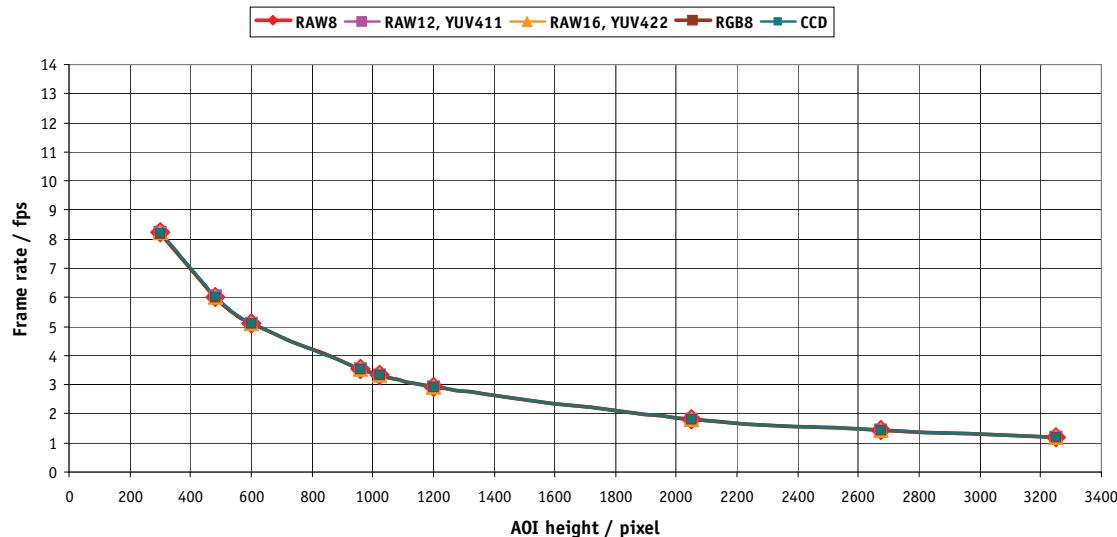


Figure 143: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (max BPP = 11000, single-tap, sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
3248	1.184	1.18	1.18	1.18	1.18	1.18	1.18
2672	1.422	1.42	1.42	1.42	1.42	1.42	1.42
2048	1.817	1.81	1.81	1.81	1.81	1.81	1.81
1200	2.921	2.92	2.92	2.92	2.91	2.91	2.91
1024	3.343	3.34	3.34	3.34	3.33	3.33	3.33
960	3.528	3.52	3.52	3.52	3.52	3.52	3.52
600	5.123	5.12	5.12	5.12	5.11	5.11	5.11
480	6.033	6.03	6.03	6.03	6.01	6.01	6.01
300	8.221	8.22	8.22	8.22	8.18	8.18	8.18

Table 118: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (maxBPP=11000, single-tap, sub-sampling)

**Note**

CCD = theoretical max. frame rate (in fps) of CCD

maxBPP: for explanation and configuration see Chapter [Maximum ISO packet size](#) on page 344



### AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, dual-tap, no sub-sampling

Frame rate = f(AOI height) \*PIKE F-1600\* (maxBPP=11000; dual-tap; no sub-sampling)

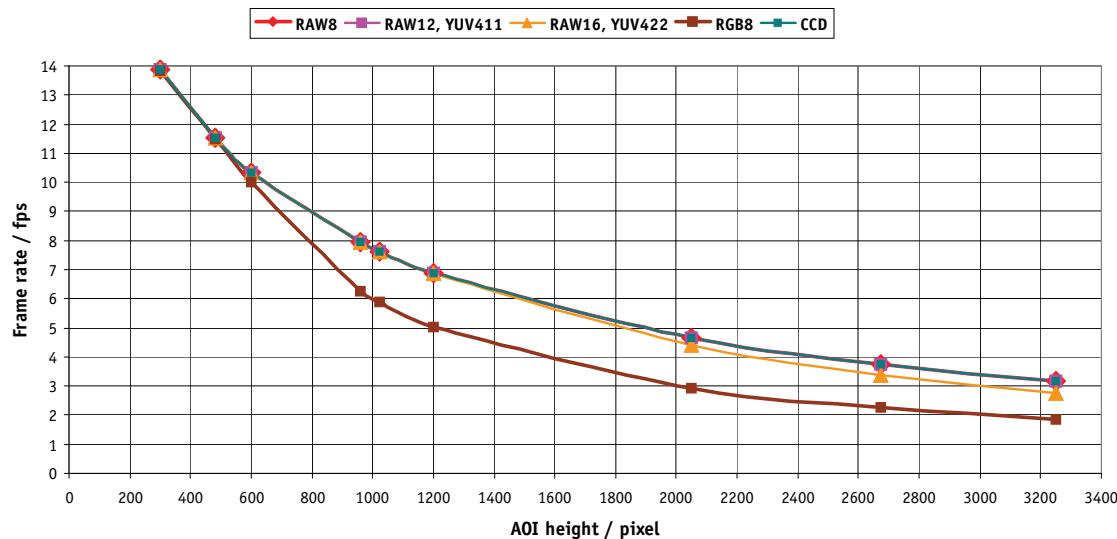


Figure 144: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (max BPP = 11000, dual-tap, no sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
3248	3.186	3.18	3.18	2.77	3.18	2.77	1.85
2672	3.751	3.75	3.75	3.37	3.74	3.37	2.25
2048	4.643	4.64	4.64	4.40	4.63	4.40	2.93
1200	6.858	6.85	6.85	6.85	6.85	6.85	5.01
1024	7.612	7.61	7.61	7.61	7.60	7.60	5.87
960	7.929	7.92	7.92	7.92	7.91	7.91	6.26
600	10.35	10.3	10.3	10.3	10.3	10.3	10.0
480	11.52	11.5	11.5	11.5	11.5	11.5	11.5
300	13.89	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8	13.8

Table 119: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (maxBPP=11000, dual-tap, no sub-sampling)

Note



CCD = theoretical max. frame rate (in fps) of CCD  
 maxBPP: for explanation and configuration see Chapter [Maximum ISO packet size](#) on page 344

### AOI frame rates maxBPP=11000, dual-tap, sub-sampling

Frame rate = f(AOI height) \*PIKE F-1600\* (maxBPP=11000; dual-tap; sub-sampling)

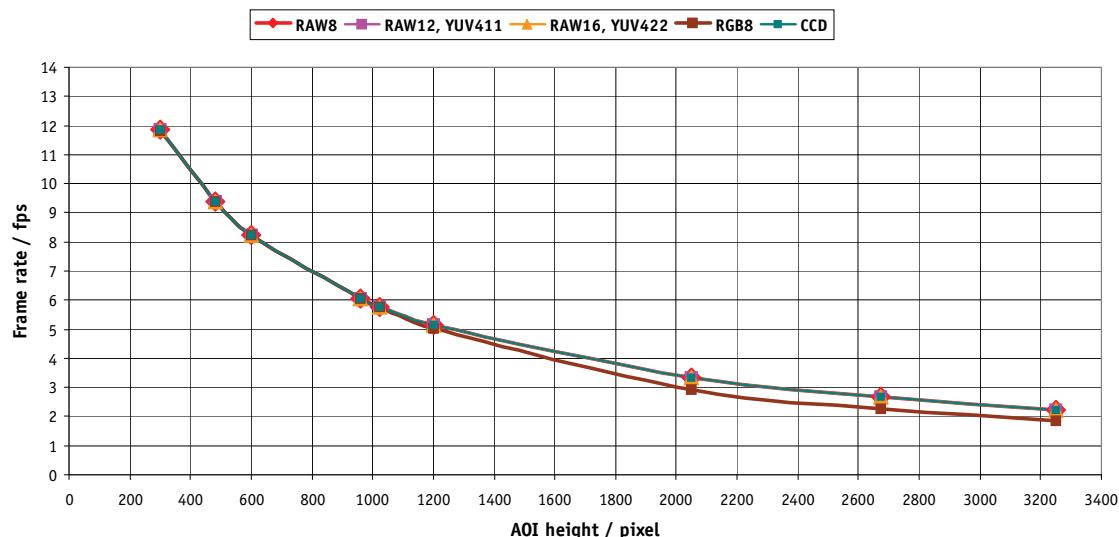


Figure 145: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (max BPP = 11000, dual-tap, sub-sampling)

AOI height	CCD	RAW8	RAW12	RAW16	YUV411	YUV422	RGB8
3248	2.237	2.23	2.23	2.23	2.23	2.23	1.85
2672	2.658	2.65	2.65	2.65	2.65	2.65	2.25
2048	3.340	3.34	3.34	3.34	3.33	3.33	2.93
1200	5.127	5.12	5.12	5.12	5.12	5.12	5.01
1024	5.768	5.76	5.76	5.76	5.76	5.76	5.76
960	6.042	6.04	6.04	6.04	6.03	6.03	6.03
600	8.251	8.25	8.25	8.25	8.23	8.23	8.23
480	9.396	9.39	9.39	9.39	9.37	9.37	9.37
300	11.86	11.8	11.8	11.8	11.8	11.8	11.8

Table 120: Pike F-1600 [width=4872] (maxBPP=11000, dual-tap, sub-sampling)

**Note**

CCD = theoretical max. frame rate (in fps) of CCD

maxBPP: for explanation and configuration see Chapter [Maximum ISO packet size](#) on page 344



# How does bandwidth affect the frame rate?

In some modes the IEEE 1394b bus limits the attainable frame rate. According to the 1394b specification on isochronous transfer, the largest data payload size of 8192 bytes per 125 µs cycle is possible with bandwidth of 800 Mbit/s. In addition, there is a limitation, only a maximum number of 65535 ( $2^{16}$  -1) packets per frame are allowed.

The following formula establishes the relationship between the required Byte\_Per\_Packet size and certain variables for the image. It is valid only for Format\_7.

$$\text{BYTE\_PER\_PACKET} = \text{frame rate}[1/\text{s}] \times \text{AOI\_WIDTH} \times \text{AOI\_HEIGHT} \times \text{ByteDepth} [\text{byte}] \times 125 [\mu\text{s}]$$

Formula 20: Byte\_per\_Packet calculation (only Format\_7)

If the value for **BYTE\_PER\_PACKET** is greater than 8192 (the maximum data payload), the sought-after frame rate cannot be attained. The attainable frame rate can be calculated using this formula:

(Provision: **BYTE\_PER\_PACKET** is divisible by 4):

$$\text{frame rate} \approx \frac{\text{BYTE\_PER\_PACKET} [\text{byte}]}{\text{AOI\_WIDTH} \times \text{AOI\_HEIGHT} \times \text{ByteDepth} [\text{byte}] \times 125 [\mu\text{s}]}$$

Formula 21: Maximum frame rate calculation

ByteDepth based on the following values:

Mode	bit/pixel	byte per pixel
Mono8, Raw8	8	1
Mono16, Raw16	16	2
YUV4:2:2	16	2
YUV4:1:1	12	1.5
RGB8	24	3

Table 121: ByteDepth

### **Example formula for the b/w camera**

Mono16, 1392 x 1040, 30 fps desired

$$\text{BYTE\_PER\_PACKET} = 30 \text{ 1/s} \times 1392 \times 1040 \times 2 \text{ byte} \times 125\mu\text{s} = 10856 \text{ byte} > 8192 \text{ byte}$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{frame rate}_{\text{reachable}} \approx \frac{8192 \text{ byte}}{1392 \times 1040 \times 2 \text{ byte} \times 125\mu\text{s}} = 22.64 \text{ 1/s}$$

Formula 22: Example maximum frame rate calculation

## Test images

### Loading test images

FirePackage	Direct FirePackage	Fire4Linux
1. Start <b>SmartView</b> . 2. Click the <b>Edit settings</b> button.  3. Click <b>Adv1</b> tab. 4. In combo box <b>Test images</b> choose <b>Image 1</b> or another test image.	1. Start <b>SmartView for WDM</b> . 2. In <b>Camera</b> menu click <b>Settings</b> . 3. Click <b>Adv1</b> tab. 4. In combo box <b>Test images</b> choose <b>Image 1</b> or another test image.	1. Start <b>cc1394</b> viewer. 2. In <b>Adjustments</b> menu click on <b>Picture Control</b> . 3. Click <b>Main</b> tab. 4. Activate Test image check box <b>on</b> . 5. In combo box <b>Test images</b> choose <b>Image 1</b> or another test image.

Table 122: Loading test images in different viewers

### Test images for b/w cameras

The b/w cameras have two test images that look the same. Both images show a gray bar running diagonally (mirrored at the middle axis).

- **Image 1** is static.
- **Image 2** moves upwards by 1 pixel/frame.

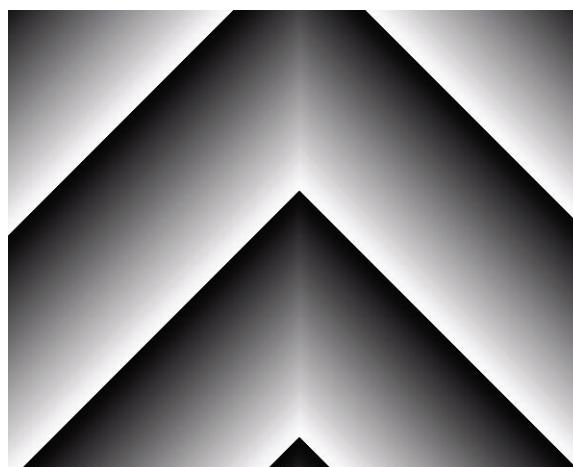


Figure 146: Gray bar test image

## Test images for color cameras

The color cameras have 1 test image:

### **YUV4:2:2 mode**



Figure 147: Color test image

### **Mono8 (raw data)**

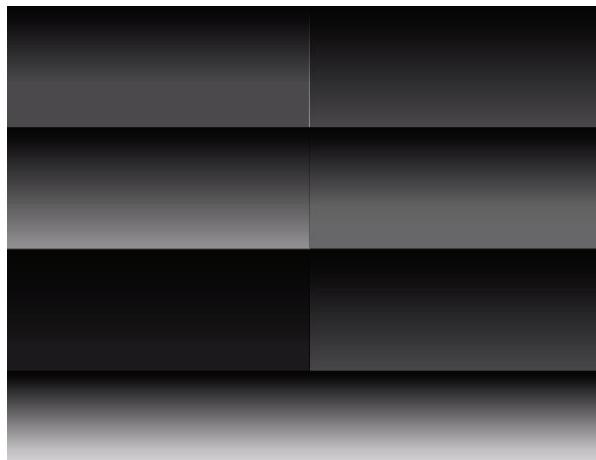


Figure 148: Bayer-coded test image

The color camera outputs Bayer-coded raw data in Mono8 instead of (as described in IIDC V1.31) a real Y signal.

**Note**

The first pixel of the image is always the **red** pixel from the sensor. (Mirror must be switched off.)



# Configuration of the camera

All camera settings are made by writing specific values into the corresponding registers.

This applies to:

- values for general operating states such as video formats and modes, exposure times, etc.
- extended features of the camera that are turned on and off and controlled via corresponding registers (so-called advanced registers).

## **Camera\_Status\_Register**

The interoperability of cameras from different manufacturers is ensured by IIDC, formerly DCAM (Digital Camera Specification), published by the IEEE 1394 Trade Association.

IIDC is primarily concerned with setting memory addresses (e.g. CSR: Camera\_Status\_Register) and their meaning.

In principle all addresses in IEEE 1394 networks are 64 bits long.

The first 10 bits describe the Bus\_Id, the next 6 bits the Node\_Id.

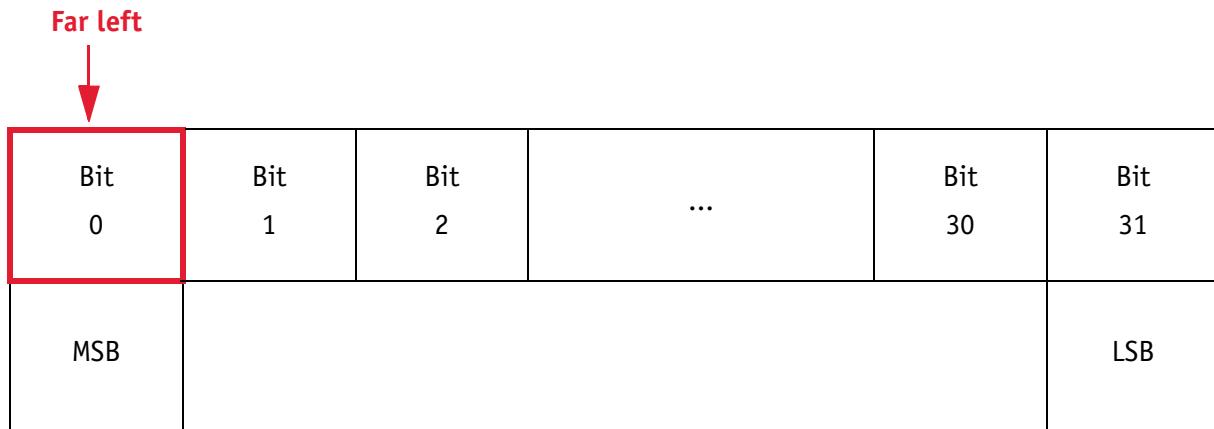
Of the subsequent 48 bits, the first 16 bits are always FFFFh, leaving the description for the Camera\_Status\_Register in the last 32 bits.

If in the following, mention is made of a CSR F0F00600h, this means in full:

Bus\_Id, Node\_Id, FFFF F0F00600h

Writing and reading to and from the register can be done with programs such as **FireView** or by other programs developed using an API library (e.g. **FirePackage**).

Every register is 32 bit (big endian) and implemented as follows (MSB = Most Significant Bit; LSB = Least Significant Bit):



Bit 0	Bit 1	Bit 2	...	Bit 30	Bit 31	
MSB						LSB

Table 123: 32-bit register

## Example

This requires, for example, that to enable **ISO\_Enabled mode** (see Chapter [ISO\\_Enable / free-run](#) on page 210), (bit 0 in register 614h), the value 80000000 h must be written in the corresponding register.

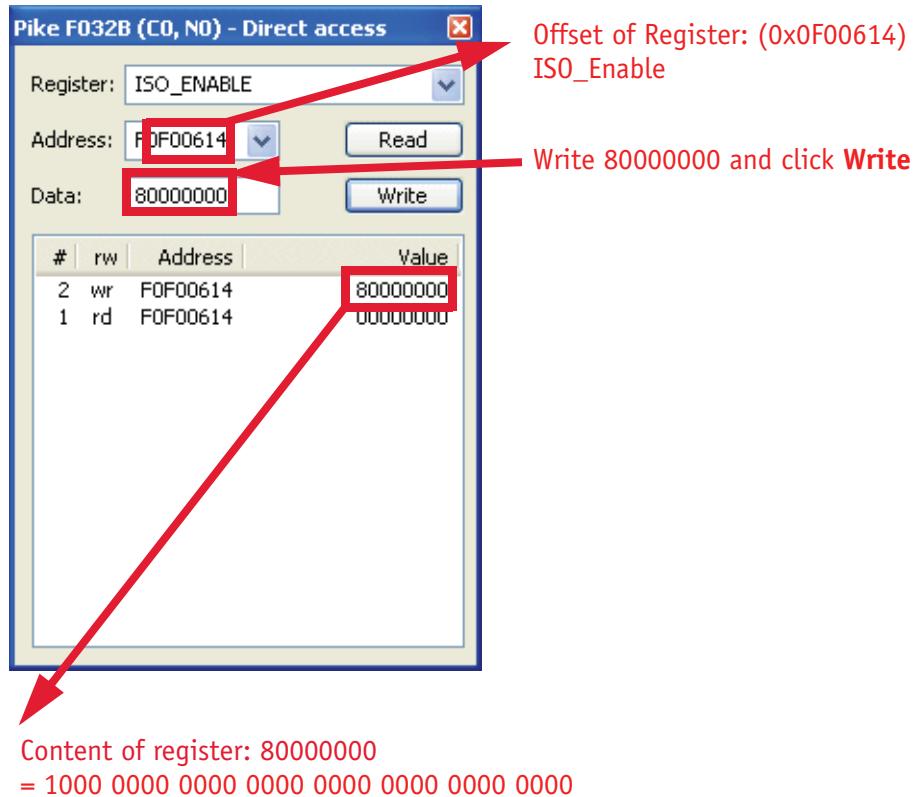
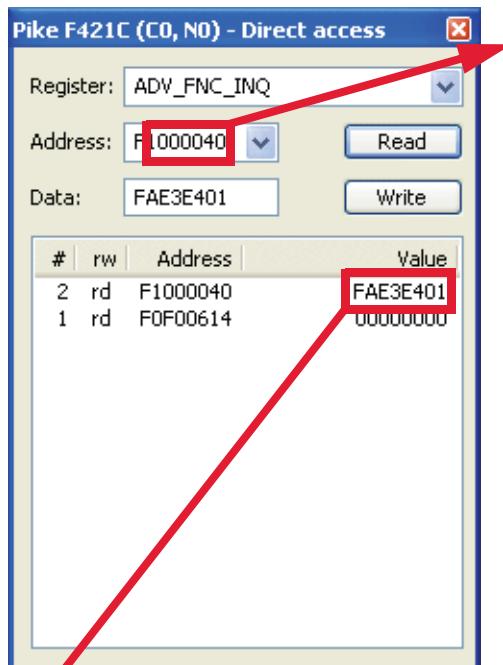


Figure 149: Enabling ISO\_Enable



Offset of Register: (0xF1000040)  
ADV\_FNC\_INQ

Content of register: FAE3C401  
= 1111 1010 1110 0011 1110 0100 0000 0001

Table 124: Configuring the camera (PIKE F-421C)

Bit	MaxResolution	TimeBase	ExtdShutter	Testimage	VersionInfo	Look-up tables	Shading	DeferredTrans	Trigger Delay	Misc. features						
Bit	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	1

Bit	SoftReset	High SNR	ColorCorr	UserProfiles	GP_Buffer											
Bit	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Table 125: Configuring the camera: registers

## Sample program

The following sample code in C/C++ shows how the register is set for video mode/format, trigger mode etc. using the **FireGrab** and **FireStack API**.

### Example FireGrab

```
...
// Set Videoformat
if(Result==FCE_NOERROR)
    Result= Camera.SetParameter(FGP_IMAGEFORMAT,MAKEIMAGEFORMAT(RES_640_480,
CM_Y8, FR_15));

// Set external Trigger
if(Result==FCE_NOERROR)
    Result= Camera.SetParameter(FGP_TRIGGER,MAKETRIGGER(1,0,0,0,0));

// Start DMA logic
if(Result==FCE_NOERROR)
    Result=Camera.OpenCapture();

// Start image device
if(Result==FCE_NOERROR)
    Result=Camera.StartDevice();

...
...
```

## Example FireStack API

```
...
// Set framerate

Result=WriteQuad(HIGHOFFSET,m_Props.CmdRegBase+CCR_FRAMERATE,(UINT32)m_Parms.FrameRate<<29);

// Set mode
if(Result)

Result=WriteQuad(HIGHOFFSET,m_Props.CmdRegBase+CCR_VMODE,(UINT32)m_Parms.VideoMode<<29);

// Set format
if(Result)

Result=WriteQuad(HIGHOFFSET,m_Props.CmdRegBase+CCR_VFORMAT,(UINT32)m_Parms.VideoFormat<<29);

// Set trigger
if(Result)
{
    Mode=0;
    if(m_Parms.TriggerMode==TM_EXTERN)
        Mode=0x82000000;
    if(m_Parms.TriggerMode==TM_MODE15)
        Mode=0x820F0000;
    WriteQuad(HIGHOFFSET,m_Props.CmdRegBase+CCR_TRGMODE,Mode);
}

// Start continous ISO if not oneshot triggermode
if(Result && m_Parms.TriggerMode!=TM_ONESHOT)
    Result=WriteQuad(HIGHOFFSET,m_Props.CmdRegBase+CCR_ISOENABLE,0x80000000);

...

```

## Configuration ROM

The information in the Configuration ROM is needed to identify the node, its capabilities and which drivers are required.

The base address for the **configuration ROM** for all registers is FFFF F0000000h.

**Note** If you want to use the **DirectControl** program to read or write to a register, enter the following value in the Address field:  
 **F0F00000h + Offset**

The ConfigRom is divided into

- Bus info block: providing critical information about the bus-related capabilities
- Root directory: specifying the rest of the content and organization, such as:
  - Node unique ID leaf
  - Unit directory and
  - Unit dependant info

The base address of the camera control register is calculated as follows based on the camera-specific base address:

	Offset	0-7	8-15	16-23	24-31	
Bus info block	400h	04	29	0C	C0	.... ASCII for 1394
	404h	31	33	39	34	.... Bus capabilities
	408h	20	00	B2	03	.... <a href="#">Node_Vendor_Id</a> , <a href="#">Chip_id_hi</a>
	40Ch	00	0A	47	01	.... <a href="#">Chip_id_lo</a>
	410h	Serial number				According to IEEE1212, the root directory may have another length. The keys (e.g. 8D) point to the offset factors rather than the offset (e.g. 420h) itself.
Root directory	414h	00	04	B7	85	
	418h	03	00	0A	47	
	41Ch	0C	00	83	C0	
	420h	8D	00	00	02	
	424h	D1	00	00	04	

Table 126: Configuration ROM

The entry with key 8D in the root directory (420h in this case) provides the offset for the Node unique ID leaf.

To compute the effective start address of the node unique ID leaf:

**To compute the effective start address of the node unique ID leaf**

currAddr	= node unique ID leaf address
destAddr	= address of directory entry
addrOffset	= value of directory entry
destAddr	= currAddr + (4 * addrOffset)
	= 420h + (4 * 000002h)
	= 428h

Table 127: Computing effective start address

$$420h + 000002 * 4 = 428h$$

	Offset	0-7	8-15	16-23	24-31	
Node unique ID leaf	428h	00	02	5E	9E	....CRC
	42Ch	00	0A	47	01	....Node_Vendor_Id,Chip_id_hi
	430h	00	00	Serial number		

Table 128: Config ROM

The entry with key D1 in the root directory (424h in this case) provides the offset for the unit directory as follows:

$$424h + 000004 * 4 = 434h$$

	Offset	0-7	8-15	16-23	24-31	
Unit directory	434h	00	03	93	7D	
	438h	12	00	A0	2D	
	43Ch	13	00	01	02	
	440h	D4	00	00	01	

Table 129: Config ROM

The entry with key D4 in the unit directory (440h in this case) provides the offset for unit dependent info:

$$440h + 000001 * 4 = 444h$$

	<b>Offset</b>	<b>0-7</b>	<b>8-15</b>	<b>16-23</b>	<b>24-31</b>	
Unit dependent info →	444h	00	0B	A9	6E	....unit_dep_info_length, CRC
	448h	40	3C	00	00	....command_regs_base
	44Ch	81	00	00	02	....vender_name_leaf
	450h	82	00	00	06	....model_name_leaf
	454h	38	00	00	10	....unit_sub_sw_version
	458h	39	00	00	00	....Reserved
	45Ch	3A	00	00	00	....Reserved
	460h	3B	00	00	00	....Reserved
	464h	3C	00	01	00	....vendor_unique_info_0
	468h	3D	00	92	00	....vendor_unique_info_1
	46Ch	3E	00	00	65	....vendor_unique_info_2
	470h	3F	00	00	00	....vendor_unique_info_3

Table 130: Config ROM

And finally, the entry with key 40 (448h in this case) provides the offset for the camera control register:

FFFF F0000000h + 3C0000h \* 4 = FFFF F0F00000h

The base address of the camera control register is thus:

FFFF F0F00000h

The offset entered in the table always refers to the base address of F0F00000h.

## Implemented registers

The following tables show how standard registers from IIDC V1.31 are implemented in the camera. Base address is F0F0000h. Differences and explanations can be found in the third column.

### Camera initialize register

Offset	Name	Description
000h	INITIALIZE	Assert MSB = 1 for Init.

Table 131: Camera initialize register

### Inquiry register for video format

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
100h	V_FORMAT_INQ	Format_0	[0]	Up to VGA (non compressed)
		Format_1	[1]	SVGA to XGA
		Format_2	[2]	SXGA to UXGA
		Format_3	[3..5]	Reserved
		Format_6	[6]	Still Image Format
		Format_7	[7]	Partial Image Format
		---	[8..31]	Reserved

Table 132: Format inquiry register

## Inquiry register for video mode

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description	Color mode
180h	V_MODE_INQ (Format_0)	Mode_0	[0]	160 x 120	YUV 4:4:4
		Mode_1	[1]	320 x 240	YUV 4:2:2
		Mode_2	[2]	640 x 480	YUV 4:1:1
		Mode_3	[3]	640 x 480	YUV 4:2:2
		Mode_4	[4]	640 x 480	RGB
		Mode_5	[5]	640 x 480	MON08
		Mode_6	[6]	640 x 480	MON016
		Mode_X	[7]	Reserved	
		-	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)	
184h	V_MODE_INQ (Format_1)	Mode_0	[0]	800 x 600	YUV 4:2:2
		Mode_1	[1]	800 x 600	RGB
		Mode_2	[2]	800 x 600	MON08
		Mode_3	[3]	1024 x 768	YUV 4:2:2
		Mode_4	[4]	1024 x 768	RGB
		Mode_5	[5]	1024 x 768	MON08
		Mode_6	[6]	800 x 600	MON016
		Mode_7	[7]	1024 x 768	MON016
		-	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)	
188h	V_MODE_INQ (Format_2)	Mode_0	[0]	1280 x 960	YUV 4:2:2
		Mode_1	[1]	1280 x 960	RGB
		Mode_2	[2]	1280 x 960	MON08
		Mode_3	[3]	1600 x 1200	YUV 4:2:2
		Mode_4	[4]	1600 x 1200	RGB
		Mode_5	[5]	1600 x 1200	MON08
		Mode_6	[6]	1280 x 960	MON016
		Mode_7	[7]	1600 x 1200	MON016
		-	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)	
18Ch ... 197h	Reserved for other V_MODE_INQ_x for Format_x.			Always 0	
198h	V_MODE_INQ_6 (Format_6)			Always 0	

Table 133: **Video mode** inquiry register

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description	Color mode
19Ch	V_MODE_INQ (Format_7)	Mode_0	[0]	Format_7 Mode_0	
		Mode_1	[1]	Format_7 Mode_1	
		Mode_2	[2]	Format_7 Mode_2	
		Mode_3	[3]	Format_7 Mode_3	
		Mode_4	[4]	Format_7 Mode_4	
		Mode_5	[5]	Format_7 Mode_5	
		Mode_6	[6]	Format_7 Mode_6	
		Mode_7	[7]	Format_7 Mode_7	
		-	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)	

Table 133: **Video mode** inquiry register

### Inquiry register for video frame rate and base address

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
200h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_0, Mode_0)	FrameRate_0	[0]	Reserved
		FrameRate_1	[1]	Reserved
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	240 fps (V1.31)
		-	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)
204h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_0, Mode_1)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	240 fps (V1.31)
		-	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)

Table 134: **Frame rate** inquiry register

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
208h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_0, Mode_2)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	240 fps (V1.31)
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)
20Ch	V_RATE_INQ (Format_0, Mode_3)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	240 fps (V1.31)
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)
210h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_0, Mode_4)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	240 fps (V1.31)
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)

Table 134: **Frame rate** inquiry register

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
214h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_0, Mode_5)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	240 fps (V1.31)
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)
218h	V_RATE_INQ	(Format_0, Mode_6)	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_0		
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	240 fps (V1.31)
21Ch ... 21Fh	Reserved V_RATE_INQ_0_x (for other Mode_x of Format_0)			Always 0
220h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_1, Mode_0)	FrameRate_0	[0]	Reserved
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	240 fps (V1.31)
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)

Table 134: **Frame rate** inquiry register

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
224h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_1, Mode_1)	FrameRate_0	[0]	Reserved
		FrameRate_1	[1]	Reserved
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	240 fps (V1.31)
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)
228h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_1, Mode_2)	FrameRate_0	[0]	Reserved
		FrameRate_1	[1]	Reserved
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	240 fps (V1.31)
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)
22Ch	V_RATE_INQ (Format_1, Mode_3)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	240 fps (V1.31)
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)

Table 134: **Frame rate** inquiry register

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
230h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_1, Mode_4)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	240 fps (V1.31)
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)
234h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_1, Mode_5)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	240 fps (V1.31)
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)
238h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_1, Mode_6)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	240 fps (V1.31)
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)

Table 134: **Frame rate** inquiry register

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
23Ch	V_RATE_INQ (Format_1, Mode_7)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	Reserved
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)
240h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_2, Mode_0)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	Reserved
		FrameRate_7	[7]	Reserved
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)
244h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_2, Mode_1)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	Reserved
		FrameRate_7	[7]	Reserved
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)

Table 134: **Frame rate** inquiry register

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
248h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_2, Mode_2)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	120 fps (V1.31)
		FrameRate_7	[7]	Reserved
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)
24Ch	V_RATE_INQ (Format_2, Mode_3)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	Reserved
		FrameRate_7	[7]	Reserved
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)
250h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_2, Mode_4)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	Reserved
		FrameRate_6	[6]	Reserved
		FrameRate_7	[7]	Reserved
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)

Table 134: **Frame rate** inquiry register

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
254h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_2, Mode_5)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	Reserved
		FrameRate_7	[7]	Reserved
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)
258h	V_RATE_INQ (Format_2, Mode_6)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	Reserved
		FrameRate_7	[7]	Reserved
		---	[8..31]	Reserved (zero)
25Ch	V_RATE_INQ (Format_2, Mode_7)	FrameRate_0	[0]	1.875 fps
		FrameRate_1	[1]	3.75 fps
		FrameRate_2	[2]	7.5 fps
		FrameRate_3	[3]	15 fps
		FrameRate_4	[4]	30 fps
		FrameRate_5	[5]	60 fps
		FrameRate_6	[6]	Reserved
		FrameRate_7	[7]	Reserved
		---	[8..31]	Reserved
260h ... 2BFh	Reserved V_RATE_INQ_y_x (for other Format_y, Mode_x)			
2C0h	V_REV_INQ_6_0 (Format_6, Mode0)			Always 0
2C4h .. 2DFh	Reserved V_REV_INQ_6_x (for other Mode_x of Format_6)			Always 0

Table 134: **Frame rate** inquiry register

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
2E0h		V-CSR_INQ_7_0	[0..31]	CSR_quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_0
2E4h		V-CSR_INQ_7_1	[0..31]	CSR_quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_1
2E8h		V-CSR_INQ_7_2	[0..31]	CSR_quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_2
2ECh		V-CSR_INQ_7_3	[0..31]	CSR_quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_3
2F0h		V-CSR_INQ_7_4	[0..31]	CSR_quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_4
2F4h		V-CSR_INQ_7_5	[0..31]	CSR_quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_5
2F8h		V-CSR_INQ_7_6	[0..31]	CSR_quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_6
2FCh		V-CSR_INQ_7_7	[0..31]	CSR_quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_7

Table 134: **Frame rate** inquiry register

## Inquiry register for basic function

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
400h	BASIC_FUNC_INQ	Advanced_Feature_Inq	[0]	Inquiry for advanced features (Vendor unique Features)
		Vmode_Error_Status_Inq	[1]	Inquiry for existence of Vmode_Error_Status register
		Feature_Control_Error_Status_Inq	[2]	Inquiry for existence of Feature_Control_Error_Status
		Opt_Func_CSR_Inq	[3]	Inquiry for Opt_Func_CSR
		---	[4..7]	Reserved
		1394b_mode_Capability	[8]	Inquiry for 1394b_mode_Capability
		---	[9..15]	Reserved
		Cam_Power_Cntl	[16]	Camera process power ON/OFF capability
		---	[17..18]	Reserved
		One_Shot_Inq	[19]	One Shot transmission capability
		Multi_Shot_Inq	[20]	Multi Shot transmission capability
		---	[21..27]	Reserved
		Memory_Channel	[28..31]	Maximum memory channel number (N) If 0000, no user memory available

Table 135: **Basic function** inquiry register

## Inquiry register for feature presence

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
404h	FEATURE_HI_INQ	Brightness	[0]	Brightness Control
		Auto_Exposure	[1]	Auto_Exposure Control
		Sharpness	[2]	Sharpness Control
		White_Balance	[3]	White_Balance Control
		Hue	[4]	Hue Control
		Saturation	[5]	Saturation Control
		Gamma	[6]	Gamma Control
		Shutter	[7]	Shutter Control
		Gain	[8]	Gain Control
		Iris	[9]	Iris Control
		Focus	[10]	Focus Control
		Temperature	[11]	Temperature Control
		Trigger	[12]	Trigger Control
		Trigger_Delay	[13]	Trigger_Delay Control
		White_Shading	[14]	White_Shading Control
		Frame_Rate	[15]	Frame_Rate Control
		---	[16..31]	Reserved
408h	FEATURE_LO_INQ	Zoom	[0]	Zoom Control
		Pan	[1]	Pan Control
		Tilt	[2]	Tilt Control
		Optical_Filter	[3]	Optical_Filter Control
		---	[4..15]	Reserved
		Capture_Size	[16]	Capture_Size for Format_6
		Capture_Quality	[17]	Capture_Quality for Format_6
		---	[16..31]	Reserved
40Ch	OPT_FUNCTION_INQ	---	[0]	Reserved
		PIO	[1]	Parallel Input/Output control
		SIO	[2]	Serial Input/Output control
		Strobe_out	[4..31]	Strobe signal output

Table 136: Feature presence inquiry register

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
410h .. 47Fh	Reserved			Address error on access
480h	Advanced_Feature_Inq	Advanced_Feature_Quadlet_Offset	[0..31]	<p>Quadlet offset of the advanced feature CSR's from the base address of initial register space (vendor unique)</p> <p>This register is the offset for the Access_Control_Register and thus the base address for Advanced Features.</p> <p>Access_Control_Register does not prevent access to advanced features. In some programs it should still always be activated first.</p> <p><b>Advanced Feature Set Unique Value is 7ACh and CompanyID is A47h.</b></p>
484h	PIO_Control_CSR_Inq	PIO_Control_Quadlet_Offset	[0..31]	Quadlet offset of the PIO_Control CSR's from the base address of initial register space (Vendor unique)
488h	SIO_Control_CSR_Inq	SIO_Control_Quadlet_Offset	[0..31]	Quadlet offset of the SIO_Control CSR's from the base address of initial register space (Vendor unique)
48Ch	Strobe_Output_CSR_Inq	Strobe_Output_Quadlet_Offset	[0..31]	Quadlet offset of the Strobe_Output signal CSR's from the base address of initial register space (vendor unique)

Table 136: Feature presence inquiry register

## Inquiry register for feature elements

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF0F00500	BRIGHTNESS_INQUIRY	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		Abs_Control_Inq	[1]	Capability of control with absolute value
		-	[2]	Reserved
		One_Push_Inq	[3]	One Push auto mode (Controlled automatically by the camera once)
		Readout_Inq	[4]	Capability of reading out the value of this feature
		ON_OFF	[5]	Capability of switching this feature ON and OFF
		Auto_Inq	[6]	Auto Mode (Controlled automatically by the camera)
		Manual_Inq	[7]	Manual Mode (Controlled by user)
		Min_Value	[8..19]	Minimum value for this feature
		Max_Value	[20..31]	Maximum value for this feature
504h	AUTO_EXPOSURE_INQ			Same definition as Brightness_inq.
508h	SHARPNESS_INQ			Same definition as Brightness_inq.
50Ch	WHITE_BAL_INQ			Same definition as Brightness_inq.
510h	HUE_INQ			Same definition as Brightness_inq.
514h	SATURATION_INQ			Same definition as Brightness_inq.
518h	GAMMA_INQ			Same definition as Brightness_inq.
51Ch	SHUTTER_INQ			Same definition as Brightness_inq.
520h	GAIN_INQ			Same definition as Brightness_inq.
524h	IRIS_INQ			Always 0
528h	FOCUS_INQ			Always 0
52Ch	TEMPERATURE_INQ			Same definition as Brightness_inq.

Table 137: Feature elements inquiry register

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
530h	TRIGGER_INQ	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		Abs_Control_Inq	[1]	Capability of control with absolute value
		---	[2..3]	Reserved
		Readout_Inq	[4]	Capability of reading out the value of this feature
		ON_OFF	[5]	Capability of switching this feature ON and OFF
		Polarity_Inq	[6]	Capability of changing the polarity of the trigger input
		---	[7..15]	Reserved
		Trigger_Mode0_Inq	[16]	Presence of Trigger_Mode 0
		Trigger_Mode1_Inq	[17]	Presence of Trigger_Mode 1
		Trigger_Mode2_Inq	[18]	Presence of Trigger_Mode 2
		Trigger_Mode3_Inq	[19]	Presence of Trigger_Mode 3
		---	[20..31]	Reserved
534h	TRIGGER_DELAY_INQUIRY	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		Abs_Control_Inq	[1]	Capability of control with absolute value
		---	[2]	Reserved
		One_Push_Inq	[3]	One Push auto mode Controlled automatically by the camera once)
		Readout_Inq	[4]	Capability of reading out the value of this feature
		ON_OFF	[5]	Capability of switching this feature ON and OFF
		Auto_Inq	[6]	Auto Mode (Controlled automatically by the camera)
		Manual_Inq	[7]	Manual Mode (Controlled by user)
		Min_Value	[8..19]	Minimum value for this feature
		Max_Value	[20..31]	Maximum value for this feature
538 .. 57Ch	Reserved for other FEATURE_HI_INQ			

Table 137: **Feature elements** inquiry register

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
580h	ZOOM_INQ			Always 0
584h	PAN_INQ			Always 0
588h	TILT_INQ			Always 0
58Ch	OPTICAL_FILTER_INQ			Always 0
590 .. 5BCh	Reserved for other FEATURE_LO_INQ			Always 0
5C0h	CAPTURE_SIZE_INQ			Always 0
5C4h	CAPTURE_QUALITY_INQ			Always 0
5C8h .. 5FCh	Reserved for other FEATURE_LO_INQ			Always 0
600h	CUR-V-Frm RATE/Revision	Bits [0..2] for the frame rate		
604h	CUR-V-MODE	Bits [0..2] for the current video mode		
608h	CUR-V-FORMAT	Bits [0..2] for the current video format		
60Ch	ISO-Channel	Bits [0..3] for channel, [6..7] for ISO speed		
610h	Camera_Power			Always 0
614h	ISO_EN/Continuous_Shot	Bit 0: 1 for start continuous shot; 0 for stop continuos shot		
618h	Memory_Save			Always 0
61Ch	One_Shot, Multi_Shot, Count Number			See Chapter <a href="#">One-shot</a> on page 207 See Chapter <a href="#">Multi-shot</a> on page 210
620h	Mem_Save_Ch			Always 0
624	Cur_Mem_Ch			Always 0
628h	Vmode_Error_Status	Error in combination of Format/Mode/ISO Speed: Bit(0): No error; Bit(0)=1: error		

Table 137: **Feature elements** inquiry register

## Inquiry register for absolute value CSR offset address

Offset	Name	Notes
700h	ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_0	Always 0
704h	ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_1	Always 0
708h	ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_2	Always 0
70Ch	ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_3	Always 0
710h	ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_4	Always 0
714h	ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_5	Always 0
718h	ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_6	Always 0
71Ch	ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_7	Always 0
720h	ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_8	Always 0
724h	ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_9	Always 0
728h	ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_10	Always 0
72Ch	ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_11	Always 0
730h	ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_12	Always 0
734	Reserved	Always 0
..		
77Fh	ABS_CSR_LO_INQ_0	Always 0
780h		
784h	ABS_CSR_LO_INQ_1	Always 0
788h	ABS_CSR_LO_INQ_2	Always 0
78Ch	ABS_CSR_LO_INQ_3	Always 0
790h	Reserved	Always 0
..		
7BFh	ABS_CSR_LO_INQ_16	Always 0
7C0h		
7C4h	ABS_CSR_LO_INQ_17	Always 0
7C8h	Reserved	Always 0
..		
7FFh		

Table 138: **Absolute value** inquiry register

## Status and control register for feature

The **OnePush** feature, WHITE\_BALANCE, is currently implemented. If this flag is set, the feature becomes immediately active, even if no images are being input (see Chapter [One-push white balance](#) on page 137).

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
800h	BRIGHTNESS	Presence_Inq	[0]	Presence of this feature 0: N/A 1: Available
		Abs_Control	[1]	Absolute value control 0: Control with value in the <b>Value</b> field 1: Control with value in the Absolute value CSR  If this bit = 1, value in the <b>Value</b> field is ignored.
		---	[2-4]	Reserved
		One_Push	[5]	Write 1: begin to work (Self cleared after operation)  Read: Value=1 in operation Value=0 not in operation  If A_M_Mode =1, this bit is ignored.
		ON_OFF	[6]	Write: ON or OFF this feature  Read: read a status 0: OFF, 1: ON  If this bit =0, other fields will be read only.
		A_M_Mode	[7]	Write: set the mode  Read: read a current mode 0: Manual 1: Auto
		---	[8-19]	Reserved
		Value	[20-31]	Value.  Write the value in Auto mode, this field is ignored.  If <b>ReadOut</b> capability is not available, read value has no meaning.

Table 139: **Feature** control register

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
804h	AUTO-EXPOSURE			See above  Note: <b>Target grey level</b> parameter in SmartView corresponds to Auto_exposure register 0xF0F00804 (I IDC).
808h	SHARPNESS			See above

 Table 139: **Feature** control register

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
80Ch	WHITE-BALANCE	Presence_Inq	[0]	Presence of this feature 0: N/A 1: Available Always 0 for Mono
		Abs_Control	[1]	Absolute value control 0: Control with value in the Value field 1: Control with value in the Absolute value CSR  If this bit = 1, value in the Value field is ignored.
		--	[2-4]	Reserved
		One_Push	[5]	Write 1: begin to work (Self cleared after operation)  Read: Value=1 in operation Value=0 not in operation  If A_M_Mode =1, this bit is ignored.
		ON_OFF	[6]	Write: ON or OFF this feature,  Read: read a status 0: OFF 1: ON  If this bit =0, other fields will be read only.
		A_M_Mode	[7]	Write: set the mode  Read: read a current mode 0: Manual 1: Auto
		U_Value / B_Value	[8-19]	U value / B value  Write the value in AUTO mode, this field is ignored.  If <b>ReadOut</b> capability is not available, read value has no meaning.
		V_Value / R_Value	[20-31]	V value / R value  Write the value in AUTO mode, this field is ignored.  If <b>ReadOut</b> capability is not available, read value has no meaning.

Table 139: Feature control register

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
810h	HUE			See above Always 0 for Mono
814h	SATURATION			See above Always 0 for Mono
818h	GAMMA			See above
81Ch	SHUTTER			see Advanced Feature time base see <a href="#">Table 40: CSR: Shutter on page 141</a>
820h	GAIN			See above
824h	IRIS			Always 0
828h	FOCUS			Always 0
82Ch	TEMPERATURE			Always 0
830h	TRIGGER-MODE			Can be effected via advanced feature IO_INP_CTRLx.
834h .. 87C	Reserved for other FEATURE_HI			Always 0
880h	Zoom			Always 0
884h	PAN			Always 0
888h	TILT			Always 0
88Ch	OPTICAL_FILTER			Always 0
890 .. 8BCh	Reserved for other FEATURE_LO			Always 0
8C0h	CAPTURE-SIZE			Always 0
8C4h	CAPTURE-QUALITY			Always 0
8C8h .. 8FCh	Reserved for other FEATURE_LO			Always 0

Table 139: **Feature** control register

## Feature control error status register

Offset	Name	Notes
640h	Feature_Control_Error_Status_HI	Always 0
644h	Feature_Control_Error_Status_LO	Always 0

Table 140: Feature control error register

## Video mode control and status registers for Format\_7

### Quadlet offset Format\_7 Mode\_0

The quadlet offset to the base address for **Format\_7 Mode\_0**, which can be read out at F0F002E0h (according to [Table 134: Frame rate inquiry register](#) on page 292) gives 003C2000h.

$4 \times 3C2000h = F08000h$  so that the base address for the latter ([Table 141: Format\\_7 control and status register](#) on page 312) equals  $F0000000h + F08000h = F0F08000h$ .

### Quadlet offset Format\_7 Mode\_1

The quadlet offset to the base address for **Format\_7 Mode\_1**, which can be read out at F0F002E4h (according to [Table 134: Frame rate inquiry register](#) on page 292) gives 003C2400h.

$4 \times 003C2400h = F09000h$  so that the base address for the latter ([Table 141: Format\\_7 control and status register](#) on page 312) equals  $F0000000h + F09000h = F0F09000h$ .

### Format\_7 control and status register (CSR)

Offset	Name	Notes
000h	MAX_IMAGE_SIZE_INQ	According to IIDC V1.31
004h	UNIT_SIZE_INQ	According to IIDC V1.31
008h	IMAGE_POSITION	According to IIDC V1.31
00Ch	IMAGE_SIZE	According to IIDC V1.31
010h	COLOR_CODING_ID	See note
014h	COLOR_CODING_INQ	According to IIDC V1.31

Table 141: Format\_7 control and status register

Offset	Name	Notes
024h . . 033h	COLOR_CODING_INQ	Vendor Unique Color_Coding 0-127 (ID=128-255) <b>ID=132 ECCID_MON012</b> <b>ID=136 ECCID_RAW12</b>  ID=133 Reserved ID=134 Reserved ID=135 Reserved  See Chapter <a href="#">Packed 12-Bit Mode</a> on page 178.
034h	PIXEL_NUMER_INQ	According to IIDC V1.31
038h	TOTAL_BYTES_HI_INQ	According to IIDC V1.31
03Ch	TOTAL_BYTES_LO_INQ	According to IIDC V1.31
040h	PACKET PARA INQ	See note
044h	BYTE PER PACKET	According to IIDC V1.31

Table 141: **Format\_7** control and status registerNote

- For all modes in Format\_7, **ErrorFlag\_1** and **ErrorFlag\_2** are refreshed on each access to the Format\_7 Register.
- Contrary to IIDC DCAM V1.31, registers relevant to Format\_7 are refreshed on each access. The **Setting\_1** bit is automatically cleared after each access.
- When **ErrorFlag\_1** or **ErrorFlag\_2** are set and Format\_7 is configured, no image capture is started.
- Contrary to IIDC V1.31, COLOR\_CODING\_ID is set to a default value after an INITIALIZE or **reset**.
- Contrary to IIDC V1.31, the **UnitBytePerPacket** field is already filled in with a fixed value in the PACKET PARA INQ register.

## Advanced features

The camera has a variety of extended features going beyond the possibilities described in IIDC V1.31. The following chapter summarizes all available advanced features in ascending register order.

**Note**



This chapter is a **reference guide for advanced registers** and does not explain the advanced features itself.

For detailed description of the theoretical background see

- Chapter [Description of the data path](#) on page 130
- Links given in the table below

The following table gives an overview of all available registers:

Register	Register name	Remarks
0xF1000010	VERSION_INFO01	see <a href="#">Table 143: Advanced register: Extended version information</a> on page 318
0xF1000018	VERSION_INFO03	
0xF1000040	ADV_INQ_1	see <a href="#">Table 145: Advanced register: Advanced feature inquiry</a> on page 320
0xF1000044	ADV_INQ_2	
0xF1000048	ADV_INQ_3	In ADV_INQ_3 there are two new fields: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Paramupd_Timing [2]</li> <li>• F7MODE_MAPPING [3]</li> </ul>
0xF100004C	ADV_INQ_4	
0xF1000100	CAMERA_STATUS	see <a href="#">Table 146: Advanced register: Camera status</a> on page 322
0xF1000200	MAX_RESOLUTION	see <a href="#">Table 147: Advanced register: Maximum resolution inquiry</a> on page 323
0xF1000208	TIMEBASE	see <a href="#">Table 148: Advanced register: Time base</a> on page 323
0xF100020C	EXTD_SHUTTER	see <a href="#">Table 150: Advanced register: Extended shutter</a> on page 325
0xF1000210	TEST_IMAGE	see <a href="#">Table 151: Advanced register: Test image</a> on page 326
0xF1000220	SEQUENCE_CTRL	see <a href="#">Table 72: Advanced register: Sequence mode</a> on page 214
0xF1000224	SEQUENCE_PARAM	
0xF1000228	SEQUENCE_STEP	
0xF1000240	LUT_CTRL	see <a href="#">Table 152: Advanced register: LUT</a> on page 327
0xF1000244	LUT_MEM_CTRL	
0xF1000248	LUT_INFO	

Table 142: **Advanced registers** summary

Register	Register name	Remarks
0xF1000250	SHDG_CTRL	see <a href="#">Table 153: Advanced register: Shading</a> on page 330
0xF1000254	SHDG_MEM_CTRL	
0xF1000258	SHDG_INFO	
0xF1000260	DEFERRED_TRANS	see <a href="#">Table 155: Advanced register: Deferred image transport</a> on page 333
0xF1000270	FRAMEINFO	see <a href="#">Table 156: Advanced register: Frame information</a> on page 334
0xF1000274	FRAMECOUNTER	
0xF1000300	IO_INP_CTRL1	see <a href="#">Table 25: Advanced register: Input control</a> on page 116
0xF1000304	IO_INP_CTRL2	
0xF1000308	IO_INP_CTRL3	
0xF100030C	IO_INP_CTRL4	
0xF1000320	IO_OUTP_CTRL1	see <a href="#">Table 31: Advanced register: Output control</a> on page 121
0xF1000324	IO_OUTP_CTRL2	
0xF1000328	IO_OUTP_CTRL3	
0xF100032C	IO_OUTP_CTRL4	
0xF1000340	IO_INTENA_DELAY	see <a href="#">Table 157: Advanced register: Delayed Integration Enable</a> on page 335
0xF1000360	AUTOSHUTTER_CTRL	see <a href="#">Table 158: Advanced register: Auto shutter control</a> on page 336
0xF1000364	AUTOSHUTTER_LO	
0xF1000368	AUTOSHUTTER_HI	
0xF1000370	AUTOGAIN_CTRL	see <a href="#">Table 159: Advanced register: Auto gain control</a> on page 337
0xF1000390	AUTOFNC_AOI	see <a href="#">Table 160: Advanced register: Autofunction AOI</a> on page 338
0xF1000394	AF_AREA_POSITION	
0xF1000398	AF_AREA_SIZE	
0xF10003A0	COLOR_CORR	Pike color cameras only see <a href="#">Table 161: Advanced register: Color correction</a> on page 339

Table 142: Advanced registers summary

Register	Register name	Remarks
0xF10003A4	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC11 = Crr	Pike color camera only  see <a href="#">Table 161: Advanced register: Color correction</a> on page 339
0xF10003A8	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC12 = Cgr	
0xF10003AC	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC13 = Cbr	
0xF10003B0	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC21 = Crg	
0xF10003B4	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC22 = Cgg	
0xF10003B8	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC23 = Cbg	
0xF10003BC	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC31 = Crb	
0xF10003C0	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC32 = Cgb	
0xF10003C4	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC33 = Cbb	
0xF1000400	TRIGGER_DELAY	see <a href="#">Table 162: Advanced register: Trigger delay</a> on page 340
0xF1000410	MIRROR_IMAGE	see <a href="#">Table 163: Advanced register: Mirror</a> on page 340
0xF1000420	AFE_CHN_COMP	see <a href="#">Table 164: Advanced register: Channel balance</a> on page 341
0xF1000424		
0xF1000428		
0xF1000430	DUAL TAP OFFSET ADJUSTMENT	see <a href="#">Table 165: Advanced register: Dual-tap offset adjustment</a> on page 341
0xF1000434		
0xF1000440	LOW_SMEAR	see Chapter <a href="#">Smear reduction</a> on page 358
0xF1000510	SOFT_RESET	see <a href="#">Table 166: Advanced register: Soft reset</a> on page 342
0xF1000520	HIGH_SNR	see <a href="#">Table 167: Advanced register: High Signal Noise Ratio (HSNR)</a> on page 343
0xF1000550	USER PROFILES	see <a href="#">Table 183: Advanced register: User profiles</a> on page 359
0xF1000560	F7MODE_MAPPING	see <a href="#">Table 175: Advanced register: Format_7 mode mapping</a> on page 351
0xF1000570	PARAMUPD_TIMING	see Chapter <a href="#">Quick parameter change timing modes</a> on page 346
0xF1000580	LOW_NOISE_BINNING	see Chapter <a href="#">Low-noise binning mode (only 2 x H-binning)</a> on page 347
0xF1000620	TRIGGER_COUNTER	see <a href="#">Table 180: Advanced register: Trigger counter</a> on page 356
0xF1000630	SIS	
<b>0xF1000640</b>	<b>SWFEATURE_CTRL</b>	See <a href="#">Table 172: Advanced register: Software feature control (disable LEDs/switch single-tap and dual-tap)</a> on page 348

Table 142: Advanced registers summary

Register	Register name	Remarks
0xF1000800 0xF1000804	IO_OUTP_PWM1	See <a href="#">Table 33: PWM configuration registers</a> on page 124
0xF1000808 0xF100080C	IO_OUTP_PWM2	
0xF1000810 0xF1000814	IO_OUTP_PWM3	
0xF1000818 0xF100081C	IO_OUTP_PWM4	
0xF1000840	IO_INP_DEBOUNCE_1	
0xF1000850	IO_INP_DEBOUNCE_2	
0xF1000860	IO_INP_DEBOUNCE_3	
0xF1000870	IO_INP_DEBOUNCE_4	
0xF1000A00 0xF1000A04 0xF1000A08	FRAMETIME_CTRL	see <a href="#">Frame time control</a> on page 362
0xF1000FFC	GPDATA_INFO	see <a href="#">Table 187: Advanced register: GPDATa buffer</a> on page 364
0xF1001000 ...	GPDATA_BUFFER	
0xF1100000	PARRAMLIST_INFO	see Chapter <a href="#">Parameter-List Update</a> on page 350
0xF1101000	PARAMLIST_BUFFER	
0xF1002000	AFEREFERENCES	see Chapter <a href="#">User adjustable gain references</a> on page 365

Table 142: Advanced registers summary

**Note** Advanced features should always be activated before accessing them.



**Note**

- Currently all registers can be written without being activated. This makes it easier to operate the camera using **Directcontrol**.
- AVT reserves the right to require activation in future versions of the software.



## Extended version information register

The presence of each of the following features can be queried by the **0** bit of the corresponding register.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000010	VERSION_INFO1	μC type ID	[0..15]	Always 0
		μC version	[16..31]	Bcd-coded version number
0xF1000014	VERSION_INFO1_EX	μC version	[0..31]	Bcd-coded version number
0xF1000018	VERSION_INFO3	Camera type ID	[0..15]	See <a href="#">Table 144: Camera type ID list</a> on page 319.
		FPGA version	[16..31]	Bcd-coded version number
0xF100001C	VERSION_INFO3_EX	FPGA version	[0..31]	Bcd-coded version number
0xF1000020		---	[0..31]	Reserved
0xF1000024		---	[0..31]	Reserved
0xF1000028		---	[0..31]	Reserved
0xF100002C		---	[0..31]	Reserved
0xF1000030		OrderIDHigh	[0..31]	8 Byte ASCII Order ID
0xF1000034		OrderIDLLow	[0..31]	

Table 143: Advanced register: **Extended version** information

The μC version and FPGA firmware version numbers are bcd-coded, which means that e.g. firmware version 0.85 is read as 0x0085 and version 1.10 is read as 0x0110.

The newly added **VERSION\_INFOx\_EX** registers contain extended bcd-coded version information formatted as *special.major.minor.patch*.

So reading the value **0x00223344** is decoded as:

- special: 0 (decimal)
- major: 22 (decimal)
- minor: 33 (decimal)
- patch: 44 (decimal)

This is decoded to the human readable version **22.33.44** (leading zeros are omitted).

**Note**

If a camera returns the register set to all zero, that particular camera does not support the extended version information.



The FPGA type ID (= camera type ID) identifies the camera type with the help of the following list:

ID	Camera type
101	PIKE F-032B
102	PIKE F-032C
103	PIKE F-100B
104	PIKE F-100C
105	PIKE F-145B
106	PIKE F-145C
107	PIKE F-210B
108	PIKE F-210C
109	---
110	---
111	PIKE F-421B
112	PIKE F-421C
113	---
114	---
115	PIKE F-145B-15fps
116	PIKE F-145C-15fps
117	PIKE F-505B
118	PIKE F-505C
119	---
120	---
121	---
122	---
123	PIKE F-1100B
124	PIKE F-1100C
125	PIKE F-1600B
126	PIKE F-1600C

Table 144: Camera type ID list

## Advanced feature inquiry

This register indicates with a named bit if a feature is present or not. If a feature is marked as not present the associated register space might not be available and read/write errors may occur.

**Note** \_\_\_\_\_ Ignore unnamed bits in the following table: these bits might be set or not.



Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000040	ADV_INQ_1	MaxResolution	[0]	
		TimeBase	[1]	
		ExtdShutter	[2]	
		TestImage	[3]	
		FrameInfo	[4]	
		Sequences	[5]	
		VersionInfo	[6]	
		---	[7]	Reserved
		Look-up tables	[8]	
		Shading	[9]	
		DeferredTrans	[10]	
		HDR mode	[11]	
		---	[12]	Reserved
		---	[13]	Reserved
		TriggerDelay	[14]	
		Mirror image	[15]	
		Soft Reset	[16]	
		High SNR	[17]	
		Color Correction	[18]	
		---	[19..20]	Reserved
		User Sets	[21]	
		---	[22..29]	Reserved
		Paramlist_Info	[30]	
		GP_Buffer	[31]	

Table 145: Advanced register: **Advanced feature inquiry**

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000044	ADV_INQ_2	Input_1	[0]	
		Input_2	[1]	
		---	[2..7]	Reserved
		Output_1	[8]	
		Output_2	[9]	
		Output_3	[10]	
		Output_4	[11]	
		---	[12..15]	Reserved
		IntEnaDelay	[16]	
		---	[17..23]	Reserved
		Output 1 PWM	[24]	
		Output 2 PWM	[25]	
		Output 3 PWM	[26]	
		Output 4 PWM	[27]	
		---	[28..31]	Reserved
0xF1000048	ADV_INQ_3	Camera Status	[0]	
		Max IsoSize	[1]	
		Paramupd_Timing	[2]	
		F7 mode mapping	[3]	
		Auto Shutter	[4]	
		Auto Gain	[5]	
		Auto FNC AOI	[6]	
		---	[7..31]	Reserved
0xF100004C	ADV_INQ_4	HDR Pike	[0]	
		Channel Compensation	[1]	
		Smear reduction	[2]	
		---	[18..31]	Reserved

Table 145: Advanced register: **Advanced feature inquiry**

## Camera status

This register allows to determine the current status of the camera. The most important flag is the **Idle** flag.

If the **Idle** flag is set the camera does not capture and does not send any images (but images might be present in the image FIFO).

The **ExSyncArmed** flag indicates that the camera is set up for external triggering. Even if the camera is waiting for an external trigger event the **Idle** flag might get set.

Other bits in this register might be set or toggled: just ignore these bits.

### Note



- Excessive polling of this register may slow down the operation of the camera. Therefore the time between two polls of the status register should not be less than 5 milliseconds. If the time between two read accesses is lower than 5 milliseconds the response will be delayed.
- Depending on shutter and isochronous settings the status flags might be set for a very short time and thus will not be recognized by your application.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000100	CAMERA_STATUS	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..23]	Reserved
		ID	[24..31]	Implementation ID = 0x01
0xF1000104		---	[0..14]	Reserved
		ExSyncArmed	[15]	External trigger enabled
		---	[16..27]	Reserved
		ISO	[28]	Isochronous transmission
		---	[29..30]	Reserved
		Idle	[31]	Camera idle

Table 146: Advanced register: **Camera status**

## Maximum resolution

This register indicates the highest resolution for the sensor and is read-only.

**Note** This register normally outputs the MAX\_IMAGE\_SIZE\_INQ Format\_7 Mode\_0 value.



This is the value given in the specifications tables under **Picture size (max.)** in Chapter [Specifications](#) on page 85ff.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000200	MAX_RESOLUTION	MaxHeight	[0..15]	Sensor height (read only)
		MaxWidth	[16..31]	Sensor width (read only)

Table 147: Advanced register: **Maximum resolution** inquiry

## Time base

Corresponding to IIDC, exposure time is set via a 12-bit value in the corresponding register (SHUTTER\_INQ [51Ch] and SHUTTER [81Ch]).

This means that you can enter a value in the range of 1 to 4095.

PIKE cameras use a time base which is multiplied by the shutter register value. This multiplier is configured as the time base via the TIMEBASE register.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000208	TIMEBASE	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..7]	Reserved
		ExpOffset	[8..19]	Exposure offset in $\mu$ s
		---	[20..27]	Reserved
		Timebase_ID	[28..31]	See <a href="#">Table 149: Time base ID</a> on page 324.

Table 148: Advanced register: **Time base**

The time base IDs 0-9 are in bit [28] to [31]. See [Table 149: Time base ID](#) on page 324.

Default time base is 20  $\mu$ s: This means that the integration time can be changed in 20  $\mu$ s increments with the shutter control.

**Note**

Time base can only be changed when the camera is in idle state and becomes active only after setting the shutter value.



The **ExpOffset** field specifies the camera specific exposure time offset in microseconds ( $\mu\text{s}$ ). This time (which should be equivalent to [Table 64: Camera-specific exposure time offset](#) on page 204) has to be added to the exposure time (set by any shutter register) to compute the real exposure time.

The **ExpOffset** field might be zero for some cameras: this has to be assumed as an unknown exposure time offset (according to former software versions).

ID	Time base in $\mu\text{s}$	Default value
0	1	
1	2	
2	5	
3	10	
4	20	
5	50	
6	100	
7	200	
8	500	
9	1000	

Table 149: Time base ID

**Note**

The ABSOLUTE VALUE CSR register, introduced in IIDC V1.3, is not implemented.



## Extended shutter

The exposure time for long-term integration of up to 67 seconds can be entered with  $\mu\text{s}$  precision via the EXTENDED\_SHUTTER register.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF100020C	EXTD_SHUTTER	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	Reserved
		ExpTime	[6..31]	Exposure time in $\mu\text{s}$

Table 150: Advanced register: **Extended shutter**

The minimum allowed exposure time depends on the camera model. To determine this value write **1** to the **ExpTime** field and read back the minimum allowed exposure time.

The longest exposure time, 3FFFFFFh, corresponds to 67.11 seconds.

**Note**



- Exposure times entered via the 81Ch register are mirrored in the extended register, but not vice versa.
- Changes in this register have immediate effect, even when camera is transmitting.
- Extended shutter becomes inactive after writing to a format / mode / frame rate register.
- Extended shutter setting will thus be overwritten by the normal time base/shutter setting after Stop/Start of FireView or FireDemo.

## Test images

Bit [8] to [14] indicate which test images are saved. Setting bit [28] to [31] activates or deactivates existing test images.

By activating any test image the following auto features are automatically disabled:

- auto gain
- auto shutter
- auto white balance

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000210	TEST_IMAGE	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..7]	Reserved
		Image_Inq_1	[8]	Presence of test image 1 0: N/A 1: Available
		Image_Inq_2	[9]	Presence of test image 2 0: N/A 1: Available
		Image_Inq_3	[10]	Presence of test image 3 0: N/A 1: Available
		Image_Inq_4	[11]	Presence of test image 4 0: N/A 1: Available
		Image_Inq_5	[12]	Presence of test image 5 0: N/A 1: Available
		Image_Inq_6	[13]	Presence of test image 6 0: N/A 1: Available
		Image_Inq_7	[14]	Presence of test image 7 0: N/A 1: Available
		---	[15..27]	Reserved
		TestImage_ID	[28..31]	0: No test image active 1: Image 1 active 2: Image 2 active ...

Table 151: Advanced register: **Test image**

## Look-up tables (LUT)

Load the look-up tables to be used into the camera and choose the look-up table number via the **LutNo** field. Now you can activate the chosen LUT via the LUT\_CTRL register.

The LUT\_INFO register indicates how many LUTs the camera can store and shows the maximum size of the individual LUTs.

The possible values for **LutNo** are 0..n-1, whereas n can be determined by reading the field **NumOfLuts** of the LUT\_INFO register.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000240	LUT_CTRL	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	Reserved
		ON_OFF	[6]	Enable/disable this feature
		---	[7..25]	Reserved
		LutNo	[26..31]	Use look-up table with <b>LutNo</b> number
0xF1000244	LUT_MEM_CTRL	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..4]	Reserved
		EnableMemWR	[5]	Enable write access
		---	[6..7]	Reserved
		AccessLutNo	[8..15]	Reserved
		AddrOffset	[16..31]	byte
0xF1000248	LUT_INFO	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..2]	Reserved
		BitsPerValue	[3..7]	Bits used per table item
		NumOfLuts	[8..15]	Maximum number of look-up tables
		MaxLutSize	[16..31]	Maximum look-up table size (bytes)

Table 152: Advanced register: **LUT**

**Note**

The **BitsPerValue** field indicates how many bits are read from the LUT for any gray-value read from the sensor. To determine the number of bytes occupied for each gray-value round-up the **BitsPerValue** field to the next byte boundary.

Examples:

- BitsPerValue = 8 → 1 byte per gray-value
- BitsPerValue = 14 → 2 byte per gray-value

Divide **MaxLutSize** by the number of bytes per gray-value in order to get the number of bits read from the sensor.

**Note**

Pike cameras have the gamma feature implemented via a built-in look-up table. Therefore you can not use gamma and your own look-up table at the same time. Nevertheless you may combine a gamma look-up table into your own look-up table.

**Note**

When using the LUT feature and the gamma feature pay attention to the following:

- gamma ON → look-up table is switched ON also
- gamma OFF → look-up table is switched OFF also
- look-up table OFF → gamma is switched OFF also
- look-up table ON → gamma is switched OFF

### **Loading a look-up table into the camera**

Loading a look-up table into the camera is done through the **GPDATA\_BUFFER**. Because the size of the **GPDATA\_BUFFER** is smaller than a complete look-up table the data must be written in multiple steps.

To load a lookup table into the camera:

1. Query the limits and ranges by reading **LUT\_INFO** and **GPDATA\_INFO**.
2. Set **EnableMemWR** to true (1).
3. Set **AccessLutNo** to the desired number.
4. Set **AddrOffset** to 0.
5. Write n lookup table data bytes to **GPDATA\_BUFFER** (n might be lower than the size of the **GPDATA\_BUFFER**; **AddrOffset** is automatically adjusted inside the camera).
6. Repeat step 5 until all data is written into the camera.
7. Set **EnableMemWR** to false (0).

## Shading correction

Owing to technical circumstances, the interaction of recorded objects with one another, optical effects and lighting non-homogeneities may occur in the images.

Because these effects are normally not desired, they should be eliminated as far as possible in subsequent image editing. The camera has automatic shading correction to do this.

Provided that a shading image is present in the camera, the **on/off** bit can be used to enable shading correction.

The **on/off** and **ShowImage** bits must be set for saved shading images to be displayed.

**Note**



- Always make sure that the shading image is saved at the highest resolution of the camera. If a lower resolution is chosen and ShowImage is set to **true**, the image will not be displayed correctly.
- The shading image is computed using the current video settings. On fixed video modes the selected frame rate also affects the computation time.
- The build process will not work, if a MON016/RGB16 format is active.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000250	SHDG_CTRL	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		BuildError	[1]	Could not built shading image
		---	[2..3]	Reserved
		ShowImage	[4]	Show shading data as image
		BuildImage	[5]	Build a new shading image
		ON_OFF	[6]	Shading on/off
		Busy	[7]	Build in progress
		MemChannelSave	[8]	Save shading data in flash memory
		MemChannelLoad	[9]	Load shading data from flash memory
		MemChannelClear	[10]	Erase flash memory
		---	[11..15]	Reserved
		MemChannelError	[16..19]	Indicates memory channel error. See <a href="#">Table 154: Memory channel error description</a> on page 332.
		MemoryChannel	[20..23]	Set memory channel number for save and load operations
		GrabCount	[24..31]	Number of images
0xF1000254	SHDG_MEM_CTRL	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..4]	Reserved
		EnableMemWR	[5]	Enable write access
		EnableMemRD	[6]	Enable read access
		---	[7]	Reserved
		AddrOffset	[8..31]	In bytes
0xF1000258	SHDG_INFO	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..3]	Reserved
		MaxMemChannel	[4..7]	Maximum number of available memory channels to store shading images
		MaxImageSize	[8..31]	Maximum shading image size (in bytes)

Table 153: Advanced register: **Shading**

## Reading or writing shading image from/into the camera

Accessing the shading image inside the camera is done through the GDATA\_BUFFER. Because the size of the GDATA\_BUFFER is smaller than a whole shading image the data must be written in multiple steps.

To read or write a shading image:

1. Query the limits and ranges by reading SHDG\_INFO and GDATA\_INFO.
2. Set **EnableMemWR** or **EnableMemRD** to true (1).
3. Set **AddrOffset** to 0.
4. Write n shading data bytes to GDATA\_BUFFER (n might be lower than the size of the GDATA\_BUFFER; AddrOffset is automatically adjusted inside the camera).
5. Repeat step 4 until all data is written into the camera.
6. Set **EnableMemWR** and **EnableMemRD** to false.

## Automatic generation of a shading image

Shading image data may also be generated by the camera. To use this feature make sure all settings affecting an image are set properly. The camera uses the current active resolution to generate the shading image.

To generate a shading image:

1. Set **GrabCount** to the number of the images to be averaged before the correction factors are calculated.
2. Set **BuildImage** to true.
3. Poll the SHDG\_CTRL register until the **Busy** and **BuildImage** flags are reset automatically.

The maximum value of GrabCount depends on the camera type and the number of available image buffers. GrabCount is automatically adjusted to a power of two.

Do not poll the SHDG\_CTRL register too often, while automatic generation is in progress. Each poll delays the process of generating the shading image. An optimal poll interval time is 500 ms.

## Non-volatile memory operations

Pike cameras support storing shading image data into non-volatile memory. Once a shading image is stored it is automatically reloaded on each camera reset.

**MaxMemChannel** indicates the number of so-called memory channels/slots available for storing shading images.

To store a shading image into non-volatile memory:

1. Set **MemoryChannel** to the desired memory channel and **MemoryChannelSave** to true (1).
2. Read **MemoryChannelError** to check for errors.

To reload a shading image from non-volatile memory:

1. Set **MemoryChannel** to the desired memory channel and **MemChannelLoad** to true (1).
2. Read **MemChannelError** to check for errors.

To clear already stored shading image data in non-volatile memory (shading image data won't be loaded on camera resets):

1. Set **MemoryChannel** to the desired memory channel and **MemChannelClear** to true (1).
2. Read **MemChannelError** to check for errors.

**Note** The flash memory (non-volatile memory) of Pike cameras has a **minimum of 100 000 write-erase cycles**.



### Memory channel error codes

ID	Error description
0x00	No error
0x01	Memory detection error
0x02	Memory size error
0x03	Memory erase error
0x04	Memory write error
0x05	Memory header write error
0x0F	Memory channel out of range

Table 154: **Memory channel** error description

## Deferred image transport

Using this register, the sequence of recording and the transfer of the images can be paused. Setting **HoldImg** prevents transfer of the image. The images are stored in **ImageFIFO**.

The images indicated by **NumOfImages** are sent by setting the **SendImage** bit.

When **FastCapture** is set (in Format\_7 only), images are recorded at the highest possible frame rate.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000260	DEFERRED_TRANS	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..4]	Reserved
		SendImage	[5]	Send NumOfImages now (auto reset)
		HoldImg	[6]	Enable/Disable deferred transport mode
		FastCapture	[7]	Enable/disable fast capture mode
		---	[8..15]	Reserved
		FiFoSize	[16..23]	Size of FiFo in number of images (read only)
		NumOfImages	[24..31]	Write: Number of images to send Read: Number of images in buffer

Table 155: Advanced register: **Deferred image transport**

## Frame information

This register can be used to double-check the number of images received by the host computer against the number of images which were transmitted by the camera. The camera increments this counter with every FrameValid signal. This is a mirror of the frame counter information found at 0xF1000610.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000270	FRAMEINFO	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		ResetFrameCnt	[1]	Reset frame counter
		---	[1..31]	Reserved
0xF1000274	FRAMECOUNTER	FrameCounter	[0..31]	Number of captured frames since last reset

Table 156: Advanced register: **Frame information**

The **FrameCounter** is incremented when an image is read out of the sensor.

The **FrameCounter** does not indicate whether an image was sent over the IEEE 1394 bus or not.

## Input/output pin control

### Note



- See Chapter [Input/output pin control](#) on page 116
- See Chapter [IO\\_INP\\_CTRL 1-2](#) on page 117
- See Chapter [IO\\_OUTP\\_CTRL 1-4](#) on page 121
- See Chapter [Output modes](#) on page 122

## Delayed Integration enable

A delay time between initiating exposure on the sensor and the activation edge of the **IntEna** signal can be set using this register. The **on/off** flag activates/deactivates integration delay. The time can be set in  $\mu\text{s}$  in **DelayTime**.

### Note



- Only one edge is delayed.
- If **IntEna\_Out** is used to control an exposure, it is possible to have a variation in brightness or to precisely time a flash.

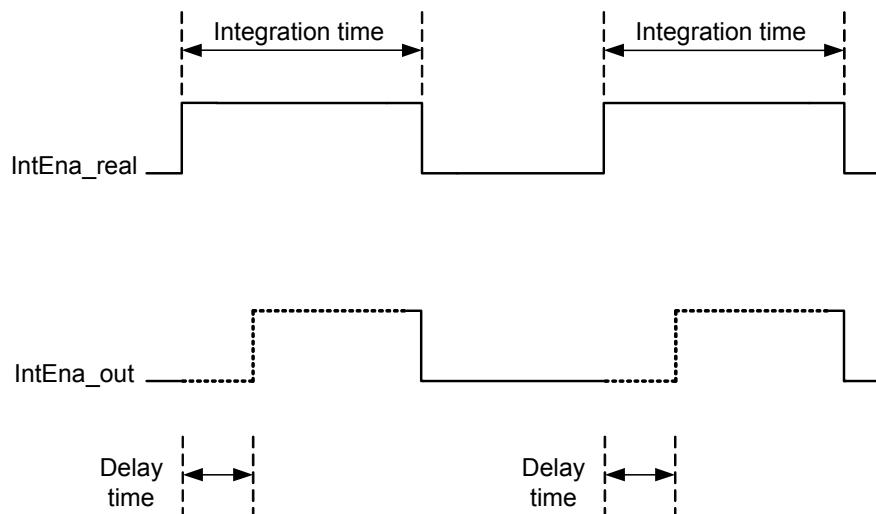


Figure 150: Delayed integration timing

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000340	IO_INTENA_DELAY	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	Reserved
		ON_OFF	[6]	Enable/disable integration enable delay
		---	[7..11]	Reserved
		DELAY_TIME	[12..31]	Delay time in $\mu\text{s}$

Table 157: Advanced register: **Delayed Integration Enable**

## Auto shutter control

The table below illustrates the advanced register for **auto shutter control**. The purpose of this register is to limit the range within which auto shutter operates.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000360	AUTOSHUTTER_CTRL	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..31]	Reserved
0xF1000364	AUTOSHUTTER_LO	---	[0..5]	Reserved
		MinValue	[6..31]	Minimum auto shutter value lowest possible value: 10 µs
0xF1000368	AUTOSHUTTER_HI	---	[0..5]	Reserved
		MaxValue	[6..31]	Maximum auto shutter value

Table 158: Advanced register: **Auto shutter control**

**Note**



- Values can only be changed within the limits of shutter CSR.
- Changes in auto exposure register only have an effect when auto shutter is enabled.
- Auto exposure limits are: 50..205 (**SmartView**→**Ctrl1** tab: **Target grey level**)

When both **auto shutter** and **auto gain** are enabled, priority is given to increasing shutter when brightness decreases. This is done to achieve the best image quality with lowest noise.

For increasing brightness, priority is given to lowering gain first for the same purpose.

**MinValue** and **MaxValue** limits the range the auto shutter feature is allowed to use for the regulation process. Both values are initialized with the minimum and maximum value defined in the standard SHUTTER\_INQ register (multiplied by the current active timebase).

If you change the **MinValue** and/or **MaxValue** and the new range exceeds the range defined by the SHUTTER\_INQ register, the standard SHUTTER register will not show correct shutter values. In this case you should read the EXTENDED\_SHUTTER register for the current active shutter time.

Changing the auto shutter range might not affect the regulation, if the regulation is in a stable condition and no other condition affecting the image brightness is changed.

If both **auto gain** and **auto shutter** are enabled and if the shutter is at its upper boundary and gain regulation is in progress, increasing the upper auto shutter boundary has no effect on auto gain/shutter regulation as long as auto gain regulation is active.

**Note** As with the Extended Shutter the value of **MinValue** and **MaxValue** must not be set to a lower value than the minimum shutter time.



## Auto gain control

The table below illustrates the advanced register for **auto gain control**.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000370	AUTOGAIN_CTRL	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..3]	Reserved
		MaxValue	[4..15]	Maximum auto gain value
		---	[16..19]	Reserved
		MinValue	[20..31]	Minimum auto gain value

Table 159: Advanced register: **Auto gain control**

**MinValue** and **MaxValue** limits the range the auto gain feature is allowed to use for the regulation process. Both values are initialized with the minimum and maximum value defined in the standard GAIN\_INQ register.

Changing the **auto gain range** might not affect the regulation, if the regulation is in a stable condition and no other condition affecting the image brightness is changed.

If both **auto gain** and **auto shutter** are enabled and if the gain is at its lower boundary and shutter regulation is in progress, decreasing the lower auto gain boundary has no effect on auto gain/shutter regulation as long as auto shutter regulation is active.

Both values can only be changed within the range defined by the standard GAIN\_INQ register.

## Autofunction AOI

The table below illustrates the advanced register for **autofunction AOI**.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000390	AUTOFNC_AOI	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..3]	Reserved
		ShowWorkArea	[4]	Show work area
		---	[5]	Reserved
		ON_OFF	[6]	Enable/disable AOI (see note above)
		---	[7]	Reserved
		YUNITS	[8..19]	Y units of work area/pos. beginning with 0 (read only)
		XUNITS	[20..31]	X units of work area/pos. beginning with 0 (read only)
0xF1000394	AF_AREA_POSITION	Left	[0..15]	Work area position (left coordinate)
		Top	[16..31]	Work area position (top coordinate)
0xF1000398	AF_AREA_SIZE	Width	[0..15]	Width of work area size
		Height	[16..31]	Height of work area size

Table 160: Advanced register: **Autofunction AOI**

The possible increment of the work area position and size is defined by the YUNITS and XUNITS fields. The camera automatically adjusts your settings to permitted values.

**Note**



If the adjustment fails and the work area size and/or work area position becomes invalid, then this feature is automatically switched off.

Read back the ON\_OFF flag, if this feature does not work as expected.

## Color correction

To switch off color correction in YUV mode: see bit [6]

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF10003A0	COLOR_CORR	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	Reserved
		ON_OFF	[6]	Color correction on/off default: on Write: 02000000h to switch color correction <b>OFF</b> Write: 00000000h to switch color correction <b>ON</b>
		Reset	[7]	Reset to defaults
		---	[8..31]	Reserved
0xF10003A4	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC11 = Crr		[0..31]	A number of 1000 equals a color correction coefficient of 1.  Color correction values range -1000..+2000 and are <b>signed 32 bit</b> .  In order for white balance to work properly ensure that the row sum equals to 1000.  The maximum row sum is limited to 2000.
0xF10003A8	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC12 = Cgr		[0..31]	
0xF10003AC	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC13 = Cbr		[0..31]	
0xF10003B0	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC21 = Crg		[0..31]	
0xF10003B4	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC22 = Cgg		[0..31]	
0xF10003B8	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC23 = Cbg		[0..31]	
0xF10003BC	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC31 = Crb		[0..31]	
0xF10003C0	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC32 = Cgb		[0..31]	
0xF10003C4	COLOR_CORR_COEFFIC33 = Cbb		[0..31]	
0xF10003A4 ... 0xF10003FC				Reserved for <b>testing purposes</b> <b>Don't touch!</b>

Table 161: Advanced register: **Color correction**

For an explanation of the color correction matrix and for further information read Chapter [Color correction](#) on page 187.

## Trigger delay

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000400	TRIGGER_DELAY	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	Reserved
		ON_OFF	[6]	Trigger delay on/off
		---	[7..10]	Reserved
		DelayTime	[11..31]	Delay time in $\mu$ s

Table 162: Advanced register: **Trigger delay**

The advanced register allows start of the integration to be delayed via **DelayTime** by max.  $2^{21} \mu$ s, which is max. 2.1 s after a trigger edge was detected.

**Note** Trigger delay works with external trigger modes only.



## Mirror image

The table below illustrates the advanced register for **Mirror image**.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000410	MIRROR_IMAGE	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	Reserved
		ON_OFF	[6]	Mirror image on/off 1: on 0: off Default: off
		---	[7..31]	Reserved

Table 163: Advanced register: **Mirror**

## AFE channel compensation (channel balance)

All KODAK Pike sensors are read out via two channels: the first channel for the left half of the image and the second channel for the right half of the image.

Channel gain adjustment (Pike color cameras: only RAW8 and RAW16) for both channels can be done via the following two advanced registers:

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000420	ADV_CHN_ADJ_GAIN	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..31]	Reserved
0xF1000424	ADV_CHN_ADJ_GAIN	---	[0..15]	Reserved
		Gain_Value	[16..31]	Signed 16-bit value -8192...0...+8191  SmartView shows only: -2048...0...+2047

Table 164: Advanced register: **Channel balance**

You can save the current value in the user sets and set to default value.

## Dual-tap offset adjustment

(only for the following Pike cameras having KODAK/SONY sensors with two channels: Pike F-032/Pike F-210/Pike F-421/Pike F-505/Pike F-1100/Pike F-1600)

For fine tuning of both channels a so-called dual-tap offset adjustment is possible: in addition to channel gain adjustment also an offset adjustment can be done. This will lead to a (nearly) perfect channel compensation for all grey values.

Offset adjustment (Pike color cameras: only RAW8 and RAW16) for both channels can be done via the following two advanced registers.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000430	ADV_CHN_ADJ_OFFSET	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..31]	Reserved

Table 165: Advanced register: **Dual-tap offset adjustment**

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000434	ADV_CHN_ADJ_OFFSET+1	---	[0..15]	Reserved
		Offset_Value	[16..31]	Signed 16-bit value -255...0...+256 SmartView shows only: -255...0...+255 <b>Note:</b> Direct register access. up to +256 whereas SmartView: up to +255)

Table 165: Advanced register: **Dual-tap offset adjustment**

You can save the current value in the user sets and set to default value.

**Note** Doing the **dual-tap offset adjustment** in SmartView: Refer to the **FirePackage/FirePackage64 SmartView Manual**.



## Soft reset

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000510	SOFT_RESET	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	Reserved
		Reset	[6]	Initiate reset
		---	[7..19]	Reserved
		Delay	[20..31]	Delay reset in 10 ms steps

Table 166: Advanced register: **Soft reset**

The **soft reset** feature is similar to the **INITIALIZE** register, with the following differences:

- 1 or more bus resets will occur
- the FPGA will be rebooted

The reset can be delayed by setting the **Delay** to a value unequal to 0.

The delay is defined in 10 ms steps.

**Note** When SOFT\_RESET has been defined, the camera will respond to further read or write requests but will not process them.



## High SNR mode (High Signal Noise Ratio)

With **High SNR** mode enabled the camera internally grabs **GrabCount** images and outputs a single averaged image.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000520	HIGH_SNR	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	Reserved
		ON_OFF	[6]	High SNR mode on/off
		---	[7..22]	Reserved
		GrabCount	[23..31]	Number of images (min. 2) $2^n$ images with n=1..8 (automatically)

Table 167: Advanced register: **High Signal Noise Ratio (HSNR)**

**Note** The camera must be idle to toggle this feature on/off.



## Maximum ISO packet size

Use this feature to increase the MaxBytePerPacket value of Format\_7 modes. This overrides the maximum allowed isochronous packet size specified by IIDC V1.31.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000560	ISOSIZE_S400	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	Reserved
		ON_OFF	[6]	Enable/Disable S400 settings
		Set2Max	[7]	Set to maximum supported packet size
		---	[8..15]	Reserved
		MaxIsoSize	[16..31]	Maximum ISO packet size for S400
0xF1000564	ISOSIZE_S800	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	Reserved
		ON_OFF	[6]	Enable/Disable S800 settings
		Set2Max	[7]	Set to maximum supported packet size
		---	[8..15]	Reserved
		MaxIsoSize	[16..31]	Maximum ISO packet size for S800

Table 168: Advanced register: **Maximum ISO packet size**

**Example** For isochronous packets at a speed of S800 the maximum allowed packet size (IIDC V1.31) is 8192 byte. This feature allows you to extend the size of an isochronous packet up to 11.000 byte at S800. Thus the isochronous bandwidth is increased from 64 MByte/s to approximately 84 MByte/s. You need either PCI Express.

The **Maximum ISO packet size** feature ...

- ... reduces the asynchronous bandwidth available for controlling cameras by approximately 75%
- ... may lead to slower responses on commands
- ... is not covered by the IEEE1394 specification
- ... may not work with all available 1394 host adapters.

**Note**

We strongly recommend to use **PCI Express** adapter.



**Restrictions** Note the restrictions in the following table. When using software with an Isochronous Resource Manager (IRM): deactivate it.

Software	Restrictions
FireGrab	Deactivate Isochronous Resource Manager: SetParameter (FGP_USEIRMFORBW, 0)
FireStack/FireClass	No restrictions
SDKs using Microsoft driver (Active FirePackage, Direct FirePackage, ...)	n/a
Linux: libdc1394_1.x	No restrictions
Linux: libdc1394_2.x	Deactivate Isochronous Resource Manager: Set DC1394_CAPTURE_FLAGS_BANDWIDTH_ALLOC flag to 0
Third Party Software	Deactivate Isochronous Resource Manager

Table 169: Restrictions for feature: **Maximum ISO packet size**

**Operation** The maximum allowed isochronous packet size can be set separately for the ISO speeds S400 and S800. Check the associated **Presence\_Inq** flag to see for which ISO speed this feature is available.

Setting the **Set2Max** flag to 1 sets the **MaxIsoSize** field to the maximum supported isochronous packet size. Use this flag to query the maximum supported size (may depend on the camera model).

Enable this feature by setting the **ON\_OFF** flag to 1 and the **MaxIsoSize** field to a value greater than the default packet size.

The camera ensures:

- that the value of the **MaxIsoSize** field is a multiple of 4.
- that the value isn't lower than the value specified by the IEEE1394 specification.

The settings are stored in the user sets.

**Note**



Enabling this feature will not change the **MaxBytePerPacket** value automatically. The camera may not use the new isochronous packet size for the **MaxBytePerPacket** value until a write access to the desired Format\_7 mode has been issued.

## Quick parameter change timing modes

You can choose between the following update timing modes:

- **Standard Parameter Update Timing** (slightly modified from previous PIKE cameras)
- New: **Quick Format Change Mode**

**Note** For a detailed description see Chapter [Quick parameter change timing modes](#) on page 173.



Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000570	PARAMUPD_TIMING	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	Reserved
		UpdActive	[6]	Update active see Chapter <a href="#">Encapsulated Update (begin/end)</a> on page 175 0: (default); reset to 0 means <b>Encapsulated Update end</b> 1: set to 1 means <b>Encapsulated Update begin</b>
		---	[7..23]	Reserved
		UpdTIming	[24..31]	Update timing mode If set to 0: <b>Standard Parameter Update Timing</b> is active If set to 2: <b>Quick Format Change Mode</b> is active

Table 170: Advanced register: **Update timing modes**

### Standard Parameter Update Timing

The camera behaves like older firmware versions without this feature. The **UpdActive** flag has no meaning.

### Quick Format Change Mode

This mode behaves like **Standard Parameter Update Timing** mode with the following exception:

An already started image transport to the host will not be interrupted, but an already started integration will be interrupted.

To switch on **Quick Format Change Mode** do the following:

1. Set UpdTiming to 2.
2. Set UpdActive to 1.
3. Be aware that all parameter values have to be set within 10 seconds.

#### **Automatic reset of the UpdActive flag**

With **Quick Format Change Mode** you normally have to clear the **UpdActive** flag after all desired parameters have been set. Every time the **PARAMUPD\_TIMING** register is written to with the **UpdActive** flag set to 1 a 10 second time-out is started / restarted. If the time-out passes before you clear the **UpdActive** flag, the **UpdActive** flag is cleared automatically and all parameter changes since setting the **UpdActive** flag to 1 become active automatically.

#### **Low-noise binning mode (only 2 x H-binning)**

This register enables/disables low-noise binning mode.

This means: an average (and not a sum) of the luminance values is calculated within the FPGA.

The image is therefore darker than with the usual binning mode, but the signal-to-noise ratio is better (approximately a factor of  $\sqrt{2}$ ) than without binning.

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000580	LOW_NOISE_BINNING	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	Reserved
		ON_OFF	[6]	Low-noise binning mode on/off
		---	[7..31]	Reserved

Table 171: Advanced register: **Low-noise binning mode**

## Software feature control (disable LEDs / switch single-tap and dual-tap)

The software feature control register allows to enable/disable some features of the camera (e.g. disable LEDs or switch single-tap and dual-tap for Pike F-1100/1600). The settings are stored permanently within the camera and do not depend on any user set.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000640	SWFEATURE_CTRL	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		BlankLED_Inq	[1]	Indicates presence of <i>Disable LEDs</i> feature.
		DigitizationTaps_Inq	[2]	Indicates presence of <i>Sensor digitization taps</i> feature.
		---	[3..5]	Reserved
		SensorTaps_Inq	[6]	Indicates presence of <i>Sensor taps</i> feature.
		---	[7..15]	Reserved
		---	[16]	Reserved
		BlankLED	[17]	0: Behavior as described in Chapter <a href="#">Status LEDs</a> on page 93ff. 1: Disable LEDs. (Only error codes are shown.)
		DigitizationTaps	[18..21]	0: single-tap 1: dual-tap
		SensorTaps	[22..25]	Max number of taps -1
		---	[26..31]	Reserved

Table 172: Advanced register: **Software feature control** (disable LEDs/switch single-tap and dual-tap)

### Disable LEDs

- To disable LEDs set bit [17] to 1.
- To disable LEDs in SmartView:  
[Adv3](#) tab, activate *Disable LED functionality* check box.

The camera does not show any more the status indicators during normal operation:

Examples:

- Power on is not shown
- Isochronous traffic is not shown
- Asynchronous traffic is not shown

**Note**



During the startup of the camera and if an error condition is present, the LEDs behave as described in Chapter [Status LEDs](#) on page 93ff.

## Sensor digitization taps (Pike F-1100/1600 only)

The sensor digitization taps fields *DigitizationTaps* [18..21] and *SensorTaps* [22..25] allow to switch between single-tap and dual-tap mode of a multi-tap sensor (Pike F-1100/1600). The settings are stored permanently within the camera and do not depend on any user set.

- To switch single-tap set bit [18..21] to 0.
- To switch dual-tap set bit [18..21] to 1.
- To get info how many taps are present read out bit [22..25].
  - 0 indicates 1 tap.
  - 1 indicates 2 taps.

## Parameter-List Update

The parameter list is an array of address/data pairs which can be sent to the camera in a single bus cycle.

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1100000	PARAMLIST_INFO	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..15]	Reserved
		BufferSize	[16..31]	Size of parameter list buffer in bytes
0xF1101000 ... 0xF1101nnn	PARAMLIST_BUFFER			

Table 173: Advanced register: **Parameter-List Update:** parameter list

Dependant on the parameter update mode the address/data pairs may become active one by one or after the processing of the complete parameter list. A parameter list may look like follows (the description is for your convenience):

Address offset	Data quadlet	Description
0xF0F00608	0xE0000000	Set video format 7
0xF0F00604	0x00000000	Set video mode 0
0xF0F08008	0x00000000	Set image position
0xF0F0800C	0x028001E0	Set image size
0xF0F08044	0x04840484	Set BytePerPacket value
0xF0F080C	0x80000100	Set shutter to 0x100
0xF0F0820	0x80000080	Set gain to 0x80

Table 174: Example: **parameter list**

**Note**



- The PARAMLIST\_BUFFER shares the memory with the GPDATA\_BUFFER. Therefore it is not possible to use both features at the same time.
- Not all CSRs or features of a particular camera model can be used with the parameter list feature.

## Format\_7 mode mapping

With Format\_7 mode mapping it is possible to map special binning and sub-sampling modes to F7M1..F7M7 (see [Figure 102: Mapping of possible Format\\_7 modes to F7M1...F7M7](#) on page 172).

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000580	F7MODE_MAPPING	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..31]	Reserved
0xF1000584	F7MODE_MAP_INQ	F7MODE_00_INQ	[0]	Format_7 Mode_0 presence
		F7MODE_01_INQ	[1]	Format_7 Mode_1 presence
		...	...	...
		F7MODE_31_INQ	[31]	Format_7 Mode_31 presence
0xF1000588	Reserved	---	---	---
0xF100058C	Reserved	---	---	---
0xF1000590	F7MODE_0	Format_ID	[0..31]	Format ID (read only)
0xF1000594	F7MODE_1	Format_ID	[0..31]	Format ID for Format_7 Mode_1
0xF1000598	F7MODE_2	Format_ID	[0..31]	Format ID for Format_7 Mode_2
0xF100059C	F7MODE_3	Format_ID	[0..31]	Format ID for Format_7 Mode_3
0xF10005A0	F7MODE_4	Format_ID	[0..31]	Format ID for Format_7 Mode_4
0xF10005A4	F7MODE_5	Format_ID	[0..31]	Format ID for Format_7 Mode_5
0xF10005A8	F7MODE_6	Format_ID	[0..31]	Format ID for Format_7 Mode_6
0xF10005AC	F7MODE_7	Format_ID	[0..31]	Format ID for Format_7 Mode_7

Table 175: Advanced register: **Format\_7 mode mapping**

### Additional Format\_7

**modes** Firmware 3.x adds additional Format\_7 modes. Now you can add some special Format\_7 modes which aren't covered by the IIDC standard. These special modes implement **binning** and **sub-sampling**.

To stay as close as possible to the IIDC standard the Format\_7 modes can be mapped into the register space of the standard Format\_7 modes.

There are visible Format\_7 modes and internal Format\_7 modes:

- At any time only 8 Format\_7 modes can be accessed by a host computer.
- Visible Format\_7 modes are numbered from 0 to 7.
- Internal Format\_7 modes are numbered from 0 to 31.

Format\_7 Mode\_0 represents the mode with the maximum resolution of the camera: this visible mode cannot be mapped to any other internal mode.

The remaining visible Format\_7 Mode\_1 ... Mode\_7 can be mapped to any internal Format\_7 mode.

### **Example**

To map the internal Format\_7 Mode\_19 to the visible Format\_7 Mode\_1, write the decimal number 19 to the above listed F7MODE\_1 register.

#### **Note**



For available Format\_7 modes see [Figure 102: Mapping of possible Format\\_7 modes to F7M1...F7M7](#) on page 172.

Setting the F7MODE\_x register to:

- -1 forces the camera to use the factory defined mode
- -2 disables the respective Format\_7 mode (no mapping is applied)

After setup of personal Format\_7 mode mappings you have to reset the camera. The mapping is performed during the camera startup only.

## Secure image signature (SIS)

Secure image signature (SIS) is the synonym for data, which is inserted into an image to improve or check image integrity.

All Pike models can insert

- **Time stamp** (1394 bus cycle time at the beginning of integration)
- **Frame counter** (frames read out of the sensor)
- **Trigger counter** (external trigger seen only)
- Various camera settings

into a selectable line position within the image. **Frame counter** and **trigger counter** are available as advanced registers to be read out directly.

### Advanced register: SIS

The **SIS** feature is controlled by the following advanced feature register:

**Note** This register is **different** to the Marlin **time stamp** (600) register!



Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000630	SIS	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	Reserved
		ON_OFF	[6]	SIS mode on/off
		---	[7..15]	Reserved
		LineNo	[16..31]	SIS data position inside an image
0xF1000634		UserValue	[0..31]	User provided value for sequence mode to be placed into the SIS area of an image

Table 176: Advanced register: **secure image signature (SIS)**

Enabling this feature, SIS data will be inserted into any captured image. The size of SIS data depends on the selected SIS format.

The **LineNo** field indicates at which line the SIS data will be inserted.

Enter a

- **positive value** from 0..HeightOfImage to specify a position relative to the top of the image. LinePos=0 specifies the very first image line.
- **negative value** from -1..-HeightOfImage to specify a position relative to the bottom of the image. LinePos=-1 specifies the very last image line.

SIS **UserValue** can be written into the camera's image. In sequence mode for every sequence entry an own SIS **UserValue** can be written.

**Note**



SIS outside the visible image area:

For certain Format\_7 modes the image frame transported may contain padding (filling) data at the end of the transported frame. Setting LinePos=HeightOfImage places the stamp in this padding data area, outside the visible area (invisible SIS).

If the transported image frame does not contain any padding data the camera will not relocate the SIS to the visible area automatically (no SIS).

Take in mind that the accuracy of the time stamp might be affected by asynchronous traffic – mainly if image settings are changed.

**Note**



The IEEE 1394 **cycle counter** (aka **time stamp**) will be inserted into the **very first 4 bytes/pixels of a line**.

Cycle offset	Cycles	Seconds
Cycle offset 12 bit	Cycle count 13 bit	Second count 7 bit
0 .. 3071 cycle offsets (40.69 ns)	0 .. 7999 cycles	0 .. 127 seconds
24.576 MHz cycle timer counter	8000 Hz cycle timer counter	1 Hz cycle timer counter

Table 177: 32-bit cycle timer layout

Bit	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
	Cycle offset 12 bit														Cycle count ...	

Bit	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
	... Cycle count 13 bit										Second count 7 bit					

Table 178: Cycle timer layout

### Advanced register: frame counter

Note

**Different to Marlin SIS:**

Register 610 is only to be used to reset the frame counter.



The **frame counter** feature is controlled by the following advanced feature register:

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000610	FRMCNT_STAMP	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		Reset	[1]	Reset frame counter
		---	[2..31]	Reserved
0xF1000614	FRMCNT		[0..31]	Frame counter

Table 179: Advanced register: Frame counter

Having this feature enabled, the current **frame counter** value (images read out of the sensor, equivalent to # FrameValid) will be inserted as a 32-bit integer value into any captured image.

Setting the **Reset** flag to 1 resets the frame counter to 0: the **Reset** flag is self-cleared.

Note

The 4 bytes of the **frame counter** value will be inserted as the **5th to 8th byte of a line**.



Additionally there is a register for direct read out of the frame counter value.

### Advanced register: trigger counter

The **trigger counter** feature is controlled by the following advanced feature register:

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000620	TRIGGER_COUNTER	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		Reset	[1]	Reset trigger counter
		---	[2..31]	Reserved
0xF1000624	TRGCNT	TriggerCounter	[0..31]	Trigger counter

Table 180: Advanced register: **Trigger counter**

Having this feature enabled, the current **trigger counter** value (external trigger seen by hardware) will be inserted as a 32-bit integer value into any captured image.

Setting the **Reset** flag to 1 resets the **trigger counter** to 0: the Reset flag is self-cleared.

The **ON\_OFF** and **LinePos** fields are simply mirrors of the time stamp feature. Settings of these fields are applied to all image stamp features.

**Note** The 4 bytes of the **trigger counter** value will be inserted as the **9th to 12th byte of a line**.



Additionally there is a register for direct read out of the **trigger counter** value.

### Where to find time stamp, frame counter and trigger counter in the image

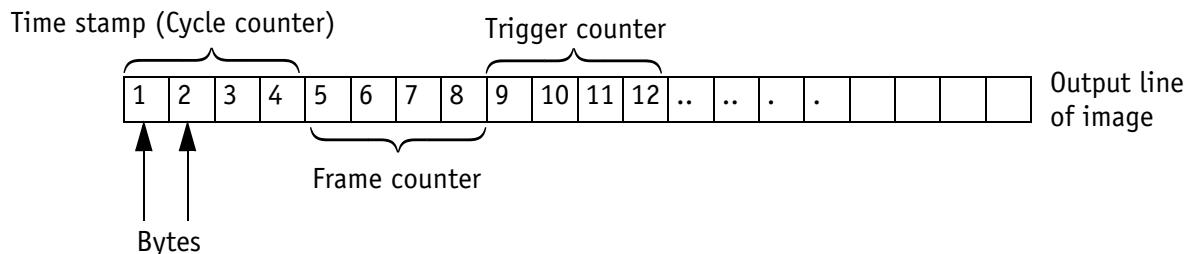


Figure 151: SIS in the image: time stamp, frame counter, trigger counter

### Where to find all SIS values in the image

In the following table you find the position of all SIS values (byte for byte) including the endianness of SIS values.

CycleCounter [7..0]	CycleCounter [15..8]	CycleCounter [23..16]	CycleCounter [31..24]
Byte 1	Byte 2	Byte 3	Byte 4
FrameCounter [7..0]	FrameCounter [15..8]	FrameCounter [23..16]	FrameCounter [31..24]
Byte 5	Byte 6	Byte 7	Byte 8
TriggerCounter [7..0]	TriggerCounter [15..8]	TriggerCounter [23..16]	TriggerCounter [31..24]
Byte 9	Byte 10	Byte 11	Byte 12
AoiLeft [7..0]	AoiLeft [15..8]	AoiTop [7..0]	AoiTop [15..8]
Byte 13	Byte 14	Byte 15	Byte 16
AoiWidth [7..0]	AoiWidth [15..8]	AoiHeight [7..0]	AoiHeight [15..8]
Byte 17	Byte 18	Byte 19	Byte 20
Shutter [7..0]	Shutter [15..8]	Shutter [23..16]	Shutter [31..24]
Byte 21	Byte 22	Byte 23	Byte 24
Gain [7..0]	Gain [15..8]	Reserved [NULL]	Reserved [NULL]
Byte 25	Byte 26	Byte 27	Byte 28
OutputState_1 [7..0]	OutputState_2 [7..0]	OutputState_3 [7..0]	OutputState_4 [7..0]
Byte 29	Byte 30	Byte 31	Byte 32
InputState_1 [7..0]	InputState_2 [7..0]	Reserved [NULL]	Reserved [NULL]
Byte 33	Byte 34	Byte 35	Byte 36
SequenceIndex [7..0]	Reserved [NULL]	ColorCoding [NULL]	Reserved [NULL]
Byte 37	Byte 38	Byte 39	Byte 40
SerialNumber [7..0]	SerialNumber [15..8]	SerialNumber [23..16]	SerialNumber [31..24]
Byte 41	Byte 42	Byte 43	Byte 44
SIS_UserValue [7..0]	SIS_UserValue [15..8]	SIS_UserValue [23..16]	SIS_UserValue [31..24]
Byte45	Byte46	Byte47	Byte48

Table 181: SIS values (increasing order of transmitted pixels)

## Smear reduction

To enable/disable smear reduction use the following register(s):

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000440	LOW_SMEAR	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	Reserved
		ON_OFF	[6]	Smear reduction on/off
		---	[7..31]	Reserved

Table 182: Advanced register: **Smear reduction**

## User profiles

**Definition** Within the IIDC specification user profiles are called memory channels. Often they are called user sets. In fact these are different expressions for the following: storing camera settings into a non-volatile memory inside the camera.

User profiles can be programmed with the following advanced feature register:

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000550	USER_PROFILE	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		Error	[1]	An error occurred
		---	[2..6]	Reserved
		Busy	[7]	Save/Load in progress
		Save	[8]	Save settings to profile
		Load	[9]	Load settings from profile
		SetDefaultID	[10]	Set Profile ID as default
		---	[11..19]	Reserved
		ErrorCode	[20..23]	Error code See <a href="#">Table 184: User profiles: Error codes</a> on page 360.
		---	[24..27]	Reserved
		ProfileID	[28..31]	ProfileID (memory channel)

Table 183: Advanced register: **User profiles**

In general this advanced register is a wrapper around the standard memory channel registers with some extensions. So to query the number of available user profiles you have to check the **Memory\_Channel** field of the **BASIC\_FUNC\_INQ** register at offset **0x400** (see IIDC V1.31 for details).

The **ProfileID** is equivalent to the memory channel number and specifies the profile number to store settings to or to restore settings from. In any case profile #0 is the hard-coded factory profile and cannot be overwritten.

After an initialization command, startup or reset of the camera, the **ProfileID** also indicates which profile was loaded on startup, reset or initialization.

**Note**

- The default profile is the profile that is loaded on power-up or an INITIALIZE command.
- A save or load operation delays the response of the camera until the operation is completed. At a time only one operation can be performed.

**Store** To store the current camera settings into a profile:

1. Write the desired **ProfileID** with the **SaveProfile** flag set.
2. Read back the register and check the **ErrorCode** field.

**Restore** To restore the settings from a previous stored profile:

1. Write the desired **ProfileID** with the **RestoreProfile** flag set.
2. Read back the register and check the **ErrorCode** field.

**Set default** To set the default profile to be loaded on startup, reset or initialization

1. Write the desired **ProfileID** with the **SetDefaultID** flag set.
2. Read back the register and check the **ErrorCode** field.

**Error codes**

ErrorCode #	Description
0x00	No error
0x01	Profile data corrupted
0x02	Camera not idle during restore operation
0x03	Feature not available (feature not present)
0x04	Profile does not exist
0x05	ProfileID out of range
0x06	Restoring the default profile failed
0x07	Loading LUT data failed
0x08	Storing LUT data failed

Table 184: User profiles: **Error codes**

**Reset of error codes**

The **ErrorCode** field is set to zero on the next write access.

You may also reset the **ErrorCode**

- by writing to the **USER\_PROFILE** register with the **SaveProfile**, **RestoreProfile** and **SetDefaultID** flag not set.
- by writing 00000000h to the **USER\_PROFILE** register.

### Stored settings

The following table shows the settings stored inside a profile:

Standard registers	Standard registers (Format_7)	Advanced registers
Cur_V_Frm_Rate	IMAGE_POSITION (AOI)	TIMEBASE
Cur_V_Mode	IMAGE_SIZE (AOI)	EXTD_SHUTTER
Cur_V_Format	COLOR_CODING_ID	IO_INP_CTRL
ISO_Channel	BYTES_PER_PACKET	IO_OUTP_CTRL
ISO_Speed		IO_INTENA_DELAY
BRIGHTNESS		AUTOSHUTTER_CTRL
AUTO_EXPOSURE (Target grey level)		AUTOSHUTTER_LO
SHARPNESS		AUTOSHUTTER_HI
WHITE_BALANCE (+ auto on/off)		AUTOGAIN_CTRL
HUE (+ hue on)		AUTOFNC_AOI (+ on/off)
SATURATION (+ saturation on)		COLOR_CORR (on/off + color correction coefficients)
GAMMA (+ gamma on)		TRIGGER_DELAY
SHUTTER (+ auto on/off)		MIRROR_IMAGE
GAIN		HIGH_SNR
TRIGGER_MODE		LUT_CTRL (LutNo; ON_OFF is not saved)
TRIGGER_POLARITY		SHDG_CTRL (on/off + ShowImage)
TRIGGER_DELAY		DEFERRED_TRANS (HoldImg + NumOfImages)
ABS_GAIN		CHANNEL_ADJUST_CTRL
		CHANNEL_ADJUST_VALUE
		ADV_CHN_ADJ_OFFSET
		ADV_CHN_ADJ_OFFSET+1

Table 185: User profile: **stored settings**

The user can specify which user profile will be loaded upon startup of the camera.

This frees the user software from having to restore camera settings, that differ from default, after every cold start. This can be especially helpful if third party software is used which may not give easy access to certain advanced features or may not provide efficient commands for quick writing of data blocks into the camera.

**Note**

- A profile save operation automatically disables capturing of images.
- A profile save or restore operation is an uninterruptable (atomic) operation. The write response (of the asynchronous write cycle) will be sent after completion of the operation.
- Restoring a profile will not overwrite other settings than listed above.
- If a restore operation fails or the specified profile does not exist, all registers will be overwritten with the hard-coded factory defaults (profile #0).
- Data written to this register will not be reflected in the standard memory channel registers.

**Frame time control**

With this register you can set the frame time (in microsecends) and thus control the sensor frame rate more precisely than with the BytesPerPacket settings.

**Note**

- The image transport speed depends on the BytesPerPacket setting only.
- The camera corrects invalid values automatically.

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000A00	FRAMETIME_CTRL	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..5]	Reserved
		OnOff	[6]	Enables or disables frame rate control
		---	[7]	Reserved
		FrameTime	[8..31]	Frame time in microsecond steps
0xF1000A04		MinValue	[0..31]	Minimum frame time
0xF1000A08		MaxValue	[0..32]	Maximum frame time

Table 186: Advanced register: **Frame time control**

- The precision of the frame rate depends on the jitter at start of exposure: see [Jitter at start of exposure](#) on page 211.
- The frame rate is affected by both: current shutter time and BytesPerPacket setting.

- The FRAMETIME\_CTRL register doesn't change the shutter or BytePerPacket settings.

## GPDATA\_BUFFER

GPDATA\_BUFFER is a general purpose register that regulates the exchange of data between camera and host for:

- writing look-up tables (LUTs) into the camera
- uploading/downloading of the shading image

**GPDATA\_INFO** Buffer size query

**GPDATA\_BUFFER** indicates the actual storage range

Register	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1000FFC	GPDATA_INFO	---	[0..15]	Reserved
		BufferSize	[16..31]	Size of GPDATA_BUFFER (byte)
0xF1001000 ... 0xF10017FC	GPDATA_BUFFER			

Table 187: Advanced register: **GPData buffer**

**Note**



- Read the BufferSize before using
- GPDATA\_BUFFER can be used by only one function at a time.

### Little endian vs. big endian byte order

- Read/WriteBlock accesses to GPDATA\_BUFFER are recommended, to read or write more than 4 byte data. This increases the transfer speed compared to accessing every single quadlet.
- The big endian byte order of the 1394 bus is unlike the little endian byte order of common operating systems (Intel PC). Each quadlet of the local buffer, containing the LUT data or shading image for instance, has to be swapped bytewise from little endian byte order to big endian byte order before writing on the bus.

Bit depth	little endian ⇒ big endian	Description
8 bit	L0 L1 L2 L3 ⇒ L3 L2 L1 L0	L: low byte
16 bit	L0 H0 L1 H1 ⇒ H1 L1 H0 L0	H: high byte

Table 188: Swapped first quadlet at address offset 0

## User adjustable gain references

This register gives the user the possibility (via direct access) to modify the gain references. Modified values are stored automatically without further user action and are also stored on restart.

To reload default gain references (which are programmed at personalization) within the camera: set flag m\_bDefGainRef=1

Offset	Name	Field	Bit	Description
0xF1002000	AFEREFERENCES	Presence_Inq	[0]	Indicates presence of this feature (read only)
		---	[1..4]	Reserved
		m_bDefGainRef	[5]	Reload default gain references, if this flag is set.
		---	[6..31]	Reserved
0xF1002004	GAINREFERENCE	m_GainRef	[0..31]	Gain reference (0..511)

Table 189: Advanced register: User adjustable gain references

In the following table you find the default gain references of all Pike models:

Pike model	Default gain reference (decimal)	Default gain reference (hex)
Pike F-032B/C	200	C8h
Pike F-100B/C	210	D2h
Pike F-145B/C (15fps)	30 (15*)	1Eh (0Fh*)
Pike F-145B/C (30fps)	85 (15*)	55h (0Fh*)
Pike F-210B/C	215	D7h
Pike F-421B/C	200	C8h
Pike F-505B/C	205 (130*)	CDh (82h*)
Pike F-1100B/C	228	E4h
Pike F-1600B/C	193	C1h

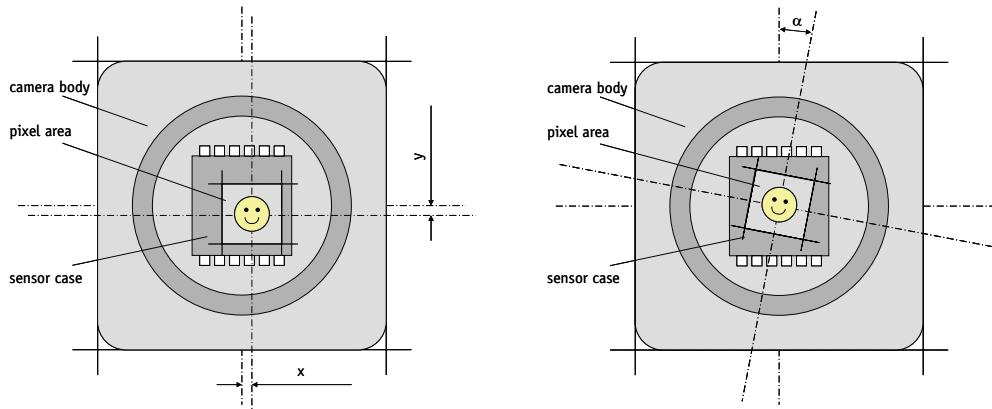
Table 190: Default gain references of Pike models

\*: Firmware package version 00.03.00.01 or earlier

# Appendix

## Sensor position accuracy of AVT cameras

### Sensor position accuracy of AVT cameras



**AVT Guppy Series**

Method of Positioning: Automated mechanical alignment of sensor into camera front module.  
(lens mount front flange)

Reference points:  
Sensor: Center of pixel area (photo sensitive cells).  
Camera: Center of camera front flange (outer case edges).

Accuracy:  
x/y: +/- 0.25mm (Sensor shift)  
z: +50 / -100µm (for SN > 84254727, optical back focal length)  
+0 / -100µm (for SN > 252138124, optical back focal length)  
alpha: +/- 1° (Sensor rotation)

### AVT Marlin, Oscar, Pike

Method of Positioning: Optical alignment of photo sensitive sensor area into camera front module.  
(lens mount front flange)

Reference points:  
Sensor: Center of pixel area (photo sensitive cells).  
Camera: Center of camera front flange (outer case edges).

Accuracy:  
x/y: +/- 0.1mm (Sensor shift)  
z: +0 / -50µm (Optical back focal length)  
alpha: +/- 0.5° (Sensor rotation)

Note: x/y - tolerances between C-Mount hole and pixel area may be higher.

Figure 152: AVT sensor position accuracy

# Firmware update

Firmware updates can be carried out via FireWire cable without opening the camera.

## Note



For further information:

- Read the application note:  
**How to update Guppy/Pike/Stingray firmware**  
 at AVT website or
- Contact your local dealer.

## www

[http://www.alliedvisiontec.com/emea/sales/  
 sales-locations.html](http://www.alliedvisiontec.com/emea/sales/sales-locations.html)



# Extended version number (FPGA/μC)

The new extended version number (Pike firmware 3.x and later) for microcontroller and FPGA firmware has the following format (4 parts separated by periods; each part consists of two digits):

**Special.Major.Minor.Bugfix**

or

**xx.xx.xx.xx**

Digit	Description
1st part: Special	Omitted if zero  Indicates customer specific versions (OEM variants). Each customer has its own number.
2nd part: Major	Indicates big changes  Old: represented the number before the dot

Table 191: New version number (microcontroller and FPGA)

Digit	Description
3rd part: Minor	Indicates small changes Old: represented the number after the dot
4th part: Bugfix	Indicates bugfixing only (no changes of a feature) or build number

Table 191: New version number (microcontroller and FPGA)

# Index

## Numbers

0xF1000010 (version info) .....	318
0xF1000040 (advanced feature inquiry).....	320
0xF1000100 (camera status).....	322
0xF1000200 (max. resolution) .....	323
0xF1000208 (time base) .....	323
0xF100020C (extended shutter).....	325
0xF1000210 (test image) .....	326
0xF1000220 (sequence mode).....	214
0xF1000240 (LUT).....	327
0xF1000250 (shading) .....	330
0xF1000260 (deferred image transport).....	333
0xF1000270 (frame info).....	334
0xF1000274 (frame counter).....	334
0xF1000300 (input control).....	116
0xF1000340 (Delayed IntEna) .....	335
0xF1000360 (auto shutter control) .....	336
0xF1000370 (auto gain control) .....	337
0xF1000390 (autofunction AOI) .....	338
0xF10003A0 (color correction) .....	339
0xF1000400 (trigger delay) .....	340
0xF1000410 (mirror image) .....	340
0xF1000420 (channel adjust).....	341
0xF1000440 (smear reduction) .....	358
0xF1000510 (soft reset) .....	342
0xF1000520 (High SNR) .....	343
0xF1000550 (user profiles/memory channels/ user sets) .....	359
0xF1000560 (Max. ISO size S400) .....	344
0xF1000564 (Max. ISO size S800) .....	344
0xF1000570 (update timing modes).....	346
0xF1000610 (frame counter).....	355
0xF1000620 (trigger counter) .....	356
0xF1000630 (SIS) .....	353
0xF1000640 (software feature control) disable LEDs .....	348
0xF1000840 (debounce).....	203
0xF1000A00 (frame time control) .....	362
0xF1002000 (user adjustable gain references) ... 365	
0xF1002004 (user adjustable gain references) ... 365	
0xF100580 (low-noise binning mode) .....	347
0xF1100000 (Parameter-List Update) .....	350

1394a data transmission .....	33
1394b bandwidths .....	38
requirements laptop.....	39
1394b data transmission .....	33
2 out of 16 H+V sub-sampling (b/w) drawing .....	168
2 out of 16 H+V sub-sampling (color) drawing .....	170
2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling (b/w) drawing .....	167
2 out of 4 H+V sub-sampling (color) drawing .....	169
2 out of 8 H+V sub-sampling (b/w) drawing .....	167
2 out of 8 H+V sub-sampling (color) drawing .....	169
2 x full binning drawing .....	163
2 x horizontal binning drawing .....	162
2 x vertical binning drawing .....	160
32-bit cycle timer layout.....	354
4 x full binning drawing .....	163
4 x horizontal binning drawing .....	162
4 x vertical binning drawing .....	160
8 x full binning drawing .....	163
8 x horizontal binning drawing .....	162
8 x vertical binning drawing .....	161

## A

Abs_Control (Field) .....	136, 141, 143, 144, 146
Abs_Control_Inq (Field) .....	118
access binning and sub-sampling .....	171
AccessLutNo (Field).....	327
Access_Control_Register .....	303

accuracy	
sensor position .....	366
AddrOffset (Field) .....	327, 330
Advanced feature inquiry .....	320
Advanced feature inquiry register .....	320
Advanced features.....	314
activate .....	317
base address.....	303
inquiry.....	301
advanced register	
Auto gain control .....	337
Auto shutter control .....	336
auto shutter control.....	336
Autofunction AOI .....	338
Camera status .....	322
Channel balance.....	341
Color correction .....	339
Deferred image transport .....	333
Delayed Integration Enable (IntEna) ....	335
Extended shutter.....	205, 325
Extended version.....	318
Format_7 mode mapping .....	351
frame counter .....	355
Frame information .....	334
GPData buffer .....	364
High SNR .....	343
Input control.....	116
Low-noise binning mode.....	347
LUT .....	327
Max. ISO packet .....	344
Max. resolution .....	323
Mirror .....	340
Mirror image.....	340
Output control .....	121
Parameter-List Update.....	350
secure image signature (SIS) .....	353
Sequence mode .....	214
Shading .....	330
Smear reduction .....	358
Soft reset .....	342
Test images .....	326
Time base.....	323
Trigger delay .....	340
Update timing modes .....	346
User adjustable gain references .....	365
User profiles .....	359, 362
AFF channel compensation .....	341
Algorithm	
correction data .....	151
AOI.....	152, 242
correction data .....	152
area of interest (AOI) .....	152, 244
Asynchronous broadcast.....	210
auto exposure	
limits .....	336
target grey level.....	145, 336
Auto Exposure (CSR register) .....	144
auto gain.....	142, 336
Auto gain control (advanced register).....	337
auto shutter.....	139, 140, 336
Auto shutter control (advanced register) ....	336
auto shutter control (advanced register) ....	336
auto white balance	
external trigger.....	139
AUTOFNC_AOI.....	139, 338
AUTOFNC_AOI positioning .....	140
Autofunction AOI (advanced register) .....	338
AUTOGAIN_CTRL .....	337
automatic generation	
correction data .....	151
automatic white balance .....	139
AUTOSHUTTER_CTRL .....	336
AUTOSHUTTER_HI .....	336
AUTOSHUTTER_LO .....	336
AUTO_EXPOSURE .....	144
Auto_Inq .....	118
AVT Firetool program .....	219
AVT sensor position accuracy .....	366
A_M_MODE (Field).....	136, 141, 143, 144, 146
<b>B</b>	
bandwidth .....	225
affect frame rate .....	277
available .....	246
deferred image transport .....	181
FastCapture .....	183
frame rates.....	245
RGB8 format.....	189
save in RAW-mode .....	184
BAYER demosaicing .....	184, 187
BAYER mosaic.....	184
BAYER to RGB	
color interpretation .....	184
binning .....	159
access .....	171
full.....	163
horizontal .....	162

only PIKE b/w.....	159
vertical.....	160
BitsPerValue.....	327
black level .....	146
black lines .....	224
black value .....	145, 146
black/white camera	
block diagram .....	130
blink codes .....	114
block diagram	
b/w camera .....	130
color camera.....	131
block diagrams	
cameras .....	130
BRIGHTNESS.....	146, 308
Brightness	
inquiry register .....	302
brightness	
auto shutter .....	140
average.....	142
decrease .....	336
descending .....	219
effects .....	213
I IDC register.....	146
increase .....	145, 336
level.....	150, 153
LUT .....	156
nonlinear .....	156
reference.....	140, 142
setting.....	146
sub-sampling .....	164
variation .....	335
Brightness Control .....	302
brightness (table) .....	146
BRIGHTNESS_INQUIRY .....	304
Brightness_inq. .....	304
buffer	
LUT .....	158
bulk trigger.....	195, 197
bulk trigger (Trigger_Mode_15).....	197
busy signal .....	120
Bus_Id .....	281
<b>C</b>	
camera dimensions.....	49
camera interfaces.....	110
camera lenses.....	47
Camera status (advanced register) .....	322
Camera status (register).....	322
cameras	
block diagram .....	130
CAMERA_STATUS .....	322
Camera_Status_Register .....	281
CE .....	30
channel.....	127
channel balance .....	132, 341
Channel balance (advanced register).....	341
color	
correction .....	184
color camera	
block diagram .....	131
color coding.....	178
color codings .....	178
color correction .....	187, 188
AVT cameras .....	187
formula.....	187
why? .....	187
Color correction (advanced register) .....	339
Color Correction (Field).....	320
color information .....	184
Color_Coding.....	178
COLOR_CODING_INQ .....	178
Com (LED state).....	113
common GND	
inputs.....	112
common vcc	
outputs.....	112
continuous	
using Trigger_Mode_15 .....	199
controlling	
image capture.....	195
correction	
color .....	184
correction data	
algorithm .....	151
AOI .....	152
automatic generation.....	151
requirements .....	151
shading .....	149
CSR.....	281
shutter .....	141
CSR register	
Auto Exposure.....	144
GAIN .....	143
cycle counter .....	354
Cycle timer layout.....	355

**D**

data block packet format ..... 127  
     description ..... 127  
 data exchange buffer  
     LUT ..... 158  
 data packets ..... 127  
 data path ..... 130  
 data payload size ..... 38, 277  
 data\_length ..... 127  
 DCAM ..... 27, 225, 281  
 debounce time  
     for input ports ..... 203  
 debounce time for trigger ..... 202  
 debounce (advanced registers summary) ..... 317  
 declaration of conformity ..... 30  
 default sequence mode ..... 216  
 deferred image transport ..... 180, 181, 333  
 Deferred image transport (advanced register) .... 333  
 deferred transport ..... 219  
 Delayed Integration Enable (IntEna) (advanced register) ..... 335  
 Digital Camera Specification ..... 281  
 digital video information ..... 127  
 digitizer ..... 157  
 disable  
     LEDs ..... 348  
 disable LEDs  
     software feature control ..... 348, 349  
 document history ..... 12

**E**

edge mode (Trigger\_Mode\_1) ..... 195  
 effective min. exp. time ..... 204  
 EnableMemWR (Field) ..... 327  
 Encapsulated Update (begin/end) ..... 175, 176  
 End of exposure ..... 209  
 endianness ..... 222  
 error codes  
     LED ..... 114  
 error states ..... 114  
 example (parameter list) ..... 350  
 Exposure time  
     (Field) ..... 205  
 exposure time ..... 204  
     81 Ch register ..... 206  
     example ..... 205

extended shutter ..... 325  
 FIFO ..... 217  
 formula ..... 204  
 longest ..... 205  
 long-term integration ..... 205  
 minimum ..... 205  
 ExpressCard ..... 40  
     technology ..... 41  
 ExpressCard/54 ..... 40  
 ExpTime (Field) ..... 205  
 EXTD\_SHUTTER ..... 325  
 extended shutter ..... 205  
     FireDemo ..... 325  
     FireView ..... 325  
     inactive ..... 206, 325  
     register ..... 325  
     Trigger mode ..... 195  
 Extended shutter (advanced register) .. 205, 325  
 Extended version (advanced register) ..... 318  
 EXTENDED\_SHUTTER ..... 205  
 External GND ..... 112  
 external signal (SeqMode) ..... 216  
 external trigger ..... 115

**F**

Fast Parameter Update Timing ..... 176, 177  
 FastCapture  
     bandwidth ..... 183  
     deferred image transport ..... 333  
     false ..... 183  
     only Format\_7 ..... 183  
 FastCapture (Field) ..... 333  
 FCC Class B ..... 30  
 FireDemo  
     extended shutter ..... 325  
 FirePackage  
     additional checks image integrity ..... 223  
     OHCI API software ..... 26  
 FireView  
     Extended shutter ..... 325  
 FireWire  
     connecting capabilities ..... 34  
     definition ..... 31  
     serial bus ..... 32  
 FireWire 400 ..... 34  
 FireWire 800 ..... 35  
 firmware update ..... 366, 367  
 focal length ..... 47

Format_7 mode mapping (advanced register) ....	
351	
Format_7 modes	
mapping .....	172
FORMAT_7_ERROR_1.....	114
FORMAT_7_ERROR_2.....	114
formula	
color correction.....	187
FOV .....	147
FPGA boot error .....	114
frame counter.....	222, 353, 355
frame counter (advanced register) .....	355
Frame information (advanced register) .....	334
frame rates	
bandwidth.....	245
bus speed.....	225
Format_7 .....	249
maximum .....	225
tables .....	245
video mode 0.....	248
video mode 2.....	248
frame time control .....	362
Frame valid .....	120
free-run.....	210
Full binning .....	163
Fval .....	120
Fval signal .....	120

## G

gain	
auto .....	142
auto exposure CSR .....	142
AUTOFNC_AOI .....	139
manual .....	145
manual gain range.....	137, 145
ranges .....	145
Gain references (advanced register) .....	365
GAIN (CSR register) .....	143
GAIN (Name) .....	143
gamma function .....	156
CCD models.....	152
gamma LUT .....	156
global pipelined shutter.....	195
global shutter.....	195
GND for RS232 .....	112
GPData buffer (advanced register) .....	364
GPDATA_BUFFER .....	154, 155, 158
GRAB_COUNT.....	151

## H

hardware trigger .....	119, 201
HDR mode.....	320
HDR Pike .....	321
high level (SeqMode) .....	216
High Signal Noise Ratio (HSNR) .....	179
High SNR mode.....	179
High SNR (advanced register) .....	343
HoldImg	
field .....	181
flag .....	181
mode.....	181
set .....	333
HoldImg (Field) .....	333
horizontal binning .....	162
horizontal mirror function .....	147
horizontal sub-sampling (b/w)	
drawing .....	164
horizontal sub-sampling (color)	
drawing .....	165
HSNR .....	179
hue.....	186
offset .....	186

## I

### ID

color coding .....	178
IEEE 1394 .....	27
IEEE 1394 standards.....	31
IEEE 1394 Trade Association .....	281
IEEE 1394b connector.....	111
IIDC.....	27, 225, 281
data structure .....	129
isochronous data block packet format... <td>127</td>	127
pixel data.....	127
trigger delay.....	118
video data format.....	128
Y16 .....	128
Y8.....	128
YUV 4:1:1.....	128
YUV 4:2:2.....	128
IIDC V1.31 .....	195
IIDC V1.31 camera control standards .....	35
image capture	
controlling .....	195
ImageRepeat.....	218
IMAGE_POSITION .....	242

IMAGE_SIZE .....	242
incrementing list pointer .....	213
input	
block diagram .....	115
signals.....	115
Input control (advanced register).....	116
input mode .....	117
InputMode (Field) .....	116
inputs	
common GND .....	112
general.....	115
in detail.....	115
triggers.....	115
input/output pin control.....	334
Inquiry register	
basic function.....	301
Integration Enable signal.....	120
IntEna.....	112, 123
IntEna signal .....	120, 335
IntEna_Delay.....	124
internal trigger.....	195
interpolation	
BAYER demosaicing .....	184
BAYER to RGB .....	184
color .....	184
IO_INP_CTRL1 .....	116
IO_INP_CTRL2 .....	116
IO_INP_DEBOUNCE .....	317
IO_OUTP_CTRL1 .....	121
IO_OUTP_CTRL2 .....	121
IO_OUTP_CTRL3 .....	121
IO_OUTP_CTRL4 .....	121
isochronous blocks .....	127
isochronous channel number .....	127
isochronous data block packet format .....	127
isochronous data packets .....	127
Isochronous Resource Manager (IRM) .....	345
IsoEnable .....	219
white balance .....	138
ISO_Enable .....	210
ISO_Enable mode .....	210
multi-shot.....	210
one-shot .....	207
I/O controlled sequence pointer reset .....	219
I/O controlled sequence stepping mode.....	218
<b>J</b>	
jitter .....	209, 211
at exposure start .....	212
<b>L</b>	
latching connectors.....	111
LED	
Com .....	113
error codes .....	114
indication .....	113
on (green).....	113
status .....	113
Trg .....	113
yellow .....	113
LEDs	
disable .....	348
Legal notice .....	2
level mode (Trigger_Mode_1).....	195
look-up table	
user-defined .....	156
look-up table (LUT) .....	156, 327
Low-noise binning mode (advanced register)....	347
LOW_SMEAR .....	358
LUT.....	327
data exchange buffer .....	158
example .....	156
gamma .....	156
general .....	156
loading into camera.....	158
volatile .....	157
LUT (advanced register) .....	327
LutNo (Field).....	327
LUT_CTRL.....	327
LUT_INFO .....	327
LUT_MEM_CTRL .....	327
<b>M</b>	
Manual_Inq.....	118
Maximum resolution (register) .....	323
MaxLutSize (Field) .....	327
MaxResolution (Field) .....	320
Max. ISO packet (advanced register) .....	344
Max. resolution (advanced register) .....	323
MAX_RESOLUTION .....	323
Max_Value .....	118
minimum exposure time.....	204
Min. exp. time + offset .....	204
Min_Value.....	118

mirror function	signals.....	120
horizontal .....		
Mirror image (advanced register) .....	Output control (advanced register) .....	121
Mirror (advanced register) .....	output mode .....	121
MSB aligned .....	ID .....	122
multi-shot .....	Output mode (Field) .....	121
external trigger.....	output pin control .....	122
using Trigger-Mode_15 .....	outputs .....	120
	common vcc .....	112
	general.....	115
	registers .....	121
	set by software .....	124
	OutVCC .....	112
<b>N</b>		
No DCAM object .....	Packed 12-Bit Mode .....	178
No FLASH object .....	Packed 12-Bit MONO.....	178
Node_Id .....	Packed 12-Bit RAW.....	178
non-uniform illumination .....	packet format.....	127
NumOfLuts (Field) .....	parameter list .....	
	example .....	176
<b>O</b>	parameter list (example) .....	350
OFFSET	Parameter-List Update .....	175, 176, 177
automatic white balance .....	Parameter-List Update (advanced register) .....	350
offset.....	PI controller .....	142
800h .....	picture size .....	29
CCD .....	PIKE .....	
configuration ROM .....	camera types .....	29
factors.....	PIKE F-032B (Specification).....	85
hue .....	PIKE F-100B (Specification).....	87
initialize register.....	PIKE F-145B (Specification).....	89
inquiry register video format.....	PIKE F-210B/C (Specification) .....	91
inquiry register video mode.....	PIKE F-421B/C (Specification) .....	93
saturation .....	PIKE F-505B/C (Specification) .....	95, 97, 99
setting brightness .....	Pike types.....	28
setting gain.....	Pike W270 S90.....	52
OHCI API	pin control.....	334
FirePackage .....	PinState flag .....	121
one-push white balance .....	PinState (Field) .....	116
one-shot.....	pixel data .....	127
Trigger_Mode_15.....	plus integral controller .....	142
using Trigger_Mode_15 .....	pointer reset .....	213
values.....	Polarity .....	116, 121
one-shot bit.....	Power .....	
one-shot mode .....	IEEE 1394b.....	110
One_Push (Field) .....	power .....	
136, 141, 143, 144, 146	GND .....	112
One_Push_Inq .....	LED .....	113
ON_OFF .....	Presence_Inq .....	116
ON_OFF (Field) .....		
optocoupler .....		
output		
block diagram .....		

Presence\_Inq (Field) ..... 118, 136  
 programmable mode (Trigger\_Mode\_15) ..... 195

## **Q**

QFCM ..... 174  
 Quick Format Change Mode ..... 173, 176  
     (QFCM) ..... 174, 176, 177  
 Quick parameter change timing modes ..... 173

## **R**

Readout\_Inq ..... 118  
 Register mapping ..... 114  
 repeat counter ..... 213  
 Requirements  
     correction data ..... 151  
 RGB to YUV  
     formula ..... 189  
 RGB8 format ..... 189  
 rising edge (SeqMode) ..... 216  
 RoHS (2002/95/EC) ..... 30  
 RS232 ..... 112  
 RxD\_RS232 ..... 112

## **S**

saturation ..... 186  
     offset ..... 186  
 secure image signature (advanced register) ..... 353  
 secure image signature (SIS)  
     advanced registers ..... 353  
     definition ..... 222  
     scenarios ..... 222  
 sensor  
     size ..... 29  
 sensor position accuracy ..... 366  
 SeqLength ..... 219  
 SeqMode  
     description ..... 216  
 sequence  
     deferred mode ..... 182  
     important notes ..... 219  
     loading a LUT ..... 158  
     modified registers ..... 213  
     of images ..... 213  
     one-push white balance ..... 138  
         OneShot ..... 207  
 sequence mode ..... 213  
     cancel ..... 219

changes to registers ..... 221  
 default ..... 216  
 example of settings ..... 220  
 features ..... 218  
 flow diagram ..... 217  
 frame rate ..... 214  
 image size ..... 214  
 implemented ..... 214  
 pointer reset ..... 213  
 repeat counter ..... 213  
 Sequence mode (advanced register) ..... 214  
 Sequence Reset ..... 117  
 Sequence Step ..... 117  
 sequence step mode ..... 215  
 SEQUENCE\_CTRL ..... 214, 314  
 SEQUENCE\_PARAM ..... 214, 314  
 SEQUENCE\_STEP ..... 215, 314  
 Seq\_Length ..... 219  
 shading  
     correction data ..... 149  
 shading correction ..... 149, 329  
 shading image ..... 150  
     automatic generation ..... 151  
     delay ..... 152  
     Format\_7 ..... 152  
     generation ..... 153  
     load into camera ..... 155  
     load out of camera ..... 154  
 shading images ..... 329  
 shading reference image ..... 151  
 Shading (advanced register) ..... 330  
 sharpness ..... 185  
 SHDG\_CTRL ..... 152, 330  
 SHDG\_INFO ..... 330  
 SHDG\_MEM\_CTRL ..... 330  
 SHUTTER ..... 141  
 Shutter CSR ..... 141  
 shutter time  
     formula ..... 204  
 SHUTTER\_MODES ..... 195  
 signal-to noise ratio (SNR)  
     vertical binning ..... 161  
 signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) ..... 159  
 signal-to-noise separation ..... 159  
 SingleShot ..... 219  
 SIS  
     advanced registers ..... 353  
     definition ..... 222  
     scenarios ..... 222

SIS (advanced register).....	353
size	
sensor .....	29
SmartView.....	26
smear	
compensate .....	224
smear reduction.....	224, 358
definition.....	224
how it works.....	224
switch on/off.....	224
(advanced register).....	358
Smear reduction (advanced register) .....	358
SNR .....	159
Soft reset (advanced register).....	342
software feature control	
disable LEDs .....	348, 349
specifications.....	85
spectral sensitivity	
MF-033B .....	101
spectral transmission	
IR cut filter .....	46
Jenofilt 217.....	46
Stack setup .....	114
Stack start .....	114
standard housing .....	50
Standard Parameter Update Timing ....	174, 346
Standard Update (I IDC) .....	175, 177
status LED.....	113
styles .....	25
subsampling	
access.....	171
sub-sampling	
brightness .....	164
b/w and color .....	164
definition.....	164
sy .....	127
symbols .....	25
sync bit.....	127
sync bit (sy).....	127
synchronization value (sync bit) .....	127
system components.....	46
<b>T</b>	
Tag field.....	127
Target grey level	
corresponds to Auto_exposure .....	309
Target grey level (auto exposure) .....	145, 336
Target grey level (SmartView)	
corresponds to auto exposure.....	140
tCode .....	127
test image .....	279
Bayer-coded .....	280
b/w cameras .....	279
color .....	280
color cameras .....	280
configuration register .....	326
gray bar .....	279
save .....	326
Test images (advanced register) .....	326
TEST_IMAGE .....	326
tg .....	127
time base .....	205
exposure time .....	204
setting .....	325
trigger delay.....	118, 200
Time base (advanced register) .....	323
time response.....	208
Time stamp .....	353
time stamp .....	222, 354
time stamp (advanced register).....	353
TIMEBASE .....	314, 323
TimeBase (Field) .....	320
timebase (Register) .....	323
TPA-	
IEEE 1394b.....	110
TPA(R)	
IEEE 1394b.....	110
TPA+ .....	110
TPB-	
IEEE-1394b.....	110
TPB(R)	
IEEE 1394b.....	110
TPB+ .....	110
IEEE 1394b.....	110
Transaction code .....	127
Trg (LED state) .....	113
trigger	
bulk .....	195, 197
control image capture .....	195
delay .....	118, 124
edge.....	119
external .....	113, 195
hardware.....	119, 201
impulse.....	207
IntEna .....	123
internal .....	195
latency time .....	211

microcontroller ..... 208  
 one-shot ..... 207  
 sequence mode ..... 213  
 signal ..... 115  
 software ..... 210  
 synchronize ..... 211  
 Trigger counter ..... 353  
 trigger counter ..... 222, 356  
 trigger delay ..... 200  
     advanced CSR ..... 119, 201  
     advanced register ..... 119, 201  
     off ..... 119  
     on ..... 119  
 Trigger Delay CSR ..... 119, 201  
 trigger delay inquiry register ..... 118  
 Trigger delay (advanced register) ..... 340  
 trigger function ..... 198  
 Trigger modi ..... 195  
 trigger overrun ..... 222  
 triggers ..... 115  
     input ..... 115  
 TRIGGER\_DELAY ..... 119, 201  
 TRIGGER\_DELAY\_INQUIRY ..... 118, 200  
 Trigger\_Delay\_Inquiry register ..... 200  
 TRIGGER\_MODE ..... 198  
 Trigger\_Mode ..... 198  
 Trigger\_Mode\_0 ..... 120, 195  
 Trigger\_Mode\_1 ..... 195  
 Trigger\_Mode\_1 (edge mode) ..... 195  
 Trigger\_Mode\_1 (level mode) ..... 195  
 Trigger\_Mode\_15 (bulk trigger) ..... 195, 197  
 Trigger\_Mode\_15 (programmable mode) ..... 195  
 Trigger\_Polarity ..... 198  
 Trigger\_Source ..... 198  
 Trigger\_Value ..... 198  
 tripod adapter ..... 52  
 Tripod dimensions ..... 52, 68, 75, 81  
 types  
     Pike cameras ..... 28

## U

UNIT\_POSITION\_INQ ..... 242  
 UNIT\_SIZE\_INQ ..... 242  
 Update timing modes (advanced register) ..... 346  
 User profiles (advanced register) ..... 359, 362  
 user value ..... 222  
 U/B\_Value (Field) ..... 136  
 U/V slider range ..... 137

## V

VCC  
     IEEE 1394b ..... 110  
 Vendor Unique Color\_Coding ..... 178  
 Vendor unique Features ..... 301  
 vertical binning ..... 160  
     SNR ..... 161  
 vertical sub-sampling (b/w)  
     drawing ..... 166  
 vertical sub-sampling (color)  
     drawing ..... 166  
 VG (GND)  
     IEEE 1394b ..... 110  
 video data format  
     IIDC V1.31 ..... 128  
 Video data payload ..... 127  
 video format  
     available bandwidth ..... 245  
     frame rate ..... 245  
     MF-080 ..... 228, 229, 230, 236, 238, 240  
 video formats ..... 225  
 video Format\_7  
     AOI ..... 242  
 video information ..... 127  
 video mode  
     CUR-V-MODE ..... 306  
     Format\_7 ..... 312  
     inquiry register ..... 291  
     sample C code ..... 285  
 video mode 0 ..... 248  
 video mode 2 ..... 248  
 VMode\_ERROR\_STATUS ..... 114  
 VP  
     IEEE 1394b ..... 110  
 VP (Power, VCC)  
     IEEE 1394b ..... 110  
 V/R\_Value (Field) ..... 136

## W

white balance  
     auto shutter ..... 140  
     AUTOFNC\_AOI ..... 139  
     automatic ..... 139  
     conditions ..... 138, 139  
     general ..... 135  
     Hue register ..... 186  
     one-push ..... 137, 138

- register 80Ch ..... 135
- six frames ..... 137
- WHITE\_BALANCE ..... 136, 138
- www.alliedvisiontec.com ..... 27, 28